The Translation of the Meanings of

Sahîh Al-Bukhârî

Arabic-English

Volume 1

Translated by:

الدكتور محمد محسن خان
Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan

DARUSSALAM
Publishers and Distributors
Riyadh — Saudi Arabia
No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording or by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission of the publisher or the translator.

Published by:

دار السلام للنشر والتوزيع

الرياض - المملكة العربية السعودية

DARUSSALAM
Publishers and Distributors
P.O. Box 22743, Riyadh 11416
Tel. 4033962 - Fax: 4021659
Kingdom of Saudi Arabia

Printed in : July, 1997
Printing supervised by : ABDUL MALIK MUJAHID

Computerized Typesetting, designing and proof reading carried out at Riyadh, Saudi Arabia under the supervision of Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan assisted by a team of highly qualified persons.

© Maktaba Dar us Salam, 1997

King Fahd National Library Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Al-Bukhari, Muhammed Ibn Ismaiel
Sahih Al-Bukhari\ translated by Muhammad Muhsin Khan.-
Riyadh.
500p., 14x21cm
ISBN: 9960-717-31-3 (set)
9960-717-31-1 (v.1)
I- Al-Hadith - Six books I- Khan, Muhammad Muhsin (tr.)
II-Title
235.1 dc 0887/18

Legal Deposit no. 0887/18
ISBN: 9960-717-31-3 (set)
9960-717-32-1 (v.1)
سلم عليكم ورحمة الله وبركاته، أما بعد:
فإن الرئاسة العامة لإدارات البحوث العلمية والإفتاء والدعوة والإرشاد بالمملكة العربية السعودية تقرر أن الدكتور محمد تقي الدين الهلالي والدكتور محمد حسن خان قد قامو بترجمة معاني القرآن الكريم وصحيح الإمام البخاري وكتاب اللؤلؤ والمرجان فيها اتفق عليه البخاري وسلم إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ترجمة صحيحة وذلك أثناء عملهما في الجامعة الإسلامية بالمدينة المنورة، فلا مانع من الفسح لهذه الكتب بالدخول إلى المملكة وتناولها لعدم المحذور فيها والله ولي التوفيق.
وصلى الله وسلم على نبينا محمد وآله وسلم.
الرئيس العام
إدارات البحوث العلمية والإفتاء والدعوة والإرشاد

عبد العزيز بن عبد الله بن باز
الذي

الغرض هو

اللغة الإنجليزية، وترجمة صحيح البخاري بها أيضاً.

ولقد سدت بحمد الله فراهاً كبيراً يحتاج العالم الإسلامي لملته. كما أن المذكورين يمتازان بحسن العقيدة السليمة من الشوائب، والصفات الحميدة.

وينبأ على الرغبة أعطيا هذه الشهادة، والله ولي التوفيق.

وصلى الله وسلم وبارك على نبينا محمد وعلى آلله وصحبه.

الأمين العام للجامعة

عمر محمد فلاته
ولكن لله وحده الأسرار
حمد الله وبعد على سيد المرسلين وعلى الله وصحبه الغير المباينين

فإننا نحن الموقعين أبناء قد علمنا على قراءة هذه الترجمة التي قام بها الدكتور/ محمد
حسن خان لماني كتاب صحيح البخاري ولقد دلنا الوسع في مراجعتها وتصحيحها بدقة
تامة من البداية إلى النهاية حتى أصبحت الترجمة أقرب ما يمكن إلى الصواب في حدود طاقتنا
وجهتنا.

وإننا نحمد الله على ما وفق من إنجاز هذا المشروع الطيب ونسأل أن يجزل المؤلف للذين
قاموا به وساهموا فيه جميعاً وله من وراء الفضل وهو الهادي إلى سواء السبيل.

1- الأستاذ/ شاكر نصيف العبدي: ماجستير في اللغة الإنجليزية من
جامعة فاندرbilt الأمريكية وأستاذ اللغة الإنجليزية في جامعة
بغداد ثم أستاذ اللغة الإنجليزية في كلية التربية بملكة المكرمة.

2- الدكتور/ محمود حمد نصر: خريج جامعة الخرطوم وطبيب
مستشفى الملك بالمدينة المنورة.

3- الدكتور/ محمد تقي الدين الهلالي: دكتوراه من جامعة برلين ألمانيا
- أستاذ في جامعة بغداد سابقاً وحالياً أستاذ في جامعة محمد الخامس
بالمغرب وأستاذ منتدب في الجامعة الإسلامية بالمدينة المنورة.

لقد اطلعنا على جزء يسير من هذه الترجمة وقد وجدت السامراً على الترجمة قد وافق إلى
نقل معاني الجامع الصحيح إلى اللغة الإنجليزية بأسلوب سهل ميسر قريب خال من
التعقيد، كما أن وجدنا أن وافق إلى أحسن الأقوال وأرجحنا في تفسير معاني بعض
الأحاديث المختلف فيها وقاد تسلم العمل بتعهده الدكتور/ محمود حمد نصر السوداني ببذل
فيه غيابه وسعه وراجه مراجعة أولى من أوله إلى آخره ثم قام بمراجعته مراجعة ثانية
الأستاذ/ شاكر نصيف العبدي، ثم راجعه الدكتور/ محمد تقي الدين الهلالي مع مؤلفه
الدكتور/ محمد حسن خان مراجعة فحص وتتفقق وبذل جهده في إصلاح ما ظهر له من
خطأ قليل حتى ظهرت الترجمة في غاية التحقيق.

وسأل الله أن يجزيل ثواب كل من شارك في هذا العمل البرور وأن يفعّله، وإنا واثق
فمثالة أن الترجمة بعون الله بعدما بذل لها من جهد أصبحت أقرب إلى الصواب.
والله ولي التوفيق والحمد لله رب العالمين.

محمد أمين المصري
دكتوراه من جامعة كبرج
رئيس قسم الدراسات العليا في الجامعة الإسلامية بالمدينة المنورة
In the Name of Allah, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful

Praise be to Allah, the Lord of the ‘Alamîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists) and peace be upon the Master of the Messengers, his family and companions.

We, the undersigned, have read this translation of the meanings of Sahîh Al-Bukhârî achieved by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan and have done our best to revise and correct it from its beginning to its end so that, with the ability and efforts available; it has come near to correctness as much as possible.

We thank Allah, the Elevated, for the success of this beneficial project and ask Him to bountifully reward all those who have undertaken it or participated in it — Allah’s Pleasure being our aim, and it is He Who guides us on the Right Path.

Shakîr Nasîf
Al-Ubaydî
M.A. (English),
Vanderbilt University,
U.S.A.,
Teacher of English:
Baghdad University &
College of Education,
Makka.

Dr. Mahmûd
Hamad Nasr
Graduate of
Khartum University,
Physician:
King Hospital,
Al-Madînâ.

Dr. M. Taqî-ud-Dîn
Al-Hilâfî, Ph.D.,
Berlin University,
Germany,
Professor:
Muhammad V University
Morocco;
Islâmîc University,
Al-Madînâ.

I have pursued a portion of this translation and found that the translator has succeeded in rendering the meanings of Al-Jami` As-Sahîh (Sahîh Al-Bukhârî) into English in a simple comprehensible style free from complications. I have also noticed that he has chosen successfully the best and most authentic interpretation of some Ahâdîth that are interpreted differently by different scholars.

Dr. Mahmûd Hamad As-Sûdani did his best to check the whole translation. The second revision was done by Mr. Shakîr Nasîf Al-Ubaydî. Finally, Dr. Muhammad Taqî-ud-Dîn Al-Hilâfî checked the translation with the translator Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan thoroughly and minutely, doing his utmost to correct the minor mistakes he detected, till the translation acquired a high degree of precision.

May Allah bountifully reward whoever has participated in this benevolent work; and may He make people benefit by it.

I am perfectly sure that the translation, with Allah’s Help and after all the great efforts exerted in its production, has neared perfection.

In Allah’s Hands are all means of success. And praise be to Allah, the Lord of the ‘Alamîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists).

MUHAMMAD AMIN AL-MISRI
Ph. D., Cambridge University, England
Head of Higher Studies Department
Islâmîc University, Al-Madînâ Al-Munawwara
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Certificates</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B: Sheikh ‘Umar Muhammad Fullata, General Secretary of Islâmic University, Al-Madina Al-Munawwara</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C: Prof. Dr. Muhammad Amin Al-Misri, Head of Higher Studies Deptt., Islâmic University, Al-Madina Al-Munawwara, (Arabic)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D: (English)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Preface to the New Edition</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Remarks</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Biography of Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>A Note from the Publisher</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Miracles of Prophet Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Introduction, Imâm Bukhâri and his book Sahih Al-Bukhâri</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Transliteration of certain Formulae and their Meanings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Transliteration</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Contents of Sahih Al-Bukhâri, Vol. 1</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sahîh Al-Bukhâri</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION

All the praises and thanks be to Allâh, the Lord of the ‘Alamîn (mankind, jînn and all that exists) and peace be upon the Master of the Messengers — Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم, and then after:-

This translation of the meanings of Sahîh Al-Bukhâri has been revised and the following changes have been made in this new edition:

1. Some additions and alterations have been made to improve the English translation and to bring the English interpretation very close to the correct and exact meanings of the Arabic text.

2. As regards the previous (old) editions of this book (Sahîh Al-Bukhâri) nobody is allowed to reprint or to reproduce it, after this new edition has been published.

3. The new edition of this book is in two forms:
   a. First form — Summarized Sahîh Al-Bukhâri (Az-Zubaidy) At-Tajrid As-Sarih [in one volume].
   b. Second form — Original Sahîh Al-Bukhâri [in nine (9) volumes].

All the praises and thanks be to Allah, the Lord of the ‘Alamîn (mankind, jînn and all that exists) and peace be upon our Prophet Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم his family and his companions.

Translator:

Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khân
Islamic University
Al-Madîna Al-Munawwara
Saudi Arabia.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am greatly indebted to whoever participated in the accomplishment of this translation, especially my doctor colleagues who checked and rechecked the manuscript with great perseverance.

I am pleased to thank particularly Drs. Hasan Nāsir, Atâ Ullâh, Mirzâ Akbar Wâlî, Ramadân Alî Korânî, Shamîl Atîyya, Abdul Qaiyûm and Nizâm Uddîn.

I am grateful to Dr. Mahmûd Nasîr As-Sûdânî who devoted every hour of his leisure time to check the English manuscript comparing it word for word with the Arabic text.

My gratitude and acknowledgements are due to Dr. Muhammad Taqi-ud-Din Al-Hilâli, Ph. D., Berlin University and Mr. Shâkir Nasîf Al-‘Ubaydi, M.A. in English; both took the responsibility of giving the finishing touches to this colossal work by checking and rechecking the English manuscript comparing it with the Arabic version word for word. They chose a suitable system of symbolizing the Arabic sounds, and transliterated the Arabic proper names and other technical terms accordingly. They did their best to improve the structure of the English sentences keeping the style simple and comprehensible. The glossary attached to the book has been compiled by them.

I am grateful to Dr. M. Amin Al-Misri, Ph.D. in Hadîth Literature, for his advice concerning the translation of certain Ahâdîth and for his encouragement and sincere wish for the success of this enterprise.

To the Muslim World League at Makka al-Mukkarrama, I wish to express my deep gratitude and great appreciation for encouraging the project.

I am greatly indebted to the Islamic Religious scholars at Al-Madîna who, when consulted, gave willingly their opinions concerning the interpretation of certain Ahâdîth, etc.

My thanks are also due to Mr. Hasan Subhî and to the typists Mr. Amin Ash-Shâmîm and Mrs. Sharifa Adam Makda who typed and retyped the manuscript patiently.

Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan
Islamic University, Al-Madîna Al-Munawwara
Saudi Arabia.
REMARKS

1. Due to the non-existence of appropriate and equivalent English words for many Arabic words, such words have been transliterated and an explanation has been given immediately after each word when it occurs for the first time and a glossary of such words has been compiled at the end of this book. Certain religious formulas and invocations are also transliterated.

2. The Arabic script is kept as it is for such expressions as تعال (The Most High), رضى الله عنه (peace be upon him), and رضى الله عليه وسلم (Allâh be pleased with him) etc.

3. Some materials concerned with Arabic grammar and etymology have been excluded from the English text.

4. Most of the subnarrators are often omitted when possible and sometimes only the first narrator in each string is kept.

5. Imâm Bukhârî in his Sahîh has classified and arranged the Ahâdîth according to the subject matter which they deal with. He gave to each chapter a title indicating a certain point and under that title he stated down all the Ahâdîth that are relevant. This procedure has resulted in the occurrence of the same Hadîth under various headings, because one Hadîth might deal with a great number of aspects of Islâmîc Jurisprudence. Imâm Bukhârî used each Hadîth so that every point that can be inferred from it is referred to.

The chapters and the Ahâdîth are numbered.

In this translation I have tried my best to convey the meanings of the Ahâdîth of our Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم (peace be upon him) in such a way as to enable the average reader to understand them easily. At the same time I tried to translate the work accurately, taking into consideration the statement of the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم (peace be upon him): “Whoever intentionally falsely ascribes anything to me, shall seek his place in the Hell.”

Suggestions and comments for the improvement of this translation shall be most welcomed.
Biography of Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan

Dr. Muhammad Muhsin s/o Muhi-ud-Din bin Ahmed Al-Essa Al-Khoashki Al-Jamandi Al-Afghani, was born in the year 1345 Al-Hijri, in Qasur, a city of the Punjab Province, in Pakistan.

His grandfathers emigrated from Afghanistan escaping from the wars and tribal strifes. Dr. Muhammad Muhsin belongs to the famous Afghanese tribe Al-Khoashki Al-Jamandi. The residence place of his tribe was the valley of Arghastan south east of the city of Kandhar (Afghanistan).

He had most of his education in that city, then he continued his education till he gained Degree in Medicine and Surgery from the University of Punjab, Lahore. Then he worked in the University Hospital in Lahore, after that he travelled to England and stayed there for about four years, where he got the Diploma of Chest Diseases from the University of Wales. Then he worked in the Ministry of Health, in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. He came during the period of late King Abdul Aziz Al-i-Saud. He stayed in the Ministry of Health for about 15 years, most of that period was in At-Taif, where he worked as the Director of El-Sadad Hospital for the Chest Diseases, then he moved to Al-Madina, where he worked as a Chief of the Department of Chest Diseases in the King’s Hospital. Then lastly, he worked as the Director of the Islamic University Hospital, Al-Madina Al-Munawwara.

In the Name of Allâh, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful

A NOTE FROM THE PUBLISHER

 Islâm is a heavenly system (or regime) for all the dwellers of the earth, and it is a mighty treasure if only mankind realizes its authenticity and truth. And in what a great need the whole world is today for ready understanding and thorough studying of its rules and regulations — i.e. the Noble Qur'ân and the pious Sunna (legal ways, etc.) of Prophet Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم as these (the Qur'ân and As-Sunna) accede to the demand of the people to know their Creator (the All-Mighty Allâh, the Blessed, the Most High); organize and regulate the relations between them on the foundations of (Godly) Divine Justice and equality; and respond to the human nature equally to that, which makes sure for them their welfare (happiness) in this world and in the Hereafter (after their deaths).

And how many disasters, calamities and wars, the mankind of the whole world is suffering because of their differences in their faith, and organizations, which have broken them into the worst type of breaking, so there remains no way out for any security or any safety or any peace except with Islâm, i.e., by putting in practice the Laws of their Creator, Allâh, i.e. the Qur'ân and As-Sunna).

Invitation to Islâm is incumbent upon all those who have known it, and have enjoyed its taste and have been guided through its guidance. In fact, it is a great responsibility and a trust (of Allâh) over (the shoulders of) all those who know Islâm, to preach it to mankind and invite them to it in a language which they speak and understand.

This above mentioned responsibility was realized by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin, a physician, specialist in chest diseases, who worked for a period of time in England, and then he moved from there and settled in Al-Madîna Al-Munawwara, after he witnessed an amazing matter of great fear and splendour during a dream at night. He saw the Messenger of Allâh, Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم in that dream and the seeing of Prophet Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم in a dream means the truth. He saw him صلى الله عليه وسلم in a great gathering and Muhammad Muhsin went ahead to kiss his صلى الله عليه وسلم knees, but the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم did not allow him to kiss them. He صلى الله عليه وسلم was sweating profusely and Muhammad Muhsin started drinking his صلى الله عليه وسلم sweat till he felt satisfied (as if a thirsty man drinks water till his thirst is quenched). Then the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم asked him for a piece of paper and wrote on it that he صلى الله عليه وسلم wants him. Then the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم stamped it (that piece of written paper) with his stamp (Muhammad, the Messenger of Allâh)… till the end of the dream.
So when Muhammad Muhsin got up (from his dream), he was shaken by the amazement, fear and splendour of that dream!!! He asked the religious learned scholars about the interpretation of that dream. Some of them informed him that he will narrate the {Ahadîth} (statements, etc.) of the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم. So he looked for the project that can serve Islâm, i.e. by inviting and preaching those amongst human beings who can speak and understand English, he found that there is the book {Sahîh (Al-Imâm) Al-Bukhârî} and that is the most authentic and true among the books of the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم, which needs to be translated into the English language. So he went ahead for it, to translate its meanings. He started this colossal work with the Help of Allâh, putting his each and every effort. The project took nearly twelve years and the book (nine volumes, Arabic-English) was completed and printed with the Help of Allâh. All the praises and thanks be to Allâh (the only God and Lord of all), with Whose blessings are completed the righteous deeds. Peace, Blessings and Graces of Allâh be upon our Prophet Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم, his family and his Companions.

Lastly I thank all the brothers who participated in the accomplishment of this colossal work particularly brother Saeeduddin and brother Mohammad Munawar who checked and rechecked again and again the manuscript with great perseverance. May Allah the All-Mighty bestow on them a great reward in this world and in the Hereafter.

ABDUL MALIK MUJAHID
General Manager
DARUSSALAM
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia.

I, the undersigned Dr. Muhammad Mohsin Khan, the Translator of Sahih Al-Bukhari, The Noble Qur'an and the Book Al-Lu-Lu Wal-Marjan in English language, hereby, authorize Brother Abdul Malik Mujahid s/o Muhammad Younus (Pakistani National) to print, publish and reproduce the above mentioned Books in editions of various sizes and volumes all over the world in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording or by any information storage and retrieval system.

This authorization will remain valid in all conditions irrespective of any time limit.

Allah is the Surety over what I say.

Dr. Muhammad Mohsin Khan

1. Copy for information to Islamic University, Medina Al-Munawara.
2. Copy for the sons & family of Dr. Muhsin Khan in Medina Al-Munawara.
At this point I would like to bring to the notice of the reader that the Prophet was granted many miracles by Allah (the Lord of the heavens and the earth) and some of them are as follows:

1. The Noble Qur’ân is the living miracle bestowed by Allah upon Prophet Muhammad and this, Allah’s Book, was revealed to him through the Ruh-ul-Qudus (Gabriel). Today 1400 years have passed and nobody has been able to change a single letter or produce its imitation, as it is said in the Qur’ân (see Sûrah Hijr, V.15:9) and the statement of the Prophet: “Before me, every Prophet was given a miracle and they practised it during their lifetime: e.g., ‘Îsâ (Jesus) used to cure the sick and make the dead alive, etc., Mûsâ (Moses) was given the stick etc., and I have been given the permanent miracle of the Qur’an till the Hour is established, so I hope that my followers will be more in number than all the other Messengers’ as my miracle will last till the Day of Resurrection, and it is a Glorious Book; when anyone reads it, even if he is a pagan, etc., he is convinced that it is produced by none but by the Creator of the heavens and the earth.”

2. The splitting of the moon: Narrated Anas that the Makkans requested Allah’s Messenger to show them a miracle, so he showed them the splitting of the moon. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3637).

3. The crying of the stem of the date-palm tree in the Prophet’s Mosque: Narrated Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet used to deliver his Khutba (religious talk) while leaning against a trunk of a date-palm tree. When he had the pulpit made and used it instead, the trunk started crying and the Prophet went to it, rubbing his hand over it (to stop its crying). (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3583).

4. The flowing of the water from among the fingers of Allah’s Messenger (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3579).

Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh: I was with the Prophet and the time for the ‘Asr prayer became due. We had no water with us except a little which was put in a vessel and was brought to the Prophet. He put his hand into it and spread out his fingers and then said, “Come along! Hurry up! All
those who want to perform ablution. The blessing is from Allah.” I saw the water gushing out from his fingers. So the people performed the ablution and drank, and I tried to drink more of that water (beyond my thirst and capacity), for I knew that it was a blessing. The subnarrator said: I asked Jâbir, “How many persons were you then?” He replied, “We were one thousand four hundred men.” (Salim said: Jâbir said — 1500). (Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 5639).

5. The Prophet’s meals used to glorify Allah while he ate, and this glorification was heard by the Companions of the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3579).

6. Stones used to greet the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم whenever he passed by through the lanes of Makkah.

7. The throwing out of a dead body of a Christian by the earth: Narrated Anas: There was a Christian who embraced Islâm and read Sûrat Al-Baqarah and Al-‘Imrân and he used to write the revelation for the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم. Later on he reverted to Christianity and used to say, “Muhammad knows nothing but what I have written for him.” Then Allah caused him to die and the people buried him but in the morning they found that the earth had thrown out his body. They said, “This is the deed of Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم and his companions. They have opened the grave of our companion and took his body out because he ran away from them,” so they again dug the grave deeper for him, but in the morning they again found that the earth had thrown the body out. They said, “This is a deed of Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم and his companions.” So they dug a third grave for him as deep as they could, but in the morning they found that the earth had thrown the body out. Then they believed what had befallen him, was not done by mankind, and they had to leave the body on the ground. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3617).

8. The screening (shading) by the trees, for the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم to answer the call of nature.

9. The rising of water in the well at Hudaibîya after it had dried. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3577).

10. The increase in the amount of dates in the garden of Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh after the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم went round the heaps of
dates and invoked Allâh for His Blessings. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 3580).

11. Speaking of the wolf: It has been written that a wolf also spoke to one of the Companions of the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم near Al-Madîna, as narrated in Musnad of Ahmad, Vol.3, Musnad Abi Saeed Al-Khudri. Narrated Abi Saeed Al-Khudri : (While a shepherd was amongst his sheep) suddenly a wolf attacked a sheep and took it away. The shepherd chased the wolf and took back the sheep. The wolf sat on its tail and addressed the shepherd saying: “Be afraid of Allâh, you have taken the provision from me which Allâh gave me.” The shepherd said: “What an amazing thing! A wolf sitting on its tail speaks to me in the language of a human being.” The wolf said: “Shall I tell you something more amazing than this? There is Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم (the Messenger of Allâh) in Yathrib (Al-Madîna) informing the people about the news of the past.” Then the shepherd proceeded (towards Al-Madîna) driving his sheep till he entered Al-Madîna (city), cornered his sheep to one side and came to Allâh’s Messenger (Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم) and informed the whole story. Allâh’s Messenger ordered for the proclamation of a congregational prayer (صلاة جامعه), then he صلى الله عليه وسلم came out and asked the shepherd to inform the people (about his story) and he informed them. Then Allâh’s Messenger صلى الله عليه وسلم said: “He (the shepherd) has spoken the truth. By Him (Allâh) in Whose Hands my soul is, the Day of Resurrection will not be established till beasts of prey (كع) speak to the human beings, and the stick lash and the shoe-laces of a person speak to him and his thigh informs him about his family as to what happened to them after him. [Musnad of Ahmad, Vol.3, Musnad Abi Saeed Al-Khudri].

12. The Mi‘râj: The Ascent of the Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم to the heavens. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Hadîth No. 349 and Hadîth No.3887).
INTRODUCTION

Imam Bukhari and his Book Sahih Al-Bukhari

It has been unanimously agreed that Imâm Bukhârî’s work is the most authentic of all the other works in Hadîth literature put together. The authenticity of Al-Bukhârî’s work is such that the religious learned scholars of Islâm said concerning him: “The most authentic book after the Book of Allâh (i.e. Al-Qur’ân) is Sahîh Al-Bukhârî.”

Imâm Bukhârî was born on 13th Shawwâl in the year 194 A.H. in Bukhârâ in the territory of Khurâsân (West Turkistân). His real name is Muhammad bin Ismâîl bin Al-Mughîrah Al-Bukhârî.

His father died when he was still a young child and he was looked after by his mother. At the age of ten he started acquiring the knowledge of Hadîth. He travelled to Makkah when he was sixteen years old accompanied by his mother and elder brother. It seemed as though Imâm Bukhârî loved Makkah and its learned religious scholars for he remained in Makkah after bidding farewell to his mother and brother. He spent two years in Makkah and then went to Al-Madîna. After spending a total of six years in Al-Hijâz which comprises Makkah and Al-Madîna, he left for Basrah, Kûfa and Baghdâd and visited many other places including Egypt and Syria. He came to Baghdad on many occasions. He met many religious learned scholars including Imâm Ahmad bin Hanbal.

Owing to his honesty and kindness and the fact that he was trustworthy he used to keep away from the princes and rulers for fear that he may incline to say things to please them.

Many a story has been told about Imâm Bukhârî regarding his struggles in collecting Hadîth literature. He travelled to many different places gathering the precious gems that fell from the lips of the noble Prophet Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم. It is said that Imâm Bukhârî collected over 300,000 Ahadîth and he himself memorized 200,000 of which some were unreliable. He was born at a time
when Hadîth was being forged either to please rulers or kings or to corrupt the religion of Islâm.

It is said that Imâm Bukhârî (before compiling Sahih Al-Bukhârî) saw in a dream, standing in front of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ having a fan in his hand and driving away the flies from the Prophet ﷺ. Imâm Bukhârî asked some of those who interpret dreams, and they interpreted his dream that he will drive away the falsehood asserted against the Prophet ﷺ.

So it was a great task for him to sift the forged Ahadîth from the authentic ones. He laboured day and night and although he had memorised such a large number he only chose approximately 7,275 with repetition and about 2,230 without repetition of which there is no doubt about their authenticity.

Before he recorded each Hadîth, he would make ablution and offer a two Rak'at prayer and supplicate his Lord (Allâh). Many religious scholars of Islâm tried to find fault in the great remarkable collection — Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, but without success. It is for this reason, they unanimously agreed that the most authentic book after the Book of Allâh is Sahîh Al-Bukhârî.

Imâm Bukhârî died on first Shawwâl in the year 256 A.H., and was buried in Khartank, a village near Samarkand. May Allâh have mercy on his soul.

Dr. Muhammad Muhsin
Islâmic University, Al-Madîna Al-Munawwara (Saudi Arabia)
TRANSLITERATION OF CERTAIN FORMULAE AND THEIR MEANINGS

1. Allâhumma aslamtu wajhî 'ilaika, wa fawwadtu amrî 'ilaika, wa 'aljatu zahî 'ilaika raghbatan-wa rahbatan 'ilaika. Là malâja' minka illâ 'ilaika. Allâhumma âmantu bikitâbikal-ladhî anzalta wa binabîyikal-ladhî 'arsalta.

[O Allâh! I surrender to You and trust You in all my affairs and depend upon You for Your Blessings both with hope and fear of You. There is no place of protection and safety except with You. O Allâh! I believe in the Book (the Qur’ân) You have revealed and in the Prophet (Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم) whom You have sent].

2. Wa ash-hadu anna Muhammadan Rasûl-ullâh.
[And I testify that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh].

3. Haiya ‘alas-Salâh.
[Come for the prayer]

4. Là hawla walâ quwata illâ billâh.
[There is neither might nor any power except with Allâh].

5. Allâhumma Rabba hâdhihi-dda-watit-tâmmati was-salâtil-qâ’imati, âti Muhammadanil-wasilata wal-fadîlata, wab ‘athhu maqâman Mahmûda nil-ladhî wa‘ad-tahu.
[O Allâh! Lord of this perfect call and of the regular prayer which is going to be established! Kindly give Muhammad صلى الله عليه وسلم the right of intercession and superiority and send him (on the Day of Judgement) to the best and the highest place in Paradise which You promised him].

[Allâh heard those who sent praises to Him].

7. Rabbanâ wa lakal-hamd.
[O our Lord! All the praises are for You].

[O Allâh! Set me apart from the sins (faults) as east and west are set apart from each other and cleanse me from sins as a white garment is
cleaned of dirt (after thorough washing). O Allâh! Wash off my sins with water, snow and hail].

9. **Al-hamdu lillâhi Rabbil-‘alâmîn.**
   [All praises and thanks be to Allâh, the Lord of ‘Alâmîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists).]

10. **At-tahâyyâtu lillâhi was-salawâtu wat-taiyibâtu. As-salâmu ‘alaika aiyuhan-Nabîyu wa rahmatu-ilâhi wa barakâtuhu. As-salâmu ‘alanâ wa ‘ala‘ibâdillâh is-sâlihîn.**
   [All the compliments, prayers and good things are due to Allâh; peace be on you, O Prophet, and Allâh’s Mercy and Blessings be on you. Peace be on us and on the true pious devotees of Allâh].

11. **Allâhumma innî a‘ûdhu bika min ‘adhâbil-qabri, wa a’ûdhu bika min fitnatil-masîh-id-dajjâl, wa a’udhu bika min fitnatil-mahyâ wal-mamâti. Allâhumma innî a‘ûdhu bika minal-mâ’thami wal-maghamrami.**
   [O Allâh! I seek Your Protection against the punishment of the grave and against the Fitnah (trial and affliction) of Masîh Ad-Dajjâl and the Fitnah (trial and afflictions) of life and death. O Allâh, I seek Your Protection against sins and debts].

12. **Allâhumma innî zalamtu nafsî zulman kathiranw-walâ yaghfirudhunâba illâ anta, faghfîrî maghfuratam-min ‘indika, war-hamnî innaka antal-Ghafîr-ur-Rahîm.**
   [O Allâh! I have done great injustice to myself and none except You forgive sins, so please forgive me and be Merciful to me as You are the Oft-Forgiver, the Most Merciful].

13. **Lâ-ilâha illallâhu wahdahu lâ sharîka lahu, lahul-mulku wa lahul-hamdu, wa Huwa ‘ala kulli shai’in Qadîr. Allâhumma lâ mâni ‘a limâ a’taita, wa lâmû‘tiya limâ mana‘ta, wa lâ yanfa‘u dhal-jaddî minkal-jadd.**
   [None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and He has no partners in worship (nothing is to be worshipped) along with Him, for Him is the kingdom and all the praises are for Him and He is Omnipotent. O Allâh! Nobody can hold back what You give and nobody can give what You hold back, and hard efforts by anyone (or good luck or riches) for anything cannot benefit one against Your Will and Decisions].
**TRANSLITERATION**

In transliterating Arabic words, the following system of symbols has been used:

1. **Consonants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic script</th>
<th>English symbol</th>
<th>English words having similar sounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>أ</td>
<td>a'**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ب</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>bless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ت</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ث</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ج</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ح</td>
<td>h**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>خ</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>د</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>dear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ذ</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ر</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ز</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>س</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ش</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ص</td>
<td>s**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ض</td>
<td>d**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ط</td>
<td>t**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ظ</td>
<td>z**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ع</td>
<td>a'***</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>غ</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ف</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ق</td>
<td>q**</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ك</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ل</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>م</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ن</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic script</td>
<td>English symbol</td>
<td>English words having similar sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ه</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>و</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ي</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>youth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This symbol represents a glottal stop (transliterated medially and finally and not represented in transliteration when initial).

** These sounds have no equivalent sounds in English.

Native speakers of English usually identify them with familiar English sounds in the following manner:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ح</th>
<th>h</th>
<th>h</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ص</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ض</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ط</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ظ</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ق</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*** The Arabic sounds represented by the symbols (‘ / ’) and the ones mentioned in the previous note are to be learned by imitating the native speakers of Arabic, if one wants to be exact in their pronunciation.

2. Vowels

There are only six vowels in Arabic; three of them are short and the other three are long. They are symbolized in the following way:

- a approximately as in ‘bad’
- i as in ‘bid’
- u as in ‘pull’
- å as in ‘father’
- î as in ‘bread’
- û as in ‘pool’
In the Name of Allâh, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful
1 - THE BOOK OF REVELATION .................. 45
(1) CHAPTER. How the Divine Revelation started to be revealed to Allah's Messenger ﷺ ........ 45
(2) CHAPTER. ................................ 46
(3) CHAPTER. ................................ 46
(4) CHAPTER. ................................ 49
(5) CHAPTER. ................................ 50
(6) CHAPTER. ................................ 50

2 - THE BOOK OF BELIEF (FAITH) .............. 56
(1) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ, 'Islam is based on five principles ...... 56
(2) CHAPTER. Your invocation means your faith ........................................ 57
(3) CHAPTER. (What is said) regarding the deeds of faith ....................... 58
(4) CHAPTER. A Muslim is the one who avoids harming Muslims with his tongue and hands ... 59
(5) CHAPTER. Whose Islam is the best (Who is the best Muslim)? ............. 60
(6) CHAPTER. To feed (others) is a part of Islam .................................... 60
(7) CHAPTER. To like for one's (Muslim's) brother what one likes for himself is a part of faith .... 60
(8) CHAPTER. To love the Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) is a part of faith .......... 61
(9) CHAPTER. Sweetness (delight) of faith ............................................. 61
(10) CHAPTER. To love the Anṣār is a sign of faith: ............................... 62
(11) CHAPTER............................... 62
(12) CHAPTER. To flee (run away) from Al-Fitn (afflictions and trials), is a part of religion .......... 63
(13) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “I know Allāh better, than all of you do.” ............... 63
(14) CHAPTER. Whoever hates to revert to Kufr .................................. 64
(15) CHAPTER. The grades in superiority of the believers will be according to their good deeds........ 64
(16) CHAPTER. Al-Hayā’ (self-respect, modesty bashfulness, honour etc.) is a part of faith ............ 65
(17) CHAPTER. (The Statement of Allāh ﷺ), “But if they repent [by rejecting Shirk (polytheism) and accept Islamic Monotheism] and perform As-Salāt (Iqamat-as-Ṣalāt) and give Zakāt then leave their way free.” .................................................. 66
(18) CHAPTER. Whoever says that faith is action (good deeds) ............... 66
(19) CHAPTER. If one does not embrace Islām truly but does so by compulsion or for fear of being killed (then that man is not a believer) .................................................. 67
(20) CHAPTER. To greet is a part of Islām ............................................. 68
(21) CHAPTER. To be ungrateful to one's husband. And disbelief is of (different grades) lesser (or greater) degrees .................................................. 69
(22) CHAPTER. Sins are from ignorance and a sinner is not a disbeliever unless he worships
others along with Allāh. And if two parties (or groups) from among the believers fall to fighting, then make peace between them both..." Allāh has called them "believers."  

(23) CHAPTER. Zulm (wrong) of one kind can be greater or lesser than that of another. 

(24) CHAPTER. The signs of a hypocrite. 

(25) CHAPTER. To establish the (Nawāfil - voluntary) prayers on the night of Qadr is a part of faith. 

(26) CHAPTER. Al-Jihād (holy fighting in Allāh’s Cause) is a part of faith. 

(27) CHAPTER. It is a part of faith to establish the (Nawāfil — voluntary) prayers during the nights of Ramadān. 

(28) CHAPTER. To observe Saum [(fasts) (according to Islamic teachings)] during the month of Ramadān (sincerely and faithfully) hoping for Allāh’s Rewards only, is a part of faith. 

(29) CHAPTER. Religion is very easy. 

(30) CHAPTER. The (offering of) Salāt (prayers) is a part of faith. 

(31) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding the superiority of) a person who embraces Islām sincerely. 

(32) CHAPTER. Ad-Din (good, righteous deed – act of worship) loved most by Allāh جَلَّ جَلَّهُ is that which is done regularly. (And in fact the best religion with Allāh is Islām). 

(33) CHAPTER. Faith increases and decreases. 

(34) CHAPTER. To pay Zakāt is a part of Islām. 

(35) CHAPTER. To accompany the funeral processions (up to the place of burial) is a part of faith. 

(36) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding) the fear of a believer that his good deeds may be annulled (lost) without his knowledge. 

(37) CHAPTER. The asking of (angel) Jibrīl (Gabriel) from the Prophet ﷺ about Belief, Islām, Iḥsān (perfection) and the knowledge of the Hour (Doomsday). 

(38) CHAPTER. The superiority of that person who leaves all doubtful (unclear) things for the sake of his religion. 

(39) CHAPTER. To pay Al-Khums (one-fifth of the war booty to be given in Allāh’s Cause) is a part of faith. 

(40) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the statement: “The reward of deeds depends upon the intention and hoping to get rewards from Allāh.” 

(41) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: Religion is An-Nasīḥah (to be sincere and true) to Allāh, to His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ to the Muslim rulers, and to all the Muslims. 

3 – THE BOOK OF KNOWLEDGE 

(1) CHAPTER. The superiority of knowledge. 

(2) CHAPTER. Whoever is asked about knowledge while he is busy in some conversation, so he finished his talk, and then answered the questioner. 

(3) CHAPTER. Whoever raises his voice in (conveying) knowledge. 

(4) CHAPTER. Concerning variety of words used by the narrators conveying different significations regarding the concept of narrating and which has importance for the Hadith scholars only. 

(5) CHAPTER. The Imām ques-
tioning his companions in order to test their knowledge................. 90
(6) CHAPTER. What is said about knowledge.......................... 90
(7) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the hand to hand exchange (of books of knowledge), and the writing of knowledge by religious scholars to different countries.............. 93
(8) CHAPTER. Whoever sat at the farther end of a gathering. And whoever found a place amongst a gathering and took his seat there... 94
(9) CHAPTER. The Statement of the Prophet ﷺ: It is probable that a person who receives a piece of information indirectly may comprehend it better than he who has heard it directly from its source.” .......... 95
(10) CHAPTER. It is essential to know a thing first before saying or acting upon it............................ 96
(11) CHAPTER. The Prophet ﷺ used to take care of the people in preaching by selecting a suitable time so that they might not run away (never made them averse or bored them with religious talk and knowledge all the time)....................... 97
(12) CHAPTER. Whoever fixed a special day for giving (a religious talk) to the students.......................... 97
(13) CHAPTER. If Allâh جَلَّ جَلَالُهُ wants to do good to a person, He makes him comprehend (the religion). [The understanding of the Qur’ân and Al-Ṣunna (legal ways) of the Prophet (Muḥammad ﷺ)]... 98
(14) CHAPTER. (The superiority of) comprehending knowledge...... 98
(15) CHAPTER. Wish to be like the one who has knowledge and Al-Ḥikmah [wisdom i.e., the knowledge of the Qur’ân and the Sunna (legal ways) of the Prophet ﷺ]..... 99
(16) CHAPTER. What has been said about the journey of Prophet Mûsa (Moses) ﷺ goes (when he went) in the sea to meet Al-Khîdr... 99
(17) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “O Allâh! Bestow on him (Ibn ‘Abbãs) the knowledge of the Book (the Qur’ân).” .......... 101
(18) CHAPTER. At what age may a youth be listened to (i.e. quotation of the Ḥadîth from a boy be acceptable)................................. 101
(19) CHAPTER. To go out in search of knowledge......................... 102
(20) CHAPTER. The superiority of a person who learns (Islam, becomes a religious scholar) and then teaches it to others.......................... 103
(21) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding) the disappearance of the (religious) knowledge and the appearance of (religious) ignorance... 104
(22) CHAPTER. The superiority of (religious) knowledge.................. 104
(23) CHAPTER. To give a religious verdict while riding an animal or standing on anything else............ 105
(24) CHAPTER. Whoever gave a religious verdict by beckoning or by nodding................................. 105
(25) CHAPTER. The Prophet ﷺ urged the people (mission) of ‘Abdul Qais to memorize the faith and the (religious) knowledge (as he explained to them) and to inform (convey) to their people whom they have left behind (at home).................. 107
(26) CHAPTER. To travel seeking an answer to a problematic matter, and to teach it to one’s family...... 108
(27) CHAPTER. To fix the duties in rotation for learning (religious) knowledge................................. 109
(28) CHAPTER. To be furious while preaching or teaching if one sees what one hates.............................. 110
(29) CHAPTER. Whoever knelt down before the Imam or a (religious) preacher................................. 111
(30) CHAPTER. Repeating one’s talk thrice in order to make others understand. ......................... 112
(31) CHAPTER. A man teaching (religion to) his woman-slave and his family. .......................... 113
(32) CHAPTER. The preaching (and teaching) of the (religious) knowledge to women by the Imãm (Chief): ........................................ 114
(33) CHAPTER. Eagerness to (learn) the Ḥadîth ........................................ 115
(34) CHAPTER. How the (religious) knowledge will be taken away?........................................ 115
(35) CHAPTER. Should a day be fixed for women in order to teach them religion (apart from men)? ... 115
(36) CHAPTER. Whoever heard something (but did not understand it) and then asked again till he understood it completely. ................. 116
(37) CHAPTER. It is incumbent on those who are present [in a religious meeting (or conference)] to convey the knowledge to those who are absent. ......................................... 117
(38) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who tells a lie against the Prophet ................................. 118
(39) CHAPTER. The writing of knowledge............................................. 119
(40) CHAPTER. The knowledge and its teaching and preaching at night .................................. 122
(41) CHAPTER. To speak about (religious) knowledge at night ........................................... 122
(42) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding) the memorization of the (religious) knowledge............. 123
(43) CHAPTER. To be quiet (and listen) to religious learned men................................. 125
(44) CHAPTER. When a religious learned man is asked, “Who is the most learned person,” it is better for him to attribute or entrust absolute knowledge to Allâh and to say, “Allâh is the Most Learned (than anybody else).”............................... 125
(45) CHAPTER. Whosoever, while standing, asked a religious learned man who was sitting (on a pulpit or a similar thing, about something) ...... 128
(46) CHAPTER. To ask about a religious matter and to give a religious verdict (at Mina during Hajj) while doing the Ramy of Jimâr (throwing of pebbles at the Jimâr in Mina during Hajj)................. 128
(47) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allâh : “And of knowledge you (mankind) have been given only a little.”..................................................................... 129
(48) CHAPTER. Whosoever left some optional things simply for the fear that some people may not be able to understand them and may fall into something more difficult... 130
(49) CHAPTER. Whoever selected some people to teach them (religious) knowledge preferring them over others for fear that the others may not understand it................................. 130
(50) CHAPTER. (What is said as regards): To be shy (Al-Ḥayâ) while learning (religious) knowledge........ 131
(51) CHAPTER. Whosoever felt shy (to ask something) and then requested another person to ask on his behalf.............................................................. 133
(52) CHAPTER. Teaching religious knowledge and giving religious verdicts in a mosque......................... 133
(53) CHAPTER. Whosoever answered to the questioner more than what he asked............................. 133

4 – THE BOOK OF WUḌŪ‘ (ABLUTION) ........................................... 135

(1) CHAPTER. What has been revealed regarding ablution?.............. 135
(2) CHAPTER. No Salât (prayer) is accepted without ablution (i.e. to remove, the small Ḥadâth by ablution or the big Ḥadâth by taking a
(3) CHAPTER. The superiority of ablution. And Al-Ghurr-ul-Muhajja-lūn (the parts of the body of the Muslims washed in ablution will shine on the Day of Resurrection and the angels will call them by that name) from the traces of ablution. 135

(4) CHAPTER. One should not repeat ablution if in doubt unless and until he is convinced (that he has lost his ablution by having Ḥadaṭh). 136

(5) CHAPTER. To perform a light ablution. 136

(6) CHAPTER. The completion (or perfection) of ablution (one should wash all the parts perfectly). 137

(7) CHAPTER. To wash the face with both hands by a handful of water. 138

(8) CHAPTER. To recite “In the Name of Allāh,” during every action and on having sexual relations with one’s wife. 139

(9) CHAPTER. What to say while going to the lavatory (water closet). 139

(10) CHAPTER. Providing water at lavatories (for washing the private parts after answering the call of nature). 140

(11) CHAPTER. While urinating or defecating, never face the Qiblah except when you are screened by a building or a wall or something like that. 140

(12) CHAPTER. Defecating while sitting over two bricks. 140

(13) CHAPTER. The going out of women for answering the call of nature. 141

(14) CHAPTER. To defecate in houses. 142

(15) CHAPTER. To wash the private parts with water after answering the call of nature. 142

(16) CHAPTER. Getting water carried by somebody else for purification (washing one’s private parts). 143

(17) CHAPTER. To carry an ‘Anaza (spear-headed stick) along with the water for washing the private parts after answering the call of nature. 143

(18) CHAPTER. It is forbidden to clean the private parts with the right hand. 144

(19) CHAPTER. While passing urine one should not hold his penis with his right hand. 144

(20) CHAPTER. To clean the private parts with stones. 144

(21) CHAPTER. Do not clean the private parts with dung. 145

(22) CHAPTER. The washing of the body parts (i.e., the parts which are washed in ablution) once only while performing ablution. 145

(23) CHAPTER. The washing of the body parts twice while performing ablution. 145

(24) CHAPTER. The washing of the parts thrice while performing ablution. 146

(25) CHAPTER. The cleaning of the nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out during ablution. 147

(26) CHAPTER. To clean the private parts with odd number of stones. 147

(27) CHAPTER. Washing both feet, and it is not sufficient to pass wet hands over the feet. 148

(28) CHAPTER. To rinse the mouth with water while performing ablution. 148

(29) CHAPTER. The washing of heels during ablution. 149

(30) CHAPTER. Washing the feet, when one is wearing shoes; and it is not sufficient for one to pass a wet hand over the shoes (but one should take off the shoes and wash one’s feet). 149

(31) CHAPTER. While performing ablution or taking a bath one should start from the right side of the body. 150

(32) CHAPTER. To look for water
(for ablution) when the time for the prayer is due. .......................... 151

(33) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the water with which human hair has been washed. .......................... 151

CHAPTER. If a dog drinks from the utensil of any one of you then it is essential to wash it seven times. .... 152

(34) CHAPTER. Whosoever considers not to repeat ablution except if something is discharged or passed from either exit (front or back private parts). .......................... 153

(35) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding) a man who helps his companion to perform ablution (by pouring water for him). .......................... 156

(36) CHAPTER. The recitation of Qur'an or doing other invocations etc. after Ḥadāt. .......................... 157

(37) CHAPTER. Whoever does not repeat ablution except after falling into deep sleep — losing consciousness completely. .......................... 158

(38) CHAPTER. To pass wet hands over the whole head during ablution. .......................... 159

(39) CHAPTER. The washing of feet up to the ankles. .......................... 160

(40) CHAPTER. The using of the remaining water after ablution. .......................... 161

CHAPTER. .......................... 162

(41) CHAPTER. Rinsing one's mouth and putting water in one's nose and cleaning it by blowing the water out with a single handful of water. .......................... 162

(42) CHAPTER. The passing of wet hands over the head once only (while performing ablution). .......................... 163

(43) CHAPTER. The performance of ablution by a man along with his wife. The utilization of water remaining after a woman has performed ablution. 'Umar performed ablution with warm water and with water brought from the house of a Christian woman. .......................... 163

(44) CHAPTER. The sprinkling of remaining water after performing ablution on an unconscious person by the Prophet . .......................... 164

(45) CHAPTER. To take a bath or perform ablution from a Mikhāl (utensil), a tumbler, or a wooden or stone pot. .......................... 164

(46) CHAPTER. To perform ablution from an earthen-ware pot. .......................... 166

(47) CHAPTER. To perform ablution with one Mudd of water. (Mudd is practically 2/3 of a Kilogram): .......................... 167

(48) CHAPTER. To pass wet hands over Khuffain [two leather socks covering the ankles]. .......................... 167

(49) CHAPTER. If one puts on (Khuff) just after performing ablution (there is no need to wash one's feet again in ablution) (24 hours for non-travellers and three days for travellers). .......................... 168

(50) CHAPTER. Not repeating ablution after eating mutton and As-Sawiq. .......................... 169

(51) CHAPTER. Rinsing one's mouth (with water) after eating As-Sawīq without repeating ablution. .......................... 169

(52) CHAPTER. Whether to rinse the mouth after drinking milk. .......................... 170

(53) CHAPTER. Ablution after sleep. And whoever considers it unnecessary to repeat ablution after dozing once or twice or after nodding once in slumber. .......................... 170

(54) CHAPTER. To perform ablution even on having no Ḥadāt. .......................... 171

(55) CHAPTER. One of the major sins is not to protect oneself (one's clothes and body) from one's urine (i.e. from being soiled with it). .......................... 172

(56) CHAPTER. What is said regarding washing out urine. .......................... 172

CHAPTER. .......................... 173

(57) CHAPTER. The Prophet and the people left the bedouin undisturbed till he finished urinating in the mosque. .......................... 173

(58) CHAPTER. The pouring of water over the urine in the mosque. .......................... 174
CHAPTER. The spilling of water over the place where there is urine. 174

(59) CHAPTER. The urine of children......................... 175
(60) CHAPTER. To pass urine while standing and sitting........ 175
(61) CHAPTER. To urinate beside one's companion while screened by a wall........................................ 176
(62) CHAPTER. To urinate near the dumps of some people........ 176
(63) CHAPTER. The washing out of blood........................ 176

(64) CHAPTER. The washing out of semen with water and rubbing it off (when it is dry) and the washing out of what comes out of women (i.e. discharge). ........................................ 177
(65) CHAPTER. If the (traces of) Janba (semen) or other spots are not removed completely on washing..... 178
(66) CHAPTER. (What is said) about the urine of camels, sheep and other animals and about their folds......................................................... 178

(67) CHAPTER. An-Najäsat (impure and filthy things) which fall in cooking butter (ghee — which is obtained by evaporating moisture from butter) and water.......... 179
(68) CHAPTER. Urinating in stagnant water..................... 180

(69) CHAPTER. If a dead body or a polluted thing is put on the back of a person offering Salât (prayer), his Salât will not be annulled (rejected by Allah). ........................................ 181

(70) CHAPTER. Spitting or blowing out the nose or doing similar action in one's own garment............... 183
(71) CHAPTER. It is unlawful to perform ablution with Nabidh (water in which dates or grapes etc. are soaked and is not yet fermented) or with any other intoxicant......................... 183

(72) CHAPTER. Washing blood by a woman off her father's face. ........ 185
(73) CHAPTER. Siwâk (to clean the teeth with Siwâk which is a toothbrush in the form of a pencil from the roots of the Arak tree)................. 184
(74) CHAPTER. To give Siwâk to the oldest person of the group..... 185
(75) CHAPTER. The superiority of a person who sleeps with ablution.. 185

5 – THE BOOK OF GHUSL
(Washing of the whole body) 187

(1) CHAPTER. The performance of ablution before taking a bath......... 187
(2) CHAPTER. Taking a bath by a man along with his wife................. 188
(3) CHAPTER. Taking a bath with a Sâ’ of water or so. (One Sâ’ = 3 kilograms approx.) ................. 188
(4) CHAPTER. Pouring water thrice on one’s head.................. 190
(5) CHAPTER. To wash the body (parts) once only.................. 191
(6) CHAPTER. Starting one’s bath by scenting oneself with Hilab or some other scent.................. 191
(7) CHAPTER. To rinse the mouth and to clean the nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out while taking the bath of Janâba..... 191
(8) CHAPTER. The rubbing of hands with earth in order to clean them thoroughly.................. 192
(9) CHAPTER. Can a Junub (a person who has yet to take a bath after the sexual act or wet dream) put his hands in a pot (containing water) before washing them if they are not polluted with a dirty thing except Janabâ? .......................... 192
(10) CHAPTER. Interval during ablution or bath....................... 193
(11) CHAPTER. Pouring water with one’s right hand over the left one, during the bath.................. 194
(12) CHAPTER. Having sexual intercourse and repeating it. And engaging with one’s own wives and taking a single bath (after doing so).................. 195
(13) CHAPTER. The washing away
of emotional urethral discharge and performing ablution after it......... 196
(14) CHAPTER. Whoever scented himself and then took a bath while
the effect of scent remained even after bathing............. 196
(15) CHAPTER. To rub the hair thoroughly (while taking a bath) till
one feels that one has made his skin wet (underneath the hair) and then
one pours water over it.............. 196
(16) CHAPTER. Whoever per-
formed the ablution of Janâba and
then washed his body but did not
wash once again the parts which
were washed in ablution.............. 197
(17) CHAPTER. If someone while
in the mosque remembers that he is
Junub, he should leave (the mosque
to take a bath) and should not
perform Tayammum................ 198
(18) CHAPTER. The removing of
water from one's body with one's
hands after taking the bath of
Janâba...................................... 198
(19) CHAPTER. Starting from the
right side of one's head while taking
a bath........................................ 199
(20) CHAPTER. Whosoever took a
bath alone (in seclusion) completely
naked........................................ 199
(21) CHAPTER. To screen oneself
from the people while taking a bath. 200
(22) CHAPTER. If a woman has a
wet dream (nocturnal sexual di-
charge)...................................... 201
(23) CHAPTER. (What is said
regarding) the sweat of a Junub.
And a Muslim never becomes im-
pure........................................... 202
(24) CHAPTER. A Junub (person)
can go out and walk in the market or
anywhere else............................ 202
(25) CHAPTER. A Junub can stay
at home without taking a bath but
with ablution............................ 203
(26) CHAPTER. Sleeping of a
Junub person............................. 203
(27) CHAPTER. A Junub person
should perform ablution before sleep-
ing............................................. 203
(28) CHAPTER. When male and
female organs come in close contact
(bath becomes compulsory)....... 204
(29) CHAPTER. Washing away
what comes out from the private
parts of a woman (woman's dis-
charge) if one gets soiled with that. 205

6 - THE BOOK OF MENSES. 206
(1) CHAPTER. How the menses
started....................................... 206
CHAPTER. Menses (a thing) or-
dained (by Allâh and instructions)
for women when they get their
menses........................................ 206
(2) CHAPTER. The washing of the
husband's head and the combing of
his hair by a menstruating wife..... 207
(3) CHAPTER. To recite the
Qur'ân while lying in the lap of
one's own menstruating wife....... 208
(4) CHAPTER. Using the word
Nifas for menses.......................... 208
(5) CHAPTER. Fondling a menstru-
at ing wife................................. 209
(6) CHAPTER. A menstruating
woman should leave observing
Şaûm (fasting)............................ 210
(7) CHAPTER. A menstruating
woman should perform all the
ceremonies of Hajj except the
Tawâf around the Ka'bah .......... 210
(8) CHAPTER. Al-Istihâda [bleed-
ing (from the womb) in between a
woman's periods].................... 212
(9) CHAPTER. Washing out the
menstrual blood........................ 212
(10) CHAPTER. The I'tikâf of a
woman who is bleeding in between
her periods............................... 213
(11) CHAPTER. Can a woman offer
her Salât (prayers) in the clothes in
which she has her menses?...... 214
(12) CHAPTER. Putting perfume by
women at the time of taking a bath
after finishing from the menses..... 214
(13) CHAPTER. A woman should rub her own body thoroughly during a bath after the menses. 214
(14) CHAPTER. To take a bath after finishing from the menses. 215
(15) CHAPTER. The combing of head-hair by a woman on taking a bath after finishing from the menses. 215
(16) CHAPTER. A woman should undo her head-hair while taking the bath after finishing from her menses. 216
(17) CHAPTER. "(A little lump of flesh) some formed and some unfomed." 217
(18) CHAPTER. How a menstruating woman should assume Ihram for Hajj or for ‘Umra. 217
(19) CHAPTER. The beginning and the ending of menstrual periods. 218
(20) CHAPTER. There is no Salat (prayer) to be offered by a menstruating woman in lieu of the missed Salat during her menses. 219
(21) CHAPTER. Sleeping with a menstruating woman (one’s wife) while she is wearing her clothes (that are worn during menses). 219
(22) CHAPTER. Whoever kept a special dress for menses besides other dresses for the clean period. 220
(23) CHAPTER. The participation of menstruating women in the two ‘Eid festivals and in religious gatherings of Muslims and their isolation from the Musalla (praying place). 220
(24) CHAPTER. If a woman gets menses thrice a month. 221
(25) CHAPTER. Yellowish discharge not during the menses. 222
(26) CHAPTER. Al-Istihada (bleeding in between the periods is from a blood vessel.) 222
(27) CHAPTER. If a woman gets her menses after Tawaf-al-Ifada. 223
(28) CHAPTER. When a woman having bleeding in between her periods notices signs of cleanliness from her menses. 223
(29) CHAPTER. The offering of a funeral prayer for a woman who had died during (or after) delivery and its (i.e., funeral prayer's) legal way of performing. 224
(30) CHAPTER. 224

7 – THE BOOK OF TAYMMUM 225
(1) CHAPTER. 225
(2) CHAPTER. What to do if neither water nor earth is available. 226
(3) CHAPTER. The performance of Tayammum by a non-traveller (is permissible) when water is not available and when one is afraid that the time of Salat (prayer) may elapse. 227
(4) CHAPTER. Can a person blow off the dust from his hands in performing Tayammum (before passing them over his face). 228
(5) CHAPTER. Tayammum is for the hands and the face. 228
(6) CHAPTER. Clean earth is sufficient for a Muslim as a substitute for water for ablution (if he does not find water). 230
(7) CHAPTER. A Junub can perform Tayammum if he is afraid of disease, death or thirst. 233
(8) CHAPTER. Tayammum with one light stroke (on the earth). 234
(9) CHAPTER. 235

8 – THE BOOK OF AŠ-SALĀT (The Prayer) 237
(1) CHAPTER. How Aš-Salāt (the prayer) was prescribed on the night of Al-Isrā’ (miraculous night journey) of the Prophet ﷺ to Jerusalem (and then to the heavens). 237
(2) CHAPTER. It is obligatory to wear clothes while offering Aš-Salāt (the prayers). 240
(3) CHAPTER. To tie Izār (dress worn below the waist) at one’s back while offering Salāt (prayers). 241
(4) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salãt (the prayers) with a single garment wrapped round the body. .......... 242
(5) CHAPTER. If someone offers Salat (prayer) wrapped in a single garment, he should cross its corners round his shoulders. .......... 243
(6) CHAPTER. If the garment is tight (over the body). .......... 244
(7) CHAPTER. To offer As-Šalåt (the prayer) in a Syrian cloak (made by infidels) .......... 245
(8) CHAPTER. It is disliked to be naked during As-Salat (the prayers). .......... 245
(9) CHAPTER. To offer Salat (prayer) with a shirt, trousers, a Tubbän or a Qaba' (an outer garment with full length sleeves) ... 246
(10) CHAPTER. What may be used to cover the private parts of the body. .......... 247
(11) CHAPTER. To pray without a Rida'. .......... 248
(12) CHAPTER. What is said about the thigh. .......... 249
(13) CHAPTER. In how many (what sort of) clothes a woman should offer Salat (prayer). .......... 251
(14) CHAPTER. If a person offered Salat (prayer) in a dress with marks and looked at those marks during the Salat. .......... 251
(15) CHAPTER. If someone offers Salat (prayer) in a garment bearing marks of a cross or pictures, will the Salat be annulled? And what is forbidden thereof .......... 252
(16) CHAPTER. Whoever offered Salat (prayer) in a silk FarrUj (an outer garment opened at the back) and then took it off .......... 252
(17) CHAPTER. (It is permissible) to offer Salat (prayer) in a red garment. .......... 252
(18) CHAPTER. (It is permissible) to offer Salat (prayer) on roofs, a pulpit or wood .......... 253
(19) CHAPTER. If the clothes of a praying person in prostration touched his wife [would that make his Salat (prayer) invalid]? .......... 255
(20) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayers) on the Ḥašîr (a mat that is made of the leaves of date-palm trees and is as long as or longer than a man's stature) .......... 255
(21) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) on a Ḫumra (a small mat, hardly sufficient for the face and hands while prostrating during Salat) .......... 256
(22) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) on the bed .......... 256
(23) CHAPTER. To prostrate on a garment in scorching heat .......... 257
(24) CHAPTER. To offer Salat (prayer) with the shoes on .......... 258
(25) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (prayer) wearing Khuff (leather socks) .......... 258
(26) CHAPTER. If some one does not prostrate properly .......... 258
(27) CHAPTER. During prostrations one should show his armpits and separate his forearms from his body .......... 259
(28) CHAPTER. Superiority of (praying) facing the Qiblah with the toes toward it as well .......... 259
(29) CHAPTER. The Qiblah for the people of Al-Madina, Shām and the East .......... 260
(30) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah (to the people) the Maqām (place) of Ibrahim (Abraham) (or the stone on which Abrahām stood while he was building the Ka'bah) as a place of prayer (for some of your Salat e.g., two Rak'ā after the Tawaf of Ka'bah) "... And take you the Maqām (place) of Ibrahim (Abraham) (or the stone on which Abrahām stood while he was building the Ka'bah) as a place of prayer (for some of your Salat e.g., two Rak'ā after the Tawaf of Ka'bah)"
 .......... 261
(31) CHAPTER. [During the obligatory Salat (prayers)] one should face the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah) wherever one may be .......... 263
(32) CHAPTER. What has been said about (facing) the Qiblah
(Ka'bah at Makkah) and whoever considered that there was no need to repeat the Šalāt (prayer) if someone offered prayers by mistake facing a direction other than that of the Qiblah

(33) CHAPTER. To scrape off the sputum from the mosque with the hand (using some tool or other, or using no tool).

(34) CHAPTER. To scrape the nasal secretion off the mosque with gravel.

(35) CHAPTER. It is forbidden to spit on the right side while in Šalāt (prayers).

(36) CHAPTER. One should spit on the left side or under one’s left foot.

(37) CHAPTER. The expiation for spitting in the mosque.

(38) CHAPTER. The burying of the expectoration in the mosque.

(39) CHAPTER. If the spit or sputum comes out suddenly then one should spit in the corner of one’s garment.

(40) CHAPTER. Preaching of the Imam to the people regarding the proper offering of Aš-Šalāt (the prayer) and the mention of the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah).

(41) CHAPTER. It is permissible to say, “Masjid (mosque) of Bani so-and-so?”

(42) CHAPTER. The distribution (of goods or wealth) and the hanging of a cluster of dates in the mosque.

(43) CHAPTER. Receiving an invitation to dinner in the mosque and accepting it.

(44) CHAPTER. To give the judicial verdicts in the mosque and to perform the Al-Li‘ān between men and women (husbands and wives) there.

(45) CHAPTER. If someone enters a house, should he offer prayers where he likes, or as he is told? And he should not look out to seek information about the place or do spying.

(46) CHAPTER. About (taking) the mosques in the houses.

(47) CHAPTER. While entering the mosque etc., one should start with the right foot.

(48) CHAPTER. Is it permissible to dig the graves of pagans of the Period of Ignorance, and to use that place as a mosque?

(49) CHAPTER. To offer Aš-Šalāt (the prayer) in a sheep-fold.

(50) CHAPTER. To offer Aš-Šalāt (the prayer) in the camel-yards (the places where the camels are stationed).

(51) CHAPTER. Whoever offered Šalāt (prayer) with furnace or fire or any other worshipable thing in front of him but he intended Šalāt solely for Allāh.

(52) CHAPTER. The dislikeness of offering Aš-Šalāt (the prayers) in grave-yards.

(53) CHAPTER. (What is said about) offering Šalāt (prayer) at the places where the earth had sunk down and Allāh’s punishment had fallen.

(54) CHAPTER. To offer Aš-Šalāt (the prayer) in a church or in a temple etc.

(55) CHAPTER.

(56) CHAPTER. The saying of the Prophet ᴩ ﷺ, “The earth has been made for me a Masjid (place for praying) and a thing to purify (to perform Ṭayammum).”

(57) CHAPTER. Sleeping of a woman in the mosque (and residing in it).

(58) CHAPTER. Sleeping of men in the mosque.

(59) CHAPTER. To offer Aš-Šalāt (the prayer) when returning from a journey.

(60) CHAPTER. If one entered a
Contents of Volume One

mosque, one should offer two Rak'a (Tahayyat-al-Masjid) before sitting. 284

(61) CHAPTER. Al-Hadaeth (passing wind) in the mosque. 284

(62) CHAPTER. The construction of (the Prophet's mosque) 284

(63) CHAPTER. To co-operate in building a mosque. 285

(64) CHAPTER. Employing the carpenter and the technical hand (artisan) in making the wooden pulpit or building the mosque. 286

(65) CHAPTER. The superiority of who built a mosque. 287

(66) CHAPTER. While passing through a mosque, (one should better) hold the arrowheads (with the hand). 287

(67) CHAPTER. Passing through a mosque (is permissible). 287

(68) CHAPTER. (What is said about) reciting poetry in the mosque? 288

(69) CHAPTER. The presence of spearmen (with their spears) in the mosque (is permissible). 288

(70) CHAPTER. Mentioning about sales and purchases on the pulpit in the mosque. 289

(71) CHAPTER. Asking a debtor to repay what he owes, and catching the debtor in the mosque. 290

(72) CHAPTER. Sweeping (cleaning) of the mosque and removing rags, dirt and sticks from it. 290

(73) CHAPTER. The order of banning the trade of alcoholic drinks was issued in the mosque... 291

(74) CHAPTER. Servants for the mosque. 291

(75) CHAPTER. To fasten a prisoner or a debtor in the mosque. 292

(76) CHAPTER. To take a bath on embracing Islam and fasten a prisoner in the mosque. 292

(77) CHAPTER. To pitch a tent in the mosque for patients, etc. 293

(78) CHAPTER. To take the camel inside the mosque if necessary... 293

(79) CHAPTER. ................................. 294

(80) CHAPTER. Al-Khaukhah (a small door) and a path in the mosque. 294

(81) CHAPTER. The doors and locks of the Ka'bah and the mosques. 295

(82) CHAPTER. The entering of a pagan in the mosque. 296

(83) CHAPTER. Raising the voice in the mosque. 296

(84) CHAPTER. The religious gatherings in circles and sitting in the mosque. 297

(85) CHAPTER. To lie flat (on the back) in the mosque. 299

(86) CHAPTER. (If) a mosque (is built) on a road, it should not be a cause of harm for the people. 299

(87) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayers) in a mosque situated in a market. 300

(88) CHAPTER. To clasp one's hands by interlocking the fingers in the mosque or outside the mosque. 301

(89) CHAPTER. The mosques which are on the way to Al-Madina and the places where the Prophet had offered Salat (prayers) 302

(90) CHAPTER. The Sutra of the Imam is also a Sutra for those who are behind him. 306

(91) CHAPTER. What should be the distance between the person offering Salat (prayer) and the Sutra? 308

(92) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) using a Harba (a short spear) (as a Sutra). 308

(93) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) using an 'Anaza (a spear-headed stick) (as a Sutra). 308

(94) CHAPTER. Sutra (for the prayer) in Makkah and elsewhere. 309

(95) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) facing a pillar. 309

(96) CHAPTER. To offer non-
9 - THE BOOK OF THE TIMES OF AŚ-ŠALĀT (THE PRAYERS) AND ITS SUPERIORITY

(1) CHAPTER. The times of Aś-Šalāt (the prayers) and the superiority of offering Salāt (prayers) in time

(2) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh 

(3) CHAPTER. To give the Bai‘ah (pledge) for Iqamāt-ās-Salāt [the offering of Aś-Šalāt (the prayers)]

(4) CHAPTER. Aś-Šalāt (the prayer) is expiation (of sins)

(5) CHAPTER. Superiority of offering Aś-Šalāt (the prayer) at the stated times

(6) CHAPTER. The five Salāt (prayers) are expiations (of sins)

(7) CHAPTER. Not offering Aś-Šalāt (the prayer) at its stated fixed time

(8) CHAPTER. A person in Salāt (prayer) is speaking in private to his Lord (Allah)

(9) CHAPTER. In severe heat, offer Zuhr prayers when it becomes (a bit) cooler

(10) CHAPTER. When going on a journey, pray Zuhr prayer when it becomes cooler

(11) CHAPTER. The time of Zuhr prayer is when the sun declines (just after mid-day)

(12) CHAPTER. To delay the Zuhr (prayer) up to the 'Asr (prayer) time

(13) CHAPTER. The time of the 'Asr prayer

(14) CHAPTER. The sin of one who misses the ‘Asr prayer (intentionally)

(15) CHAPTER. One who omits (does not offer) the ‘Asr prayer (intentionally)

(16) CHAPTER. Superiority of the ‘Asr prayer
CONTENTS OF VOLUME ONE

(17) CHAPTER. Whoever got (or was able to offer) only one Rak'ā of the ‘Aṣr prayer before sunset. 333

(18) CHAPTER. The time of the Maghrib prayer (evening prayer). 335

(19) CHAPTER. Whoever disliked to call the Maghrib prayer as the ‘Isha’ prayer. 336

(20) CHAPTER. The mention of ‘Isha’ and ‘Atama and whoever took the two names as one and the same. 336

(21) CHAPTER. The time of the ‘Isha’ prayer. If the people get together (pray earlier), and if they come late (delay it). 337

(22) CHAPTER. Superiority of the ‘Isha’ prayer. 338

(23) CHAPTER. What is disliked about sleeping before the ‘Isha’ prayer. 339

(24) CHAPTER. Sleeping before the ‘Isha’ prayer if (one is) overwhelmed by it (sleep). 339

(25) CHAPTER. Time of the ‘Isha’ prayer is up to the middle of the night. 341

(26) CHAPTER. Superiority of the Fajr (early morning) prayer. 341

(27) CHAPTER. Time of the Fajr (early morning) prayer. 342

(28) CHAPTER. Whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak'ā of the Fajr prayer (in time). [One Rak'ā means, one standing, one bowing, and two prostrations]. 344

(29) CHAPTER. Whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak'ā of a prayer (in time). 344

(30) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the offering of As-Salāt (the prayers) between the Fajr prayer and sunrise. 344

(31) CHAPTER. One should not try to offer As-Salāt (the prayer) just before sunset. 346

(32) CHAPTER. Whoever did not dislike to offer optional prayers except after the compulsory prayers of ‘Aṣr and Fajr only. 347

(33) CHAPTER. To offer the missed Śalāt (prayers) and the like after the ‘Aṣr prayer. 347

(34) CHAPTER. To offer (the ‘Aṣr prayers) earlier on a cloudy day. 348

(35) CHAPTER. The Adhān for the Śalāt (prayer) after its stated time is over. 349

(36) CHAPTER. Whoever led the people in Śalāt (prayer) after its time was over. 349

(37) CHAPTER. One who forgets a Śalāt (prayer) should offer it when he remembers it, and should not repeat anything except that particular prayer. 350

(38) CHAPTER. The Qaḍā of prayers (Qaḍā means to perform or offer or do a missed religious obligation after its stated time). 351

(39) CHAPTER. What is disliked about talking after the ‘Isha’ prayer. 351

(40) CHAPTER. Talking about the Islamic jurisprudence and good things after the ‘Isha’ prayer. 352

(41) CHAPTER. To talk with the family and the guests after the ‘Isha’ prayer. 353

10 – THE BOOK OF ADHĀN... 355

(1) CHAPTER. How the Adhān for Śalāt (prayer) was started. 355

(2) CHAPTER. Pronouncing the wording of Adhān for Śalāt (prayers) twice (in doubles). 356

(3) CHAPTER. To pronounce the wording of Iqāma once (in singles) except Qad-qāmat-i-šalāt. 356

(4) CHAPTER. Superiority of the Adhān. 356

(5) CHAPTER. Raising the voice in pronouncing the Adhān. 357

(6) CHAPTER. To suspend fighting on hearing the Adhān. 358

(7) CHAPTER. What to say on hearing the Adhān. 358

(8) CHAPTER. Invocation at the time of Adhān. 359
(9) CHAPTER. To draw lots for pronouncing the Adhân

(10) CHAPTER. Talking during the Adhân

(11) CHAPTER. The Adhân pronounced by a blind man (is permissible) when there is a person to inform him about the time of the Salât (prayer)

(12) CHAPTER. The Adhân after Al-Fajr (dawn)

(13) CHAPTER. The Adhân before Al-Fajr (dawn)

(14) CHAPTER. How long should the interval between the Adhân and the Iqâma be? (And something concerning) the person who waits for the Iqâma

(15) CHAPTER. Whoever waits for the Iqâma of the prayer

(16) CHAPTER. Between every two calls (Adhân and Iqâma) there is a Salât (prayer) (that is optional), for the one who wants to offer it

(17) CHAPTER. Whoever said that there should be one Mu’adh-dîhin in the journey

(18) CHAPTER. If there are many travellers, Adhân and Iqâma should be pronounced, (the same is to be observed) in ‘Arafât and Al-Muzdalifa too

(19) CHAPTER. Should the Mu’adh-dîhin turn his mouth (face) and look from side to side during the Adhân?

(20) CHAPTER. The saying of a person: “We have missed As-Salât (the prayer)”

(21) CHAPTER. One should not run for As-Salât (the prayer) but present himself with calmness and solemnity

(22) CHAPTER. When should the people get up for the Salât (prayer) if they see the Imâm (the person leading Salât) during the Iqâma?

(23) CHAPTER. One should not stand for As-Salât (the prayer) hurriedly but with calmness and solemnity

(24) CHAPTER. Can one go out of the mosque (after the Adhân, or the Iqâma) if there is a genuine excuse?

(25) CHAPTER. If the Imâm says, “Remain at your places till I return”, then wait for him

(26) CHAPTER. The saying of a man to the Prophet, “We have not prayed.”

(27) CHAPTER. If the Imâm is confronted with a problem after the Iqâma

(28) CHAPTER. To talk after the Iqâma

(29) CHAPTER. Congregational Salât (prayer) is obligatory

(30) CHAPTER. Superiority of the congregational Salât (prayer)

(31) CHAPTER. Superiority of the Fajr (early morning) prayer in congregation

(32) CHAPTER. The superiority of offering the Zuhr prayer early

(33) CHAPTER. Every step towards good deeds is rewarded

(34) CHAPTER. The superiority of the ‘Isha’ prayer in congregation

(35) CHAPTER. Two or more than two persons are considered as a group (for the congregational prayers)

(36) CHAPTER. (The reward of a person) who waits for As-Salât (the prayer) in the mosque and the superiority of mosques

(37) CHAPTER. The superiority of going to the mosque (every) morning and in the afternoon and evening [for the congregational Salât (prayers)]

(38) CHAPTER. No Salât (prayer) (is to be offered) except the compulsory Salât after the Iqâma has been pronounced for that compulsory Salât

(39) CHAPTER. The limit set for a
patient to attend the congregational Ṣalāt (prayer)?........................... 379
(40) CHAPTER. It is permissible to pray at one's dwelling during rain or if there is a genuine excuse........... 381
(41) CHAPTER. Can the Imām offer the Ṣalāt (prayer) with only those who are present (for the prayer)? And can he deliver a Khutba (religious talk) on Friday if it is raining?.................. 381
(42) CHAPTER. (What should one do) if the meal has been served and Ḳiqāma has been pronounced for Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer).................. 383
(43) CHAPTER. When the Imām is called for Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) while he has in his hands something to eat...................... 384
(44) CHAPTER. If somebody was busy with his domestic work and Ḳiqāma was pronounced and then he came out [for offering the Ṣalāt (prayer)].............................. 384
(45) CHAPTER. Offering Ṣalāt (prayer) in front of the people with the sole intention of teaching them the Ṣalāt of the Prophet ﷺ and his Sunna (legal ways etc.)........... 385
(46) CHAPTER. The religious learned men are entitled to precedence in leading the Ṣalāt (prayers). 385
(47) CHAPTER. Whoever stood by the side of the Imām because of a genuine cause [in Ṣalāt (prayer)]... 388
(48) CHAPTER. If somebody is leading the Ṣalāt (prayer) and (in the meanwhile) the first (usual) Imām comes, the Ṣalāt is valid whether the former retreats or does not retreat.................... 389
(49) CHAPTER. If some people are equally proficient in the recitation of the Qur'ān (and religious knowledge), the oldest of them should lead Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer)............. 390
(50) CHAPTER. If the Imām visited some people and led them in Ṣalāt (prayer)........................................ 390
(51) CHAPTER. The Imām is appointed to be followed.................. 391
(52) CHAPTER. When should those who are behind the Imām prostrate?................................. 394
(53) CHAPTER. The sin of the one who raises his head before the Imām (raises his head).................. 395
(54) CHAPTER. A slave or a manumitted slave can lead the Ṣalāt (prayer).......................... 395
(55) CHAPTER. If the Imām does not offer the Ṣalāt (prayer) perfectly and the followers offer it perfectly. 396
(56) CHAPTER. Offering prayers behind a man who is a victim of Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions) or a heretic......................... 396
(57) CHAPTER. To stand on the right side of the Imām on the same line if only two persons (counting the Imām) are offering Ṣalāt (prayer) in congregation................. 397
(58) CHAPTER. If a man stood on the left side of the Imām and the Imām drew him to his right side, then the Ṣalāt of none of them would be invalid..................... 398
(59) CHAPTER. If the Imām has not had the intention of leading the prayer and then some persons join him and he leads them......... 398
(60) CHAPTER. If the Imām prolongs the Ṣalāt (prayer) and somebody has an urgent work or need and so he leaves the congregation and offers Ṣalāt alone............... 399
(61) CHAPTER. The shortening of the Qiyām (standing) by the Imām [in Ṣalāt (prayer)] but performing the bowings and the prostrations perfectly............................ 399
(62) CHAPTER. When offering Ṣalāt (prayer) alone, one can prolong the Ṣalāt as much as one wishes........................... 400
(63) CHAPTER. Complaining against one's Imām if he prolongs the prayer.......................... 400
(64) CHAPTER. The shortening and perfection of the prayer (by the Imam) .......................................................... 402
(65) CHAPTER. Whoever cuts short Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) on hearing the cries of a child ......................... 402
(66) CHAPTER. If one offers Śalāt (prayer) and then leads the people in Śalāt .................................................... 403
(67) CHAPTER. One who repeats the Takbir (Allāhu Akbar) so that the people may hear it........................................ 403
(68) CHAPTER. If a person follows the Imam and the others follow that person (then it is all right) ........ 404
(69) CHAPTER. Can the Imam depend on the people’s saying if he is in doubt (about a certain matter)? 405
(70) CHAPTER. If the Imām weeps in Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayers) (will his Śalāt be valid)?............................... 406
(71) CHAPTER. Straightening the rows at the time of Iqāma and after it (immediately) .................. 407
(72) CHAPTER. Facing of the Imām towards his followers while straightening the rows .................. 407
(73) CHAPTER. The first row ............................................. 408
(74) CHAPTER. The straightening of the rows is amongst those obligatory and good things which make your Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) a correct and perfect one. 408
(75) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who does not complete the rows (who is out of alignment) for the prayer ......................................................... 409
(76) CHAPTER. To stand shoulder to shoulder and foot to foot in the row ..................................................... 409
(77) CHAPTER. If a person stands by the left side of the Imām, and the Imām draws him to the right from behind, his Śalāt (prayer) is correct 410
(78) CHAPTER. One woman can form a row ............................................. 410
(79) CHAPTER. The right side of the mosque and the place to the right of the Imām ......................... 410
(80) CHAPTER. If there is a wall or a Sutra between the Imām and followers .................................................. 410
(81) CHAPTER. The night prayer ............................................ 411
(82) CHAPTER. The necessity of saying the Takbir, i.e., Allāhu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great) and the commencement of Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) ........................................ 413
(83) CHAPTER. To raise both hands on saying the first Takbir simultaneously with opening the Śalāt (prayer) ........ 414
(84) CHAPTER. To raise both hands while saying Takbir [on opening Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer)], and while bowing and on raising up the head (after bowing) .......... 414
(85) CHAPTER. To what level should one raise one’s hands? ........ 415
(86) CHAPTER. To raise one’s hands after finishing the second Rak‘ā (on standing for the third Rak‘ā) ........ 416
(87) CHAPTER. To place the right hand on the left [in Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayers)] ............................................. 416
(88) CHAPTER. Submissiveness in Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) ......................................................... 417
(89) CHAPTER. What to say after the Takbir ............................................. 417
(90) CHAPTER ............................................. 418
(91) CHAPTER. To cast a look at the Imām during Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) ......................................................... 419
(92) CHAPTER. Looking towards the sky during Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) ..................................................... 420
(93) CHAPTER. To look hither and thither in Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) .... 421
(94) CHAPTER. Is it permissible for one to look around in Śalāt (prayer) if something happens to one? Or can one look at something like expectoration in the direction of the Qiblah? ..................................................... 421
(95) CHAPTER. Recitation of the Qur‘ān (Sūrat Al-Fátihā) is compulsory for the Imām and the followers,
CONTENTS OF VOLUME ONE

at home and on journey, in all Aş-
Şalât (the prayers) whether the recitation is done silently or aloud. 422
(96) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'ān in the Žuhr prayer...... 425
(97) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'ān in the 'Aşr prayer...... 426
(98) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'ān in the Maghrīb prayer.. 426
(99) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the Maghrīb prayer ................... 427
(100) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the ‘Ishâ’ prayer.......................... 427
(101) CHAPTER. To recite in the ‘Ishâ’ prayer, with As-Sajda (prostra-
tion) ........................................ 428
(102) CHAPTER. Recitation in the ‘Ishâ’ prayer................................ 428
(103) CHAPTER. Prolonging the first two Rak‘a and shortening the last two ............................ 428
(104) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'ān in the Fajr prayer...... 429
(105) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the Fajr (early morning) prayer..... 430
(106) CHAPTER. To recite two Sûrah in one Rak‘a and to recite the last Verses of some Sûrah, or to recite the Sûrah in their reverse order, or to recite the beginning of a Sûrah.......................... 431
(107) CHAPTER. To recite only Sûrat Al-Fâţihâ in the last two Rak‘a during a four Rak‘a Salât (prayer). 433
(108) CHAPTER. To recite (the Qur’ān) quietly in the Žuhr and ‘Aşr prayers. .......................... 433
(109) CHAPTER. (In a quiet prayer) if the Imâm recites a Verse or so audibly ............................ 434
(110) CHAPTER. To prolong the first Rak‘a........................... 434
(111) CHAPTER. Saying of Âmîn aloud by the Imâm .......................... 434
(112) CHAPTER. Superiority of saying Âmîn.......................... 435
(113) CHAPTER. Saying of Âmîn aloud by the followers.......................... 435
(114) CHAPTER. If someone bowed behind the rows, [on entering the mosque and before joining the rows of Şalât (prayer)]............. 436
(115) CHAPTER. Itmâm At-Takbir (i.e., to end the number of Takbir or to say the Takbir perfectly) on bowing. [See Fath Al-Bâri] ..... 436
(116) CHAPTER. Itmâm At-Takbir (i.e., to end the number of Takbir, or to say the Takbir perfectly) on prostrating. [See Fath Al-Bâri] ..... 437
(117) CHAPTER. Saying the Takbir on raising from the prostration..... 438
(118) CHAPTER. To put the hands (palms) on both knees while bowing. 439
(119) CHAPTER. Not performing bowing perfectly.......................... 439
(120) CHAPTER. To keep the back straight in bowing..................... 440
(121) CHAPTER. And what is said regarding the limit of the comple-
tion of bowing and of keeping the back straight and the calmness with which it is performed..................... 440
(122) CHAPTER. The order of the Prophet ☞ to a person who did not perform his bowing perfectly that he should repeat his Şalât (prayer)..... 440
(123) CHAPTER. Invocation in bowing........................................ 441
(124) CHAPTER. What the Imâm and the followers say on raising their heads from bowing.......................... 441
(125) CHAPTER. The superiority of saying Allâhumma Rabbanâ lakal ḥamd (O Allâh, Our Lord! All the praises and thanks are for You)...... 441
(126) CHAPTER........................................ 442
(127) CHAPTER. To stand straight with calmness on raising the head from bowing........................................ 443
(128) CHAPTER. One should say Takbir while going in prostration... 444
(129) CHAPTER. Superiority of prostrating.......................... 446
(130) CHAPTER. During the prostrations one should keep one's arms
away from one's sides and the abdomen should be kept away from the thighs. 449

(131) CHAPTER. One should keep the toes in the direction of the Qiblah. 449

(132) CHAPTER. If one does not perform the prostrations perfectly. 450

(133) CHAPTER. To prostrate on seven bones. 450

(134) CHAPTER. To prostrate on the nose. 451

(135) CHAPTER. To prostrate on the nose and in the mud. 451

(136) CHAPTER. To tie the clothes and wrap them properly [in Salat (prayer)]; and whoever gathered his clothes for fear that his private parts may become exposed. 452

(137) CHAPTER. One should not tuck up the hair [during Salat (prayers)]. 453

(138) CHAPTER. One should not tuck up his garment in As-Salat (the prayer). 453

(139) CHAPTER. To invoke and glorify Allah in prostration: 453

(140) CHAPTER. To sit for a while between the two prostrations. 453

(141) CHAPTER. One should not put the forearms on the ground during prostrations. 455

(142) CHAPTER. Sitting straight in a Witr prayer (i.e., an odd Rak'a) and then getting up. 455

(143) CHAPTER. How to support oneself on the ground while standing after finishing the Rak'a (after the two prostrations). 456

(144) CHAPTER. Saying Takbir on rising from the two prostrations. 456

(145) CHAPTER. The Prophet's Sunna (legal way) for the sitting in the Taṣḥah-hud [in the Salat (prayer)]. 457

(146) CHAPTER. Whoever considered that the first Taṣḥah-hud is not compulsory. 459

(147) CHAPTER. (Saying of the) Taṣḥah-hud in the first sitting. 459

(148) CHAPTER. (Saying of the) Taṣḥah-hud in the last Rak'a. 460

(149) CHAPTER. Invocation before the Taslim. 460

(150) CHAPTER. What optional invocation may be selected after the Taṣḥah-hud, and it is not obligatory. 461

(151) CHAPTER. No cleaning (rubbing) one's forehead and nose till one has completed As-Salát (the prayer). 462

(152) CHAPTER. Taslim [turning the face to the right and then to the left and saying “As-Salámu 'alaikum wa raḥmat-ulláh” at the end of the Šalát (prayers)]. 462

(153) CHAPTER. To finish the Salát (prayer) with Taslim along with the Imám. 463

(154) CHAPTER. Whoever did not say (a Taslim) in addition to the Taslim of the Imám but thought that Taslim of the Salát (prayer) was sufficient. 463

(155) CHAPTER. The Dhiṣrk (remembering Alláh by Glorifying, Praising and Magnifying Him) after As-Šalát (the prayer). 464

(156) CHAPTER. The Imám should face the followers after finishing the prayer with Taslim. 466

(157) CHAPTER. The staying of the Imám at his Muṣšalla (praying place) after (finishing the prayer with) Taslim. 468

(158) CHAPTER. Whoever led the people in Šalát (prayer) and remembered an urgent matter or necessity and had to pass over the people (to carry out that). 469

(159) CHAPTER. To leave or depart from the right and from the left after finishing from the Šalát (prayers). 470

(160) CHAPTER. What has been said about uncooked garlic, onion
and leek................................. 470

(161) CHAPTER. The ablution for boys (youngsters). When they should perform Qhusl (take a bath) and Tuhur (purification). Their attendance at congregational prayers, 'Eid prayers and funeral prayers and their rows in the prayers. ....... 472

(162) CHAPTER. Going of women to the mosques at night and in darkness................................. 475

(163) CHAPTER. The waiting of the people for the religious learned Imam to get up (after the prayer to depart)................................. 476

(164) CHAPTER. The Salât (prayer) of women behind men..... 477

(165) CHAPTER. Returning of the women immediately after the Fajr prayer and their staying in the mosque for a short period only. .... 478

(166) CHAPTER. A woman shall ask her husband's permission (on wishing) to go to the mosque. ....... 478
In the Name of Allah, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful.

1 - THE BOOK OF REVELATION

Said Ash-Shaikh Al-Imam Al-Hãfiz Abu-`Abdullãh Muhammad bin Isma’îl bin Ibrahîm bin Al-Mughîra Al-Bukhari (May Allah be Merciful to him):

(1) CHAPTER. How the Divine Revelation started to be revealed to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ.

And the Statement of Allah ﻪ ﷺ:
"Verily, We have sent the revelation to you (O Muhammad ﷺ) as We sent the revelation to Noah and the Prophets after him." (V.4:163)

1. Narrated ‘Umar bin Al-Khattãb ﷺ: I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “The reward of deeds depends upon the intentions and every person will get the reward according to what he has intended. So whoever emigrates for worldly benefits or for a woman to marry, his emigration will be for what he emigrated for.”(1)

(1) (H.1) The Prophet ﷺ said this on the occasion of someone’s emigration from Makkah to Al-Madina not for the sake of the Islamic Cause but to marry a woman who had stipulated that he should emigrate if he wanted to marry her. Anyhow, this Hadîth implies a general principle, i.e., one is rewarded for his deeds according to his real intentions and not according to his actual deeds which might be good in themselves but were motivated by an ill intention.
2. Narrated 'Āishah, the Mother of the faithful believers, (1) Al-Hārith bin Hishām asked Allāh's Messenger ﷺ “O Allāh's Messenger! How is the Divine Revelation revealed to you?” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ replied, “Sometimes it is (revealed) like the ringing of a bell, this form of Revelation is the hardest of all and then this state passes off after I have grasped what is revealed. Sometimes the angel comes in the form of a man and talks to me and I grasp whatever he says.” 'Āishah added: Verily I saw the Prophet ﷺ being inspired (Divinely) and (noticed) the sweat dropping from his forehead on a very cold day as the Revelation was over.

3. Narrated ‘Āishah, the Mother of the faithful believers: The commencement of the (Divine) Revelation to Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ was in the form of good righteous (true) dreams which came true like bright daylight, and then the love of seclusion was bestowed upon him. He used to go in seclusion in the cave of Hira’ where he used to worship (Allāh Alone) continuously for many nights before returning to (or his desire to see) his family. He used to take with him the journey food for the stay and then come

---

(1) (H.2) Allāh ﷺ calls the wives of the Prophet ﷺ “the Mothers of the faithful” in that the believers should show respect and reverence and none of the believers were permitted to marry any of them after the Prophet’s death. [See the Qur’ān (V.33:6)].
back to (his wife) Khadija to take his food likewise again till suddenly the Truth descended upon him while he was in the cave of Hira'. The angel came to him and asked him to read. The Prophet ﷺ replied, "I do not know how to read."

The Prophet ﷺ added, "Then the angel caught me (forcefully) and pressed me so hard that I could not bear it any more. He then released me and again asked me to read and I replied, 'I do not know how to read.' Thereupon he caught me again and pressed me a second time till I could not bear it any more. He then released me and again asked me to read but again I replied, 'I do not know how to read (or what shall I read?).' Thereupon he caught me for the third time and pressed me, and then released me and said, 'Read in the Name of your Lord, Who has created man from a clot (a piece of thick coagulated blood). Read! And your Lord is the Most Generous.'" (V. 96:1-3) Then Allah's Messenger ﷺ returned with the Revelation and with his heart beating severely. Then he went to Khadija bint Khuwailid and said, "Cover me! Cover me!" They covered him till his fear was over and after that he told Khadija everything that had happened (and said), "I fear that something may happen to me." Khadija replied, "Never! By Allah, Allah will never disgrace you. You keep good relations with your kith and kin, help the poor and the destitute, serve your guests generously and assist the deserving calamity-afflicted ones."

Khadija then accompanied him to her cousin Waraqa bin Naufal bin Asad bin 'Abdul 'Uzza, who, during the Period of Ignorance became a Christian and used to write the writing with Hebrew letters. He would write from the Gospel in Hebrew as
much as Allâh wished him to write. He was an old man and had lost his eyesight. Khadija said to Waraqa, “Listen to (the story of) your nephew, O my cousin!” Waraqa asked, “O my nephew! What have you seen?” Allâh’s Messenger  asked whatever he had seen. Waraqa said, “This is the same one [who keeps the secrets i.e., angel Jibrîl (Gabriel)] whom Allâh had sent to Mûsà (Moses). I wish I were young and could live up to the time when your people would turn you out.” Allâh’s Messenger  asked, “Will they drive me out?” Waraqa replied in the affirmative and said, “Anyone (man) who came with something similar to what you have brought was treated with hostility; and if I should remain alive till the day (when you will be turned out) then I would support you strongly.” But after a few days Waraqa died and the Divine Revelation was also paused for a while.

4. Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh Al-Ansârî while talking about the period of pause in revelation, reported the speech of the Prophet , “While I was walking, all of a sudden I heard a voice from the sky. I looked up and saw the same angel, who had visited me at the cave of Hîrâ’, sitting on a chair between the sky and the earth. I got scared of him and came back home and said, ‘Wrap me (in blankets).’ And then Allâh revealed the following Holy Verses (of the Qur’ân):

‘O you (Muhammad ) enveloped (in garments)! Arise and warn ... (up to) ... and keep away from Ar-Rujz (the idols)!’ (V.74:1-5)

After this, the revelation started coming strongly and frequently in succession one after the other.”
5. Narrated Sa‘îd bin Jubair: Ibn ‘Abbâs in the explanation of the Statement of Allâh ﷻ says: ‘Move not your tongue concerning (the Qur’ân, O Muḥammad ﷺ) to make haste therewith’ (V.75:16) said, “Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to bear the revelation with great stress and hardness, and used to move his lips (quickly with the Revelation).”

Ibn ‘Abbâs moved his lips saying, “I am moving my lips (in front of you) as Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to move his.”

Sa‘îd moved his lips saying: “I am moving my lips, as I have seen Ibn ‘Abbâs moving his.”

[Ibn ‘Abbâs رضي الله عنهما added], “So Allâh ﷻ revealed ‘Move not your tongue concerning (the Qur’ân, O Muḥammad ﷺ) to make haste therewith. It is for Us to collect it and to give you (O Muḥammad ﷺ) the ability to recite it (the Qur’ân) (V.75:16,17), which means that Allâh will make him (the Prophet ﷺ) remember the portion of the Qur’ân which was revealed at that time by heart and recite it]. The Statement of Allâh ﷻ: ‘And when We have recited it to you [O Muḥammad ﷺ through Jibrîl (Gabriel)] then follow you its (the Qur’ân’s) recital’ (V.75:18) (means ‘listen to it and be silent’). ‘Then it is for Us (Allâh) to make it clear to you’ (V.75:19) means then it is (for Allâh) to make you recite it (and its meaning will be clear by itself through your tongue). Afterwards, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to listen to Jibrîl whenever he came and after his departure he used to recite it as Jibrîl had recited it.”
6. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: Allah's Messenger was the most generous of all the people, and he used to reach the peak in generosity in the month of Ramadān when Jibril (Gabriel) met him. Jibril used to meet him every night of Ramadān to teach him the Qur'ān.

Allah's Messenger was the most generous person, even more generous than the fair winds [sent (by Allāh) with glad tidings (rain), in readiness and haste to do charitable deeds].

7. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: Abu Sufyān bin Ḥarb informed me that Heraclius had sent a messenger to him while he had been accompanying a caravan from Quraish. They were merchants doing business in Shām (Syria, Palestine, Lebanon and Jordan), at the time when Allāh's Messenger had truce with Abu Sufyān and Quraish infidels. So Abu Sufyān and his companions went to Heraclius at 'Ilyā (Jerusalem). Heraclius called them in the court and he had all the senior Roman dignitaries around him. He called for his translator who, translating Heraclius' question said to them, "Who amongst you is closely related to that man who claims to be a Prophet?" Abu Sufyān replied, "I am the nearest relative to him (amongst the group)."

Heraclius said, "Bring him (Abu Sufyān) close to me and make his companions stand
behind him.” Abū Sufyān added, “Heraclius told his translator to tell my companions that he wanted to put some questions to me regarding that man (the Prophet) and that if I told a lie they (my companions) should contradict me.” Abū Sufyān added, “By Allah! Had I not been afraid of my companions labelling me a liar, I would not have spoken the truth about the Prophet ﷺ.

The first question he asked me about him was: ‘What is his family status amongst you?’ I replied, ‘He belongs to a noble family amongst us.’ Heraclius further asked, ‘Has anybody else amongst you ever claimed the same (i.e. to be a Prophet) before his (claim)’? I replied, ‘No.’ He asked, ‘Was anybody amongst his ancestors a king?’ I replied, ‘No.’ Heraclius asked, ‘Do the nobles or the poor follow him?’ I replied, ‘It is the poor who follow him.’ He said, ‘Are his followers increasing or decreasing (day by day)?’ I replied, ‘They are increasing.’ He then asked, ‘Does anybody amongst those who embrace his religion become displeased and renounce the religion afterwards?’ I replied, ‘No.’ Heraclius said, ‘Have you ever accused him of telling lies before his claim (to be a Prophet)?’ I replied, ‘No.’ Heraclius said, ‘Does he ever betray or prove treacherous to his covenants?’ I replied, ‘No.’ We are at truce with him but we do not know what he will do in it.’ I could not find opportunity to say anything against him except that word. Heraclius asked, ‘Have you ever had a fight with him?’ I replied, ‘Yes.’ Then he said, ‘What was the outcome of your battles with him?’ I replied, ‘The fighting between us and him was undecided and victory was shared between us and him by turns.’ Heraclius said, ‘What does he order you to do?’ I said, ‘He tells us to worship Allah Alone and not to worship anything
along with Him, and to renounce all that our ancestors had said. He orders us to pray, to speak the truth, to be chaste and to keep good relations with our kith and kin.'

Heraclius asked the translator to convey to me the following, 'I asked you about his family and your reply was that he belongs to a noble family amongst you. In fact all the Messengers come from noble families amongst their respective peoples. I questioned you whether anybody else amongst you claimed such a thing, your reply was in the negative. If the answer had been in the affirmative, I would have thought that this man was following the previous man's statement. Then I asked you whether anyone of his ancestors was a king. Your reply was in the negative, and if it had been in the affirmative, I would have thought that this man wanted to take back his ancestral kingdom. I further asked whether he was ever accused of telling lies before he said what he said, and your reply was in the negative.

So I wondered how a person who does not tell a lie about others could ever tell a lie about Allāh. I, then asked you whether the rich people followed him or the poor. You replied that it was the poor who followed him. And in fact these (poor always) are the followers of the Messengers. Then I asked you whether his followers were increasing or decreasing. You replied that they were increasing, and in fact this is the way of true faith, till it is complete in all respects. I further asked you whether there was anybody, who, after embracing his religion, became displeased and discarded his religion. Your reply was in the negative, and in fact this is (the sign of) true faith, when its delight enters the hearts and mixes with them completely. I asked you whether
he had ever betrayed. You replied in the negative and likewise the Messengers never betray. Then I asked you what he ordered you to do. You replied that he ordered you to worship Allah (and Allah Alone) and not to worship anything along with Him and forbade you to worship idols and ordered you to pray, to speak the truth and to be chaste. If what you have said is true, he will very soon occupy this place [which is underneath my feet (now)] and I knew it (from the Scriptures) that he was going to appear but I did not know that he would be from you, and if I am sure(1) to reach him, I would go immediately to meet him and if I were with him, I would certainly wash his feet.'

Heraclius then asked for the letter addressed by Allah's Messenger which was delivered by Diya to the governor of Busra, who forwarded it to Heraclius to read. The contents of the letter were as follows:

In the Name of Allah the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful.

(This letter is) from Muhammad, the slave of Allah and His Messenger, to Heraclius the ruler of Byzantines. Peace be upon him who follows the right path. Then after: I invite you to Islam, and if you become a Muslim you will be safe, and Allah will double your reward, and if you reject this invitation of Islam you will be committing a sin by misguiding your Arisyyin (peasants). And (I recite to you Allah's Statement:)

'O people of the Scripture (Jews and Christians)! Come to a word that is just between us and you, that we worship none but Allah and that we associate no partners with Him, and that none of us shall

(1) (H.7) Means that he (Heraclius) was afraid of his people to meet him.
take others as lords beside Allāh. Then, if they turn away, say: Bear witness that we are Muslims.” (V.3:64).

Abū Sufyān then added, “When Heraclius had finished his speech and had read the letter, there was a great hue and cry in the royal court. So we were turned out of the court. I told my companions that the question of Ibn Abī Kabsha(1) (Prophet Muḥammad ﷺ) has become so prominent that even the king of Banī Al-ʾAshṣāf (Byzantines) is afraid of him. Thenceforth I became sure that he (the Prophet ﷺ) would be the conqueror in the near future till I embraced Islām (i.e. Allāh guided me to it).” (The sub-narrator adds), Ibn An-Natūr was the governor of ʾIlyā (Jerusalem), and Heraclius was the head of the Christians of Shām.

Ibn An-Natūr narrates that once while Heraclius was visiting ʾIlyā (Jerusalem), he got up in the morning with a sad mood. Some of his priests asked him why he was in that mood? Heraclius was a foreteller and an astrologer.

He replied, “At night when I looked at the stars, I saw that the leader of those who practice circumcision had appeared (become the conqueror), (and asked) who are they who practice circumcision?”

The people replied, “Except the Jews nobody practices circumcision, so you should not be afraid of them (Jews). Just issue orders to kill every Jew present in the country.”

While they were discussing it, a messenger sent by the king of Ghassān to convey the news of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ to Heraclius was brought in.

Having heard the news, he (Heraclius)

(1) (H.7) Abī Kabsha was not the father of Prophet Muḥammad ﷺ but it was a mockery done by Abū Sufyān out of hostility against the Prophet ﷺ.
ordered the people to go and see whether the 
messenger of Ghassân was circumcised. The 
people, after seeing him, told Heraclius that 
he was circumcised. Heraclius then asked 
him about the Arabs. The messenger replied, 
"Arabs also practice circumcision."

(After hearing that) Heraclius remarked 
that sovereignty of this nation (Arabs) had 
appeared. Heraclius then wrote a letter to his 
friend in Rome who was as good as Heraclius 
in knowledge. Heraclius then left for Homs 
(a town in Syria) and stayed there till he 
received the reply of his letter from his friend 
who agreed with him in his opinion about the 
emergence of the Prophet ﷺ and the fact 
that he is indeed a Prophet. On that 
Heraclius invited all the heads of the 
Byzantines to assemble in his palace at 
Homs. When they assembled, he ordered 
that all the doors of his palace be closed. 
Then he came out and said,

"O Byzantines! If success is your desire 
and if you seek right guidance and want your 
empire to remain, then give the Bai'ah 
(pledge) to this Prophet ﷺ (i.e. embrace 
Islam)."

(On hearing the views of Heraclius) the 
people ran towards the gates of the palace 
like onagers but found the doors closed. 
Heraclius realised their hatred towards Islâm 
and when he lost the hope of their embracing 
Islâm, (he ordered): "Bring them back to 
me." (When they returned) he said, "What I 
already said was just to test the strength of 
your conviction and I have seen it." The 
people prostrated before him and became 
pleased with him, and this was the end of 
Heraclius’ story (in connection with his 
faith).
2 - THE BOOK OF BELIEF (i.e. FAITH)

[Faith: i.e. To believe in {the six (6) articles of Faith}: (1) Allâh. (2) His (Allâh’s) Angels. (3) His (Allâh’s) Messengers. (4) His (Allâh’s) Books, e.g. the Torah, the Gospel, the Qur’ân etc. (5) The Day of Resurrection. (6) Al-Qadar (Divine Preordainments). Faith has more than sixty (60) subdivisions or parts, the highest one is Lâ ilâha illallâh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh), and the lowest one is to remove harmful things from the ways, roads, passages etc. (Please see Fath Al-Bârî, for details).

(1) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet Ṭła’tl, 'Islâm is based on five principles.'

And belief is both saying and acting, and it increases and decreases. Allâh revealed the following Verses concerning the subject: “That they may grow more in faith along with their (present) faith.” (V.48:4) “And We increased them in guidance.” (V.18:13) “And Allâh increases in guidance those who walk aright [true believers in the Oneness of Allâh — who fear Allâh much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allâh much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained)]” (V.19:76). And said, “As for those who accept guidance, He (i.e. Allâh) increases their guidance and bestows on them their piety.” (V.47:17) “And the believers may increase in faith.” (V.74:31) “Which of you has had his faith increased by it? As for those who believe, it has increased their faith.” (V.9:124) And, also the Statement of Allâh تعالى: “Fear them. But it

(1) (Ch.1) See Hadîth No.8.
(only) increased them in faith.’” (V.3:173)
And also the Statement of Allâh (i.e. Faith):
“... And it only added to their faith and to their submissiveness (to Allâh).” (V.33:22).
And to love and hate for Allâh’s sake is a part of faith.

‘Umar bin ‘Abdul ‘Azîz wrote to ‘Adî bin ‘Adî: “Belief includes Farâ’îd (enjoined duties), legal laws and Hudâd (Allâh’s boundary limits between lawful and unlawful things) and Sunan [legal ways and deeds (acts) of worship etc.]. And whoever follows (and acts on) all of them completely, has a complete belief, and whoever does not follow them completely (does not act on them), his belief is incomplete. And should I live I will tell you all about them so that you may act on them. And should I die, I am not anxious to have your company.”

And the Prophet Ibrahim (Abraham) said, “But to be stronger in faith” (V.2:260). Mu’âdh said (to Aswad bin Hilâl, one of his companions), “Let us sit for a while so that we may dedicate that period of time to faith.” Ibn Mas’ûd said, “Yaqîn is perfect faith.” And Ibn ‘Umar said, “A person cannot attain true sense of piety unless and until he removes all suspicions from his heart.” (i.e. gives up all kinds of polytheism, evil deeds, and doubtful things, and start doing righteous good deeds regularly) [See Fath Al-Bânî, Vol. I, Page 54].

And Mujãhid said, “He (Allâh ﷺ) has ordained for you…” (V.42:13) means “O Muhâmmad (saww)! We have ordained for you and him (NoaÎ) one religion (i.e. Islâmic Monotheism).”

And Ibn ‘Abbâs explained: “A law and a clear way” (V.5:48) as Islâmic way and Sunna (traditions of the Prophet ﷺ).

(2) CHAPTER. Your invocation means your faith. And Allâh تعالى said: “Say (O
Muhammad to the disbelievers): My Lord pays attention to you only because of your invocation to Him.” (V.25:77).

8. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger said: Islam is based on (the following) five (principles):

1. To testify that La ilãha illallah wa anna Muhammad-ar-Rasul Allah (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah).

2. Iqamat-as-Salat [to perform the (compulsory congregational) Salat (prayers)].

3. To pay Zakat.

4. To perform Haj (i.e. pilgrimage to Makkah).

5. To observe Saum [fasts (according to Islamic teachings)] during the month of Ramaḍān.

(3) CHAPTER. (What is said) regarding the deeds of faith.

And the Saying of Allah: "It is not Al-Bîr (piety, righteousness and

(1) (H.8) Iqãmat-as-Salât: [The offering of Salât (prayers)]. It means that:

a) Every Muslim, male or female, is obliged to offer his Salât (prayers) regularly five times a day at the specified times; the male in a mosque in congregation and the female at home. As the Prophet has said: “Order your children for Salât at the age of seven and beat them (about it) at the age of ten.” The chief (of a family, town, tribe, etc.) and the Muslim ruler of a country are held responsible before Allah in case of non-fulfilment of this obligation by the Muslims under his authority.

b) To perform the Salat (prayers) as the Prophet used to perform them with all their rules and regulations (i.e. standing, bowing, prostrating, sitting). As he has said: “Perform your Salât (prayers) the way you see me performing them.” See Hadith No. 631. [For the characteristics of the prayer of the Prophet see Sahih Al-Bukhãrî, Vol.1., Hadith No. 735, 736, 739, 756, 823, 824, 825].

(2) (H.8) Zakât: A certain fixed proportion of the wealth and of every kind of the property liable to Zakât of a Muslim to be paid yearly for the benefit of the poor in the Muslim community. The payment of Zakât is obligatory as it is one of the five pillars of Islam. Zakât is the major economic means for establishing social justice and leading the Muslim society to prosperity and security. [See Sahih Al-Bukhãrî, Vol.2., Book of Zakât (24)].
every act of obedience to Allah) that you turn your faces to east and (or) west (in prayers); but Al-Birr is (the quality of) the one who believes in Allah, the Last Day, the Angels, the Book (Holy Scripture), the Prophets and gives his wealth, in spite of the love for it, to the kinsfolk and to the orphans and to Al-Masâkin (the poor) and to the wayfarer and to those who ask, and to set slaves free; and perform As-Salât (Iqâmât-as-Salât) and gives the Zakât, and who fulfil their covenant when they make it, and who are patient (in severe poverty), and ailment (disease) and at the time of fighting (during the battles). Such are the people of truth, and they are Al-Muttaqûn.1

(V.2:177) “Successful indeed are the believers.” (V.23:1)

9. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Faith (Belief) consists of more than sixty sub-divisions or branches (i.e. parts). And Al-Hayâ (this term Al-Hayâ covers a large number of concepts which are to be taken together; amongst them are self-respect, modesty, bashfulness, and honour etc.) is a part of faith.” [See the Glossary "Al-Hayâ” and Faith Al-Bârî, for details as regard “Faith”]

4) CHAPTER. A Muslim is the one who avoids harming Muslims with his tongue and hands.

10. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr: The Prophet said, “A Muslim is the one who avoids harming Muslims with his tongue and hands. And a Muhãjir (emigrant) is the one who gives up (abandons) all what Allah has forbidden.”

(1) (Ch.3) Al-Muttaqûn means pious and righteous persons who fear Allah much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allah much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained).
(5) CHAPTER. Whose Islam is the best (Who is the best Muslim)?

11. Narrated Abū Mūsā: Some people asked Allāh’s Messenger, “Whose Islam is the best (i.e., who is a very good Muslim)?” He replied, “One who avoids harming the Muslims with his tongue and hands.”

(6) CHAPTER. To feed (others) is a part of Islam.

12. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr: A man asked the Prophet, “Whose Islam is good” or “What (sort of) deeds in (or what qualities of) Islam are good?” The Prophet replied, “To feed (others), and to greet those whom you know and those whom you do not know.” (See Hadith No.28).

(7) CHAPTER. To like for one’s (Muslim’s) brother what one likes for himself is a part of faith.

13. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, “None of you will have
faith till he likes for his (Muslim) brother what he likes for himself.”

(8) CHAPTER. To love the Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) is a part of faith (See Hadith No.6632, Vol.8.)

14. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, By Him in Whose Hands my life is, none of you will have faith till he loves me more than his father and his children.”

15. Narrated Anas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “None of you will have faith till he loves me more than his father, his children and all mankind.”

(9) CHAPTER. Sweetness (delight) of faith.

16. Narrated Anas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever possesses the following three qualities will have the sweetness (delight) of faith:

1. The one to whom Allah ﷻ and His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) become dearer
2- THE BOOK OF BELIEF (i.e. FAITH)

than anything else.

2. Who loves a person and he loves him only for Allâh’s sake.

3. Who hates to revert to atheism (disbelief) as he hates to be thrown into the fire.”

(10) CHAPTER. To love the Anṣâr is a sign of faith:

17. Narrated Anas رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, “To love the Anṣâr is a sign of faith and to hate the Anṣâr is a sign of hypocrisy.”

(11) CHAPTER.

18. Narrated ‘Ubâda bin Aṣ-Ṣâmit رضي الله عنه, who took part in the battle of Badr and was a Naqib (a person heading a group of six persons), on the night of Al-‘Aqaba Pledge: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said while a group of his Companions were around him, “Give me the Bai’ah (pledge) for:

1. Not to join anything in worship along with Allâh.
2. Not to steal.
3. Not to commit illegal sexual intercourse.
4. Not to kill your children.
5. Not to utter slander intentionally forging falsehood (i.e., by making illegal children belonging to their husbands) or (not to accuse an innocent person and to spread such an accusation among people).
6. Not to be disobedient (when ordered) to do Ma’rûf (Islamic Monotheism and all other good deeds).
(The Prophet added): "Whoever amongst you fulfils his pledge will be rewarded by Allāh. And whoever indulges in any one of these (sins) gets the punishment in this world, that punishment will be an expiation for that sin. And if one indulges in any of them, and Allāh conceals (his sin), it is up to Him to forgive or punish him (in the Hereafter)."

‘Ubadā bin Aṣ-Ṣāmit added: "So we gave the Bai‘āh for these." (points to Allāh’s Messenger).

(12) CHAPTER. To flee (run away) from Al-Fītān (afflictions and trials), is a part of religion.

19. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: Allāh’s Messenger said, “A time will come when the best property of a Muslim will be sheep, which he will take on the top of mountains and the places of rainfall (valleys) so as to flee with his religion from Al-Fīṭān (afflictions and trials)."

(13) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet: “I know Allāh better, than all of you do.”

And knowledge is the act of the heart as it is referred to by the Statement of Allāh: “But He will call you to account for that which your hearts have earned.” (V.2:225)

20. Narrated ‘Āishah: Whenever Allāh’s Messenger ordered the Muslims to do something, he used to order them deeds which were easy for them to do, (according to their strength and endurance).
They said, “O Allah’s Messenger! We are not like you. Allah has forgiven your past and future sins.” So Allah’s Messenger became angry and it was apparent on his face. He said, “I fear Allah more, and know Allah better, than all of you do.”

(14) CHAPTER. Whoever hates to revert to Kufr (atheism or disbelief) as he hates to be thrown in fire, is a part of faith.

21. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, “Whoever possesses the following three qualities will taste the sweetness of faith:
1. The one to whom Allah and His Messenger Muhammad become dearer than anything else.
2. Who loves a person and he loves him only for Allah’s sake.
3. Who hates to revert to disbelief (atheism) after Allah has brought him out (saved him) from it, as he hates to be thrown in fire.”

(15) CHAPTER. The grades in superiority of the believers will be according to their good deeds.

22. Narrated Abū Sa’īd Al-Khudrī: The Prophet said, “When the people of Paradise will enter Paradise and the people of Hell will go to Hell, Allah will order those who have had faith equal to the weight of a grain of mustard seed to be taken out from Hell. So they will be taken out but (by then) they will be blackened (charred). Then they will be put in the river of Ḥayā’ or Ḥayār (life) (the narrator is in doubt as to which is the right word), and they will revive like a grain that grows near the
bank of a flood channel. Don't you see that it comes out yellow and twisted?” Wuhaib stated: While narrating us ‘Amr used the word ‘Hayât (life). Moreover he said, “...goodness equal to the weight of a grain of mustard seed.”

23. Narrated Abû Sa‘îd Al-Khudri: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “While I was sleeping I saw (in a dream) that some people were displayed before me wearing shirts, of which some were reaching up to the breasts only, while others were even shorter than that. And ‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb was displayed before me wearing a (long) shirt which he was dragging.” The people asked, “How did you interpret it? (What is its interpretation) O Allah’s Messenger?” He (the Prophet ﷺ) replied, “It is the religion.”

(16) CHAPTER. Al-Hayâ’ (self-respect, modesty, bashfulness, honour etc.) is a part of faith.
(See the Glossary for the meaning of the word Al-Hayâ’).

24. Narrated ‘Abdüllah (bin ‘Umar) : Once Allah’s Messenger ﷺ passed by an Anṣârî (man) who was admonishing his brother regarding Al-Hayâ’.

On that Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Leave him as Al-Hayâ’ is a part of faith.” (See Hadith No.9).
(17) CHAPTER. (The Statement of Allāh Jl, "But if they repent [by rejecting Shirk (polytheism) and accept Islamic Monotheism] and perform As-Salāt (Iqāmat-as-Salāt) and give Zakāt(1) then leave their way free." (V.9:5).

25. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar k4. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said: “I have been ordered (by Allāh) to fight against the people till they testify that Lā ilāha illāllāh, wa annā Muḥammad-ar-Rasūl-Allāh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh ﷺ and that Muḥammad ﷺ is the Messenger of Allāh), and perform As-Salāt [Iqāmat-as-Salāt (prayers)] and give Zakāt so if they perform all that, then they save their lives and properties from me except for Islāmic laws, and their reckoning (accounts) will be with (done by) Allāh.”

(18) CHAPTER. Whoever says that faith is action (good deeds).

Referring to the Statement of Allāh ﷺ: “And this is the Paradise which you have been made to inherit because of your deeds which you used to do (in the life of the world”), (V.43:72) a number of religious learned men explained the Verse (Statement of Allāh ﷺ): “So by your Lord (O Muḥammad ﷺ) We shall certainly call all

(1) (Ch.17) Zakāt: A certain fixed proportion of the wealth and of every kind of the property liable to Zakāt of a Muslim to be paid yearly for the benefit of the poor in the Muslim community. The payment of Zakāt is obligatory as it is one of the five pillars of Islam. Zakāt is the major economic means for establishing social justice and leading the Muslim society to prosperity and security. [See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī, Vol.2, Book of Zakāt (24)].
of them to account for all that they used to do” (V.15:92,93). And the Statement: Lā ilāha illallāh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh.)

And Allāh said, “For the like of this let the workers work.” (V.37:61)

26. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger was asked, “What is the best deed?”

He replied, “To believe in Allāh and His Messenger (Muhammad).”

The questioner then asked, “What is the next (in goodness)?”

He replied, “To participate in Jihad (holy fighting) in Allāh’s Cause.”

The questioner again asked, “What is the next (in goodness)?”

He replied, “To perform Hajj (pilgrimage to Makkah) Mabrūr [which is accepted by Allāh] and is performed with the intention of seeking Allāh’s pleasure only and not to show off and without committing any sin and in accordance with the Sunna (legal ways) of the Prophet (saw).”

(19) CHAPTER. If one does not embrace Islam truly but does so by compulsion or for fear of being killed (then that man is not a believer).

According to the Statement of Allāh:
The bedouins say, ‘We believe.’ Say (O Muhammad): ‘You believe not but you only say we have surrendered (in Islam).’ ” (V.49:14)

And if they had embraced Islam truly (sincerely) their Islam would have been as is referred to in the Statement of Allāh: “Truly, the religion with Allāh is Islam.” (V.3:19). “And whoever seeks a religion other than Islam, it will never be accepted of him, and in the Hereafter he will be one of the losers.” (V.3:85).
27. Narrated Sa'd: Allah's Messenger distributed something amongst (a group of) people while I was sitting there but Allah's Messenger left a man whom I thought the best of the lot. I asked, “O Allah's Messenger! Why have you left that person? By Allah I regard him as a faithful believer.”

The Prophet commented: “Or merely a Muslim.”

I remained quiet for a while, but could not help repeating my question because of what I knew about him. And then I asked Allah's Messenger, “Why have you left so and so? By Allah! He is a faithful believer.”

The Prophet again said, “Or merely a Muslim.”

And I could not help repeating my question because of what I knew about him. Then the Prophet said, “O Sa'd! I give to a person while another is dearer to me, for fear that he might be thrown on his face in the Fire by Allah.”

(20) CHAPTER. To greet is a part of Islam.

And 'Ammār said, “Whoever acquires the following three qualities will acquire faith:
1. To treat others as one likes to be treated by others.
2. To greet everybody (known and unknown).
3. To spend (give charitable gifts) in Allah's Cause, in spite of poverty.”

28. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Amr: A person asked Allah's Messenger:  

“What (sort of) deeds in (or what qualities of) Islam are good?” He replied, “To feed (others) and to greet those whom you know and those whom you do not know.”

(21) CHAPTER. To be ungrateful to one’s husband. And disbelief is of (different grades) lesser (or greater) degrees.

This is narrated by Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī on the authority of the Prophet ﷺ.

29. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ said: “I was shown the Hell-fire and that the majority of its dwellers were women who were disbelievers or ungrateful.” It was asked, “Do they disbelieve in Allāh?” (or are they ungrateful to Allāh?) He replied, “They are ungrateful to their husbands and are ungrateful for the favours and the good (charitable deeds) done to them. If you have always been good (benevolent) to one of them for a period of time and then she sees something in you (not of her liking), she will say, ‘I have never seen any good from you.’”

(22) CHAPTER. Sins are from ignorance and a sinner is not a disbeliever unless he worships others along with Allāh ﷻ .

According to the statement of the Prophet ﷺ, “You still have some characteristics of ignorance.” And the Statement of Allāh ﷻ ﴿Verily, Allāh forgives not that partners should be set up with Him (in worship) but He forgives except that...”
30. Narrated Al-Ma‘rūr: At Ar-Rabadha I met Abu Dhar, who was wearing a cloak, and his slave, too, was wearing a similar one. I asked about the reason for it. He replied, “I abused a man by calling his mother with bad names.” The Prophet ﷺ said to me, “O Abu Dhar! Did you abuse him by calling his mother with bad names? You still have some characteristics of ignorance. Your slaves are your brothers and Allah has put them under your command. So whoever has a brother under his command, should feed him of that which he eats and dress him of that which he wears. Do not ask them (slaves) to do things beyond their capacity (power) and if you do so, then help them.

31. Narrated Al-Ahnaf bin Qais: While I was going to help this man (‘Ali bin Abi Talib رضي الله عنه), Abu Bakrah رضي الله عنه met me and asked, “Where are you going?” I replied, “I am going to help that person.” He said, “Go back for I have heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saying, ‘When two Muslims fight (meet) each other with their swords, both the murderer as well as the murdered will go to the Hell-fire.’ I said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! It is alright for the murderer but what about the murdered one?’ Allah’s Messenger ﷺ replied, ‘He surely had the intention to kill his companion’.

CHAPTER. “And if two parties (or groups) from among the believers fall to fighting, then make peace between them both…” (V.49:9) Allah has called them “believers.”
(23)  CHAPTER.  *Zulm*  (wrong)  of  one  kind can  be  greater or  lesser than that  of another.

32. Narrated 'Abdulläh bin Mas'ūd رضي الله عنَّه:  When the following Verse was revealed:  

"It is those who believe (in the Oneness of Allâh and worship none but Him Alone) and confuse not their belief with *Zulm* (wrong i.e. by worshipping others besides Allâh) for them (only) there is security and they are the guided" (V.6:82), the Companions of Allâh's Messenger ﷺ asked, "Who is amongst us who had not done *Zulm* (wrong)"? Then Allâh ﷻ revealed:  

"Verily, joining others in worship with Allâh is a great *Zulm* (wrong) indeed." (V.31:13)

(24)  CHAPTER.  The  signs  of  a  hypocrite.

33. Narrated Abû Hurairah Z:  The Prophet ﷺ said, "The signs of a hypocrite are three:

1. Whenever he speaks, he tells a lie.
2. Whenever he promises, he always breaks it (his promise).
3. Whenever he is entrusted he betrays (proves dishonest). (If you keep something as a trust with him, he will not return it)."

34. Narrated 'Abdulläh bin ‘Amr رضي الله عنَّه:  The Prophet ﷺ said, "Whoever has the following four (characteristics) will be a pure
hypoctrite, and whoever has one of the following four characteristics will have one characteristic of hypocrisy unless and until he gives it up.

1. Whenever he is entrusted, he betrays (proves dishonest).
2. Whenever he speaks, he tells a lie.
3. Whenever he makes a covenant, he proves treacherous.
4. Whenever he quarrels, he behaves in a very imprudent, evil and insulting manner.”

(25) CHAPTER. To establish the (Nawâfil — voluntary) prayers on the night of Qadr is a part of faith.

35. Narrated Abu Hurairah : Allah’s Messenger said, “Whoever establishes the (Nawâfil — voluntary) prayers on the night of Qadr out of sincere faith and hoping to attain Allah’s rewards (not to show off) then all his past sins will be forgiven.”

(26) CHAPTER. Al-Jihâd (holy fighting in Allah’s Cause) is a part of faith.

36. Narrated Abu Hurairah :［(Ch.2e)］

Al-Jihâd (Holy fighting) in Allah’s Cause (with full force of numbers and weaponry) is given the utmost importance in Islam and is one of its pillars (on which it stands). By Jihâd Islam is established, Allah’s Word is made superior. (His Word – Lâ ilâha illallah – none has the right to be worshipped but Allah), and His Religion Islam is propagated. By abandoning Jihâd (may Allah protect us from that) Islam is destroyed and the Muslims fall into an inferior position; their honor is lost, their lands are stolen, their rule and authority vanishes. Jihâd is an obligatory duty in Islam on every Muslim, and he who tries to escape from this duty, or does not in his innermost heart wish to fulfill this duty, dies with one of the qualities of a hypocrite.
The Prophet ﷺ said, “Allah جً يُ عَزَّ وَ عَلَى جً U assigned for a person who participates in (holy battles) in Allah’s Cause and nothing causes him to do so except belief in Allah and in His Messengers, that he will be recompensed by Allah either with a reward, or booty (if he survives) or will be admitted to Paradise (if he is killed in the battle as a martyr”). The Prophet ﷺ added: “Had I not found it difficult for my followers, then I would not remain behind any Sariva (an army-unit) going for Jihad and I would have loved to be martyred in Allah’s Cause and then made alive, and then martyred and then made alive, and then again martyred in His Cause.”

(27) CHAPTER. It is a part of faith to establish the (Nawâfil — voluntary) prayers during the nights of Ramaḍân.

37. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said: “Whoever establishes (Nawâfil — voluntary) prayers during the nights of Ramaḍân faithfully out of sincere faith and hoping to attain Allah’s Rewards, all his past sins will be forgiven.”

(28) CHAPTER. To observe Saum [(fasts) (according to Islâmic teachings)] during the month of Ramaḍân (sincerely and faithfully) hoping for Allah’s Rewards only, is a part of faith.

38. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever observes Saum (fasts) during the month of Ramaḍân out of sincere faith, and hoping to attain Allah’s Rewards, then all his past sins will be forgiven.”
(29) CHAPTER. Religion is very easy.

And the statement of the Prophet ﷺ, “The most beloved religion to Allah is the tolerant Hanifiya [Islamic Monotheism i.e., to believe in the Oneness of Allah and to worship Him (Allah) Alone and not to worship anything else along with Him].”

39. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Religion is very easy and whoever overburdens himself in his religion will not be able to continue in that way. So you should not be extremists, but try to be near to perfection and receive the good tidings that you will be rewarded; and gain strength by offering the Salat (prayers) in the mornings, afternoons and during the last hours of the nights.” (See Fath Al-Bārī, Vol.1, page 102).

(30) CHAPTER. The (offering of) Salāt (prayers) is a part of faith.

And the Statement of Allah ﷻ: “And Allah would never make your faith (prayers) to be lost.” (V.2:143) (i.e. your prayers which you offered in the past facing the Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem).

40. Narrated Al-Bara’ (bin ‘Āzib): When the Prophet ﷺ came to Al-Madina, he stayed first with his grandfathers or maternal uncles from Ansār. He offered his Salāt (prayers) facing Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem) for sixteen or seventeen months, but he wished that he could pray facing the Ka’bah (at Makkah).

The first Salāt (prayer) which he ✪
offered facing the Ka'bah was the 'Asr prayer in the company of some people. Then one of those who had offered that Salāt with him came out and passed by some people in a mosque who were bowing during their Salāt (facing Jerusalem). He said addressing them, “By Allāh, I testify that I have offered Salāt with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ facing Makkah (Ka’bah).” (Hearing that), those people changed their direction towards the Ka’bah, (during the Salāt), they disapproved of it.

Al-Barā’ ﷺ added, “Before we changed our direction towards the Ka’bah (at Makkah) in prayers, some Muslims had died or had been killed and we did not know what to say about them (regarding their prayers.) Allāh then revealed: “And Allāh would never make your faith (prayers) to be lost (i.e. your Salāt (prayers) offered towards Jerusalem).” (V.2:143)

(31) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding the superiority of) a person who embraces Islam sincerely.

41. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudri ﷺ: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If a person embraces Islam sincerely, then Allāh shall forgive all his past sins, and after that starts the settlement of accounts, the reward of his good deeds will be ten times to seven hundred times for each good deed and an evil deed will be recorded as it is unless Allāh forgives it.”
42. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah's Messenger said, "If any one of you improves (follows strictly) his Islamic religion then his good deeds will be rewarded ten times to seven hundred times for each good deed and a bad deed will be recorded as it is."

(32) CHAPTER. Ad-Din (good, righteous deed\(^{(1)}\) – act of worship) loved most by Allah is that which is done regularly. (And in fact the best religion with Allah is Islam).

43. Narrated A’ishah: Once the Prophet came while a woman was sitting with me. He said, "Who is she?" I replied, "She is so-and-so," and told him about her (excessive) prayers. He said disapprovingly, "Do (good) deeds which are within your capacity (without being overtaxed) as Allah does not get tired (of giving rewards) but (surely) you will get tired and Ad-Din (good, righteous deed – act of worship) loved most by Allah is that which is done regularly."

(33) CHAPTER. Faith increases and decreases.

And the Statements of Allah, "We increased them in guidance." (V.18:13) "And the believers may increase in faith." (V.74:31) — And Allah said, "This day..." (Ch.32) See Fath Al-Bari (Ad-Din is explained as deeds).
I have perfected your religion for you.

(The last Statement indicates that) if somebody leaves a part of (from) the perfection of the religion then his religion is incomplete.

44. Narrated Anas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever said ‘La ilaha illallah’ (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah) and has in his heart good (faith) equal to the weight of a barley grain, will be taken out of Hell. And whoever said: ‘La ilaha illallah’ and has in his heart good (faith) equal to the weight of a wheat grain will be taken out of Hell. And whoever said ‘La ilaha illallah’ (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah) and has in his heart good (faith) equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant) will be taken out of Hell.”

45. Narrated ʿUmar bin Al-Khattāb: Once a Jew said to me, “O chief of believers! There is a Verse in your Holy Book which is read by all of you (Muslims), and had it been revealed to us, we would have taken that day (on which it was revealed) as an ‘Eid (Festival) day’. ʿUmar bin Al-Khattāb asked, “Which is that Verse?” The Jew replied, “This day I have perfected your religion for you, completed My Favour upon you, and have chosen for you Islam as your religion.”

ʿUmar replied, “No doubt, we know when and where this Verse was revealed to the Prophet ﷺ. It was Friday.
and the Prophet ﷺ was standing at 'Arafat (i.e., the Day of Hajj).”

(34) CHAPTER. To pay Zakāt(1) is a part of Islām.

And the Statement of Allāh ﷻ:

“And they were commanded not, but that they should worship Allāh, and worship none but Him Alone (abstaining from ascribing partners to Him) and to perform As-Salāt (Iqāmat-as-Salāt) and to give Zakāt, and that is the right religion.” (V.98:5)

46. Narrated Ṭalḥa bin ‘Ubaidullāh رضي الله عنه: A man from Najd with unkempt hair came to Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and we heard his loud voice but could not understand what he was saying, till he came near (and then we came to know) that he was asking about Islām. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “You have to perform five Salāt (prayers) (Iqāmat-as-Salāt) in a day and night (24 hours).” The man asked, “Are there any other (more) Salāt (prayers) upon me?” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ replied, “No, but if you want to perform the Nawāfil Salāt (you can).” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ further said to him: “You have to observe Saum [fasts (according to Islāmic teachings)] during the month of Ramadān.” The man asked, “Are there any other (more) fasting upon me?” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ replied, “No, but if you want to observe the Nawāfil fasts (you can).” Then

(1) (Ch.34) Zakāt زكاءً : A certain fixed proportion of the wealth and of the each and every kind of the property liable to Zakāt of a Muslim to be paid yearly for the benefit of the poor in the Muslim community. The payment of Zakāt is obligatory as it is one of the five pillars of Islām. Zakāt is the major economic means for establishing social justice and leading the Muslim society to prosperity and security. [See Sahih Al-Bukhārī, Vol.2, Book of Zakāt (24)].
Allah’s Messenger further said to him, “You have to pay the Zakat.” The man asked, “Is there any thing other than the Zakat for me to pay?” Allah’s Messenger replied, “No, unless you want to give alms of your own.” And then that man retreated saying, “By Allah! I will neither do less nor more than this.” Allah’s Messenger said, “If what he said is true, then he will be successful (i.e. he will be granted Paradise).”

(35) CHAPTER. To accompany the funeral processions (up to the place of burial) is a part of faith.

47. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “A believer who accompanies the funeral procession of a Muslim out of sincere faith and hoping to attain Allah’s Reward and remains with it till the funeral prayer is offered and the burial ceremonies are over, he will return with a reward of two Qirat. Each Qirat is like the size of the (mount) Uhud. He who offers the funeral prayer only and returns before the burial, will return with the reward of one Qirat only.”

(36) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding) the fear of a believer that his good deeds may be annulled (lost) without his knowledge.

And Ibrâhim At-Taimi said, “When I compare my talks with my deeds (then I find that my deeds are deficient compared with my talks). I am afraid, my deeds deny what I talk.” And Ibn Abi Mulaika said, “I met thirty Companions of the Prophet and...
each of them was afraid of becoming a hypocrite and none of them said that he was as strong in belief as the angel Jibril (Gabriel) or Mikael (Michael).” And Al-Hasan (Al-Baṣrī) said, “It is only a faithful believer who dreads hypocrisy and only a hypocrite who considers himself safe (is not afraid of hypocrisy).”

And one should be afraid, not to persist in hypocrisy and disobedience of Allah (by committing sins) without repenting to Allāh immediately, as is referred to in the Statement of Allāh ﷺ: “And (they) do not persist in what (wrong) they have done, while they know.” (V.3:135).

48. Narrated ‘Abdullah (bin Mas‘ūd) رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Abusing a Muslim is Fūṣūq (an evil doing) and killing him is Kufr (disbelief).”

49. Narrated ‘Ubāda bin As-Ṣāmit رضي الله عنه: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went out to inform the people about the (date of the) night of decree (Al-Qadr) but there happened a quarrel between two men from amongst the Muslims. The Prophet ﷺ said, “I came out to inform you about (the date of) the night of Al-Qadr, but as so-and-so quarrelled, its knowledge was taken away (I forgot it) and maybe it was better for you. Now look for it in the 7th, the 9th and the 5th (of the last 10 nights of the month of Ramadān).”
Iṣlām, Iḥsān (perfection) and the knowledge of the Hour (Doomsday).

And their explanation given to him by the Prophetﷺ. Then the Prophetﷺ said (to his Companions), “Jibril (Gabriel) came to teach you your religion.” So the Prophetﷺ regarded all that as religion. And all that which the Prophetﷺ explained to the delegation of Abdul Qais was a part of faith. (See Hadith No.53 and 87). And the Statement of Allāh ﷲ: “And whoever seeks a religion other than Iṣlām, it will never be accepted of him.” (V.3:85).

50. Narrated Abū Hurairah Z

One day while the Prophet was sitting out for the people, (a man – the angel) Jibril (Gabriel) came to him and asked, “What is faith?” Allah’s Messenger ﷲ replied, “Faith is to believe in Allāh, His angels, (the) meeting with Him, His Messengers, and to believe in Resurrection.” Then he further asked, “What is Islam?” Allah’s Messenger ﷲ replied, “To worship Allāh Alone and none else, to perform the Salāt (prayers) (Iqāmat-as-Salāt), to pay the Zakāt and to observe Saum [fasts (according to Islamic teachings)] during the month of Ramdān”

Then he further asked, “What is Iḥsān (perfection)?” Allah’s Messenger ﷲ replied, “To worship Allāh as if you see Him, and if you cannot achieve this state of devotion then you must consider that

(1) (H.50) In this Hadith, only 4 items are mentioned, while in another Hadith, 6 items are mentioned: (i) Allāh, (ii) His angels, (iii) His Books (The Torah, The Gospel, The Qur’ān and all the other Holy Books revealed by Allāh), (iv) His Messengers, (v) Day of Resurrection and (vi) Al-Qadar (Divine Pre-ordainments, i.e., whatever Allāh has ordained, must come to pass).

(2) (H.50) Again the principles of Iṣlām mentioned here are 4, but in other narrations, they are five – 5th is the Pilgrimage (Hāji) to Makkah for the one who can afford it, once in a lifetime.
He is looking at you." Then he further asked, "When will the Hour be established?" Allâh's Messenger ﷺ replied, "The answerer has no better knowledge than the questioner. But I will inform you about its portents.

1. When a slave (lady) gives birth to her master.

2. When the shepherds of black camels start boasting and competing with others in the construction of higher buildings. And the Hour is one of five things which nobody knows except Allâh.

The Prophet ﷺ then recited:

"Verily, Allâh! With Him (Alone) is the knowledge of the Hour..." (V.31:34) Then that man (the angel) left and the Prophet ﷺ asked his Companions to call him back, but they could not see anything (him). Then the Prophet ﷺ said, "That was Jibrîl (Gabriel عليه السلام), who came to teach the people their religion."

Abû 'Abdullâh رضي الله عنه said: He (the Prophet) considered all that as a part of faith.

(38) CHAPTER.

51. Narrated 'Abdullâh bin 'Abbâs رضي الله عنهما: I was informed by Abû Sufyân that Heraclius said to him, "I asked you whether they (followers of Muḥammad ﷺ) were increasing or decreasing. You replied that they were increasing. And in fact, this is the way of true Faith till it is complete in all respects. I further asked you whether there was anybody, who, after embracing his (the Prophet ﷺ) religion (Islam) became displeased and discarded it. You replied in the negative, and in fact, this is (a sign of) True Faith. When its delight enters the heart and mixes with them completely, nobody can be displeased with it."
(39) CHAPTER. The superiority of that person who leaves all doubtful (unclear) things for the sake of his religion.

52. Narrated An-Nu'man bin Bashir رضي الله عنهما: I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “Both legal and illegal things are evident but in between them there are doubtful (unclear) things and most of the people have no knowledge about them. So whoever saves himself from these doubtful (unclear) things, he saves his religion and his honour. And whoever indulges in these doubtful (unclear) things is like a shepherd who grazes (his animals) near the Hima (private pasture) of someone else, and at any moment he is liable to get in it. (O people!) Beware! Every king has a Hima and the Hima of Allah ﷺ on the earth is His illegal (forbidden) things. Beware! There is a piece of flesh in the body, if it becomes good (reformed), the whole body becomes good, but if it gets spoilt, the whole body gets spoilt, and that is the heart.

(40) CHAPTER. To pay Al-Khumus (one-fifth of the war booty to be given in Allah’s Cause) is a part of faith.

53. Narrated Abu Jamra: I used to sit with Ibn ‘Abbas رضي الله عنهما and he made me sit on his sitting place. He requested me to stay with him in order that he might give me a share from his property. So I stayed with him for two months. Once he told (me) that when the delegation of the tribe of ‘Abdul Qais came to the Prophet ﷺ, the Prophet ﷺ asked them, “Who are the people (i.e. you)? (Or) who are the delegates?” They replied, “We are from the tribe of Rabia.” Then the Prophet ﷺ said to them, “Welcome! O
people (or O delegation of ‘Abdul Qais)! Neither will you have disgrace or will you regret.” They said, “O Allah’s Messenger! We cannot come to you except in the sacred month and there is the infidel tribe of Mudar intervening between you and us. So please order us to do something good (religious deeds) so that we may inform our people whom we have left behind (at home), and that we may enter Paradise (by acting on them).” Then they asked about drinks (what is legal and what is illegal). The Prophet ordered them to do four things and forbade them from four things. He ordered them to believe in Allah Alone and asked them, “Do you know what is meant by believing in Allah Alone?” They replied, “Allah and His Messenger know better.”

Thereupon the Prophet said, “It means:
1. To testify that Lâ ilâha illallâh wa anna Muḥammad-ar-Rasul Allâh” (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah).
2. Iqâmat-as-Salât [to perform the (compulsory congregational) Salât (prayers)].
3. To pay the Zakât.
4. To observe Saum [fasts (according to Islamic teachings)] during the month of Ramaḍân.
5. And to pay Al-Khānumus (one-fifth of the booty to be given in Allah’s Cause).

Then he forbade them four things, namely Al-Hantam, Ad-Dubbâ’, An-Naqqār and Al-Muzaffat or Al-Muqaiyar; (these were the names of pots in which alcoholic drinks were prepared) (the Prophet mentioned the container of wine and he meant the wine itself). The Prophet further said (to them): “Memorize them (these instructions) and convey them to the people whom you have left behind.”
(41) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the statement: “The reward of deeds depends upon the intention and hoping to get rewards from Allâh.”

And every person will get the reward according to what he has intended.

And this includes faith, ablution, As-Salât, Zakât, Hajj, As-Saum and all the Ahkâm (orders) of Allâh.

Allâh Taâlâ said, “Say: Each one does (deeds) according to Shakîlatihi (i.e., his way or his religion or his intentions etc)…” (V.17:84)

And the spending of a man for his family with the intention of having a reward from Allâh, will be regarded as alms.

And the Prophet ﷺ said, “Jihâd(1) and intentions.” (meaning — Jihâd — to fight for Allâh’s Cause, and when there is no call for it then at least one should have the intention to take part in Jihâd).

54. Narrated ‘Umar (bin Al-Khattâb): Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “The reward of deeds depends upon the intentions, and every person will get the reward according to what he has intended. So, whoever emigrates for Allâh and His Messenger (ﷺ) then his emigration will be for Allâh and His Messenger (ﷺ). And whoever emigrates for worldly benefits or for a woman to marry, his emigration will be for what he emigrated for.”

55. Narrated Abû Mas’ûd: The Prophet ﷺ said, “If a man spends on his family with the intention of having a reward

(1) (Ch.41) Jihâd against Kufr i.e., to fight for Allâh’s Cause when there is a call for it, otherwise one should have the intentions to participate in Jihâd and this intention has the same reward as that of Jihâd itself.
from Allāh, sincerely for Allāh’s sake then it is a (kind of) alms-giving (in reward) for him.”

56. Narrated Sa‘d bin Abī Waqqāṣ: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “You will be rewarded for whatever you spend for Allāh’s sake, even if it were a morsel which you put in your wife’s mouth.”

(42) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: Religion is An-Nasīḥah (to be sincere and true) to Allāh, to His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ), to the Muslim rulers, and to all the Muslims.¹

And the Statement of Allāh ﷻ:
“If they are sincere (in duty) to Allāh and His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ).” (V.9:91)

57. Narrated Jarir bin Abdullāh :

¹ (Ch.42) (To be sincere and true)

1) To Allāh ﷻ in duty [i.e., obeying Him, by following His religion of Islamic Monotheism, attributing to Him what He deserves and doing ḥiḥād for His sake and to believe in Him, to fear Him much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Him much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained)].

2) To Allāh’s Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) [i.e. to respect him greatly, and to believe that he ﷺ is Allāh’s Messenger, and to fight on his behalf both in his lifetime and after his death and to follow his Sunna (legal ways etc.)].

3) To the Muslim rulers (i.e. to help them in their job of leading Muslims to the Right Path and alarm them if they are heedless).

4) To all the Muslims (in common) [i.e., to order them for Al-Mar’ūf (i.e., Islamic Monotheism, and all that Islam has ordained), and to forbid them from Al-Munkar (i.e., disbelief, polytheism of all kinds and all that Islam has forbidden), to help them and to be merciful and kind to them etc.].
I gave Al-Bai'ãh (pledge) to Allah's Messenger for the following:
1. *Iqãmat-as-$aIat* [to perform the (compulsory congregational) *Salât* (prayers)].
2. To pay the *Zakãt*.
3. And to be sincere and true to every Muslim [i.e., to order them for *Al-Ma'rûf* (i.e., Islãmic Monotheism, and all that Islãm orders one to do), and to forbid them the *Al-Munkar* (i.e., disbelief, polytheism of all kinds, and all that Islãm has forbidden), to help them and to be merciful and kind to them.

58. Narrated Ziyãd bin 'Aaqa: I heard Jarîr bin 'Abdullãh (praising Allah on the day when Al-Mughîra bin Shu'ba died, he (Jarîr) got up (on the pulpit) and thanked and praised Allah and said, “Be afraid of Allah Alone. Who has none along with Him to be worshipped. (You should) be calm and quiet till the (new) chief comes to you and he will come to you soon. Ask Allah's forgiveness for your (late) chief because he himself loved to forgive others.” Jarîr added, “Ammã ba du (then after), I came to the Prophet and said, 'O Allah's Messenger! I give my Bai'ãh (pledge) to you for Islam.' The Prophet conditioned (my pledge) for me to be sincere and true to every Muslim i.e. to order them for the *Al-Ma'rûf* [i.e., Islãmic Monotheism and all that Islãm orders one to do, and to forbid them from the *Al-Munkar* (i.e., disbelief, polytheism of all kinds, and all that Islãm has forbidden), and to help them, and to be merciful and kind to them etc.], so I gave my pledge to him for this. By the Lord of this mosque! I am sincere and true to you (Muslims).”

Then Jarîr asked for Allah's forgiveness and came down (from the pulpit).
(1) CHAPTER. The superiority of knowledge.

And the Statement of Allāh גכ: “...Allāh will exalt in degree those of you who believe, and those who have been granted knowledge. And Allāh is Well-Acquainted with what you do.” (V.58:11)

And the Statement of Allāh גכ: “...My Lord, increase me in knowledge.” (V.20:114)

(2) CHAPTER. Whoever is asked about knowledge while he is busy in some conversation, so he finished his talk, and then answered the questioner.

59. Narrated Abū Hurairah צ: While the Prophet ﷺ was saying something in a gathering, a bedouin came and asked him, “When would the Hour (Doomsday) take place?” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ continued his talk, so some people said that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had heard the question, but did not like what that bedouin had asked. Some of them said that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had not heard it. When the Prophet ﷺ finished his speech, he said, “Where is the questioner, who enquired about the Hour?” The bedouin said, “I am here, O Allah’s Messenger.” Then the Prophet ﷺ said, “When Al-Amānah (i.e., the trust or moral responsibility or honesty and all the duties which Allāh has ordained) is lost, then wait for the Hour.” The bedouin said, “How will that be lost?” The Prophet ﷺ said, “When the power or authority is given to those who do not deserve it (i.e. they are not pious religious scholars),”(1) then wait for the Hour.”

(1) (H.59) See Fath-Al-Bāri, for details.
(3) CHAPTER. Whoever raises his voice in (conveying) knowledge.

60. Narrated `Abdullãh bin `Amr L4i : Once the Prophet remained behind us in a journey. He joined us while we were performing ablution for the Salãt (prayer) which was overdue. We were just passing wet hands over our feet (and not washing them properly) so the Prophet addressed us in a loud voice and said twice or thrice: “Save your heels from the Fire.”

(4) CHAPTER. Concerning variety of words used by the narrators conveying different significations regarding the concept of narrating and which has importance for the Hadîth scholars only.
61. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Amongst the trees, there is a tree, the leaves of which do not fall and is like a Muslim. Tell me the name of that tree.” Everybody started thinking about the trees of the desert areas. And I thought of the date-palm tree but felt shy to answer. The others then asked, “Please inform us, what is that tree, O Allah’s Messenger?” He ﷺ replied, “It is the date-palm tree.”

62. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Amongst the trees, there is a tree, the leaves of which do not fall and is like a Muslim. Tell me the name of that tree.” Everybody started thinking about the trees of the desert areas. And I thought of the date-palm tree. The others then asked, “Please inform us what is that tree, O Allah’s Messenger?” He ﷺ replied, “It is the date-palm tree.”

(5) CHAPTER. The Inmām questioning his companions in order to test their knowledge.

(6) CHAPTER. What is said about knowledge.

And the Statement of Allah ﷻ: “And say: My Lord! Increase me in knowledge.” (V.20:114)
To recite or read (something) and present it in front of a scholar.
63. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: While we were sitting with the Prophet in the mosque, a man came riding on a camel. He made his camel kneel down in the mosque, tied its foreleg and then said: "Who amongst you is Muhammad?" At that time the Prophet was sitting amongst us (his Companions) leaning on his arm. We replied, "This white man reclining on his arm." The man then addressed him, "O son of ‘Abdul Muttalib." The Prophet said, "I am here to answer your questions." The man said to the Prophet, "I want to ask you something and will be hard in questioning. So do not get angry." The Prophet said, "Ask whatever you want." The man said, "I ask you by your Lord, and the Lord of those who were before you, has Allah sent you as a Messenger to all the mankind?" The Prophet said, "By Allah, yes." The man further said, "I ask you by Allah. Has Allah ordered you to offer five Salāt (prayers) in a day and night (24 hours)?" He replied, "By Allah, yes." The man further said, "I ask you by Allah! Has Allah ordered you to observe Saum (fasts) during this month of the year (i.e., Ramaḍān)?" He replied, "By Allah, yes." The man further said, "I ask you by Allah. Has Allah ordered you to take Zakāt from our rich people and distribute it amongst our poor people?" The Prophet replied, "By Allah, yes." Thereupon that man said, "I have believed in all that with which you have been sent, and I have been sent by my people as a messenger, and I am Dimām bin Thal'āba from the brothers of Bani Sa'd bin Bakr."
(7) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the hand to hand exchange (of books of knowledge), and the writing of knowledge by religious scholars to different countries.

Anas said that ‘Uthmān got the Qur’ān transcribed and sent its copies to far-off places. ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar, Yahyā bin Sa‘īd and Mālik consider it permissible, and some people of Hijāz supported this opinion depending on the narration of the Prophet ﷺ, when the Prophet ﷺ got some instructions written to be given to the commander of the army, and told him (the commander) not to read them till he had reached such and such place. When that commander reached that place he read out what had been written to the people and informed them of the orders of the Prophet ﷺ.

64. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهم: Once Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ gave a letter to a person and ordered him to go and deliver it to the governor of Bahrain. (He did so) and the governor of Bahrain sent it to Khosrau, who read that letter and then tore it to pieces.

(The subnarrator (Ibn-Shihāb) thinks that Ibn Al-Musaiyab said that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ invoked Allāh against them (saying), “May Allāh tear them into pieces, and disperse them all totally.”
65. Narrated Anas bin Malik:

Once the Prophet ﷺ wrote a letter or intended to write a letter. The Prophet ﷺ was told that they (rulers) would not read letters unless they were sealed. So the Prophet ﷺ got a silver ring made with "Muḥammad the Messenger of Allāh" engraved on it. As if I were just observing its white glitter in the hand of the Prophet ﷺ.

(8) CHAPTER. Whoever sat at the farther end of a gathering. And whoever found a place amongst a gathering and took his seat there.

66. Narrated Abū Wāqīd Al-Lāithi:

While Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ was sitting in the mosque with some people, three men came. Two of them came in front of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and the third one went away. The two persons kept on standing before Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ for a while and then one of them found a place in the circle and sat there while the other sat behind them (the gathering), and the third one went away. When Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ finished his preaching, he said, “Shall I tell you about these three persons? One of them betook himself to Allāh, so Allāh took him into His Grace and Mercy and accommodated him, the second felt shy from Allāh, so Allāh sheltered Him in His Mercy (and did not punish him), while the third turned his face..."
from Allāh and went away, so Allāh turned His Face from him likewise.”

(9) CHAPTER. The Statement of the Prophet ﷺ: It is probable that a person who receives a piece of information indirectly may comprehend it better than he who has heard it directly from its source.”

67. Narrated `Abdur Raḥmān bin Abī Bakrah’s father: Once the Prophet ﷺ was riding his camel and a man was holding its rein. The Prophet ﷺ asked, “What is the day today?” We kept quiet, thinking that he might give that day another name. He said, “Isn’t it the day of Naḥr (slaughtering of the animals of sacrifice)?” We replied, “Yes.” He further asked, “Which month is this?” We again kept quiet, thinking that he might give it another name. Then he said, “Isn’t it the month of Dhul-Hijja?” We replied, “Yes.” He said, “Verily! Your blood, property and honour are sacred to one another (i.e. Muslims) like the sanctity of this day of yours, in this month of yours and in this city of yours. It is incumbent upon those who are present to inform those who are absent because those who are absent might comprehend (what I have said) better than the present audience.”
(10) CHAPTER. It is essential to know a thing first before saying or acting upon it.

According to the Statement of Allāh ﷺ: “So know (O Muḥammad ﷺ) that “La ilaha illallāh... (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh),” (V.47:19) So Allāh stated that one should acquire knowledge first. And religious scholars are the inheritors of the Prophets, i.e., they inherit knowledge. And whoever gains knowledge is lucky and gains a great thing. And whoever followed a way to seek (religious) knowledge, Allāh ﷺ will make easy for him the way to Paradise. Allāh ﷺ said, “…It is only those who have knowledge among His slaves that fear Allāh…” (V.35:28) And Allāh ﷺ said, “…But none will understand them except those who have knowledge.” (V.29:43). (And also Allāh’s Statement): “And they will say: Had we but listened or used our intelligence, we would not have been among the dwellers of the blazing Fire.” (V.67:10) And Allāh ﷺ also said, “…Are those who know equal to those who know not?” (V.39:9)

And the Prophet ﷺ said, “If Allāh wants to do good to a person, He makes him comprehend the religion and verily, knowledge is attained by learning.” Aḥḥ Dhar pointing towards his neck said, “If you put the sword on this (my neck to kill me) and then I think that, before this sword could work, I can say even one sentence which I heard from the Prophet ﷺ, I would surely say it. (Indicating that one should convey the knowledge that one has acquired to the others).” And Ibn ‘Abbās said, “You should be Rabbaniyān (religious scholars) forgiving, wise, and learned men.” And it is said that a Rabbaniyy (religious scholar) is the...
one who starts teaching people simple subjects of knowledge before touching big (difficult) ones.

(11) CHAPTER. The Prophet ﷺ used to take care of the people in preaching by selecting a suitable time so that they might not run away (never made them averse or bored them with religious talk and knowledge all the time).

68. Narrated Ibn Mas'ūd : The Prophet ﷺ used to take care of us in preaching by selecting a suitable time, so that we might not get bored. (He abstained from pestering us with religious talk and knowledge all the time).

69. Narrated Anas bin Mālik : The Prophet ﷺ said, "Make things easy for the people, and do not make things difficult for them and give them glad tidings and do not repel them".

(12) CHAPTER. Whoever fixed a special day for giving (a religious talk) to the students.

70. Narrated Abū Wā’il L: ‘Abdullāh used to give a religious talk to the people on every Thursday. Once a man said, "O Abā ‘Abdur-Rahmān! (By Allāh)! I wish if you could preach us daily." He replied, "The only thing which prevents me from doing so, is that I hate to bore you, and no doubt I take care of you in preaching by selecting a suitable time just as the Prophet ﷺ used to do with us, for fear of making us bored."
(13) CHAPTER. If Allah wants to do good to a person, He makes him comprehend (the religion). [The understanding of the Qur'an and As-Sunna (legal ways) of the Prophet (Muhammad ﷺ)].

71. Narrated Mu‘awiya ﷺ in a Khuṭba (religious talk): I heard Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “If Allāh wants to do good to a person, He makes him comprehend the religion [the understanding of the Qur’an and As-Sunna (legal ways) of the Prophet (Muhammad ﷺ)], I am just a distributor, but the grant is from Allāh. (And remember) that this nation (true Muslims — real followers of Islamic Monotheism) will remain obedient to Allāh’s Orders [i.e. following strictly Allāh’s Book (the Qur’an) and the Prophet’s Sunna (legal ways)] and they will not be harmed by anyone who will oppose them (going on a different path), till Allāh’s Order (Day of Judgement) is established.”

(14) CHAPTER. (The superiority of) comprehending knowledge.

72. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ: We were with the Prophet ﷺ and a spadix of date-palm tree was brought to him. On that he said, “Amongst the trees, there is a tree which resembles a Muslim.” I wanted to say that it was the date-palm tree but as I was the youngest of all (of them) I kept quiet. And then the Prophet ﷺ said, “It is the date-palm tree.”
(15) CHAPTER. Wish to be like the one who has knowledge and Al-Hikmah [wisdom i.e., the knowledge of the Qur'an and the Sunna (legal ways) of the Prophet صل الله عليه وسلم].

And 'Umar رضي الله عنه said, “Everyone must acquire sound religious knowledge early before he becomes a chief.” (Abū 'Abdullāh said:) The Companions of the Prophet صل الله عليه وسلم had studied inspite of the fact that they were old in age.

73. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin Mas'ūd رضي الله عنه: The Prophet صل الله عليه وسلم said, “Do not wish to be like anyone except in two cases. (The first is) a person, whom Allāh has given wealth and he spends it righteously (according to what Allāh has ordered in a just and right way); (the second is) the one whom Allāh has given Al-Hikmah [wisdom i.e., the knowledge of the Qur'an and the Sunna (legal ways) of the Prophet صل الله عليه وسلم] and he acts according to it and teaches it to others.” (See Fath Al-Bārî Vol. I, page 177)

(16) CHAPTER. What has been said about the journey of Prophet Musa (Moses) عليه السلام (when he went) in the sea to meet Al-Khîdr.

And the Statement of Allāh: “...May I follow you so that you teach me” (V.18:66)

74. Narrated Ibn 'Abbâs رضي الله عنه that he differed with Hûr bin Qais bin Ḫîṣn Al-Fazârî regarding the companion of (the
Prophet) Mūsa (Moses). Ibn ‘Abbās said that he was Khidr. Meanwhile, Ubai bin Ka'b passed by them and Ibn ‘Abbās called him, saying ‘My friend (Hur) and I have differed regarding Mūsa’s companion whom he asked the way to meet. Have you heard the Prophet mentioning something about him?’ He said, ‘Yes. I heard Allah’s Messenger saying, “While Mūsa was sitting in the company of some Israelites, a man came and asked him: Do you know anyone who is more learned than you? Mūsa replied: No. So Allah sent the Divine Revelation to Mūsa: Yes, Our slave Khidr (more learned than you). Mūsa asked (Allah) how to meet him (Khidr). So Allah made the fish as a sign for him and he was told that when the fish was lost, he should return (to the place where he had lost it) and there he would meet him (Al-Khidr). So Mūsa went on looking for the sign of the fish in the sea. The boy-servant of Mūsa said to him: Do you remember when we betook ourselves to the rock, I indeed forgot the fish, none but Satan made me forget to remember it. On that Mūsa said: That is what we have been seeking! (V.18:64) So they went back retracing their footsteps, and found Khidr. (And) what happened further to them is narrated by Allah in His Book — the Qur’ān. (V.18:54 up to V.18:82)
(17) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet  ﷺ: “O Allâh! Bestow on him (Ibn ‘Abbâs) the knowledge of the Book (the Qur’ân).”

75. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs  ﷺ:
Once the Prophet  ﷺ embraced me and said, “O Allâh! Bestow on him the knowledge of the Book (the Qur’ân).”

(18) CHAPTER. At what age may a youth be listened to (i.e. quotation of the Hadîth from a boy be acceptable).

76. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs  ﷺ:
Once I came riding a she-ass and had (just) attained the age of puberty. Allâh’s Messenger  ﷺ was offering Salât (prayer) at Minâ. There was no wall in front of him and I passed in front of some of the rows while they were offering their Salât. There I let the she-ass loose to graze and entered the row, and nobody objected to it.

77. Narrated Ma‘mûd bin Rabî‘  ﷺ:
When I was a boy of five, I remember, the Prophet  ﷺ took water from a bucket (used for getting water out of a well) with his mouth and threw it on my face.
(19) CHAPTER. To go out in search of knowledge.

And Jábir bin ‘Abdullãh travelled for one month to get a single Hadîth from ‘Abdullãh bin Unais.

78. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: that he differed with Hur bin Qais bin Hisn Al-Fazâri regarding the companion of Prophet Mûsa (Moses). Meanwhile, Ubai bin Ka’b passed by them and Ibn ‘Abbâs called him saying, “My friend (Hur) and I have differed regarding Musa’s companion whom he asked the way to meet. Have you heard Allah’s Messenger mentioning something about him? Ubai bin Ka’b said: “Yes, I heard the Prophet mentioning something about him (saying), ‘While Mûsa ( عليه السلام) was sitting in the company of some Israelites, a man came and asked him: ‘Do you know anyone who is more learned than you? Mûsa ( عليه السلام) replied: No. So Allah sent the Divine Revelation to Mûsa ( عليه السلام): Yes, Our slave Khîdîr is more learned than you. Mûsa ( عليه السلام) asked Allah how to meet him (Al-Khîdîr). So Allah made the fish a sign for him and he was told when the fish was lost, he should return (to the place where he had lost it) and there he would meet him (Al-Khîdîr). So Mûsa ( عليه السلام) went on looking for the sign of the fish in the sea. The boy-servant of Mûsa ( عليه السلام) said: Do you remember when we betook ourselves to the rock, I indeed forgot the fish, none but Satan made me forget to remember it. On that Mûsa ( عليه السلام) said: That is what we have been seeking. So they went back retracing their foot steps, and found Khîdîr (and) what
happened further about them is narrated by Allāh in His Book – the Qur'ān.” (V.18:54 up to V.18:82).

(20) CHAPTER. The superiority of a person who learns (Islām, becomes a religious scholar) and then teaches it to others.

79. Narrated Abū-Mūsa: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The example of guidance and knowledge with which Allāh has sent me is like abundant rain falling on the earth, some of which was fertile soil that absorbed rain-water and brought forth vegetation and grass in abundance. (And) another portion of it was hard and held the rain-water and Allāh benefited the people with it and they utilized it for drinking, making their animals drink from it and to irrigate the land for cultivation. (And) a portion of it was barren which could neither hold the water nor bring forth vegetation (then that land gave no benefits). The first is the example of the person who comprehends Allāh’s religion (Islām) and gets benefit (from the knowledge) which Allāh has revealed through me (the Prophet ﷺ) and learns and then teaches it to others. The (last example is that of a) person who does not care for it and does not take Allāh’s guidance revealed through me (He is like that barren land.)”
And Rabi'a said, “It is not wise for a person who has been gifted with a part of the (religious) knowledge to ruin himself (by abstaining from teaching it to others).”

80. Narrated Anas: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “From among the portents of the Hour are (the following):
1. Religious knowledge will be taken away (by the death of religious learned men).
2. Ignorance (of religion) will prevail.
3. Drinking of alcoholic drinks (will be very common).
4. There will be prevalence of open illegal sexual intercourse.

81. Narrated Anas: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said: I will narrate to you a Hadîth which none will narrate to you after me. I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saying: “From among the portents of the Hour are (the following):
1. (Religious) knowledge will decrease (by the death of religious learned men).
2. Ignorance (of religion) will prevail.
3. There will be prevalence of open illegal sexual intercourse.
4. Women will increase in number and men will decrease in number so much so that fifty women will be looked after by one man. (See Hadîth No.1036. Vol.2).

(22) CHAPTER. The superiority of (religious) knowledge.

82. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “While I was sleeping, I saw that a cup full of milk was...
brought to me and I drank my fill till I noticed its (the milk) wetness coming out of my nails. Then I gave the remaining milk to ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab.” (The Companions of the Prophetﷺ asked, “What have you interpreted (about this dream)? O Allâh’s Messenger!”), He replied, “(It is religious) knowledge.”

(23) CHAPTER. To give a religious verdict while riding an animal or standing on anything else.

83. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘As: Allâh’s Messengerﷺ stopped (for a while near the Jamâr) at Mina during his last Hajj for the people and they were asking him questions. A man came and said, “I forgot and got my head shaved before slaughtering the Hady (sacrificing animal).” The Prophetﷺ said, “There is no harm, go and do the slaughtering now.” Then another person came and said, “I forgot and slaughtered (the camel) before Ramy (throwing of the pebbles at the Jamra).” The Prophetﷺ said, “Do it now (the Ramy) and there is no harm.”

The narrator added: So, on that day, when the Prophetﷺ was asked about anything (as regards the ceremonies of Hajj during the days at Mina) performed before or after its due time, his reply was: “Do it (now) and there is no harm.”

(24) CHAPTER. Whoever gave a religious verdict by beckoning or by nodding.

84. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: Allâh’s Messengerﷺ said: Somebody said to the Prophetﷺ during his last Hajj, “I did the slaughtering before
doing the Ramy.” *(1)* The Prophet ﷺ beckoned with his hand and said, “There is no harm in that.”Then another person said, “I got my head shaved before offering the sacrifice.” The Prophet ﷺ beckoned with his hand saying, “There is no harm in that.”

85. Narrated Abū Hurairah ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “(Religious) knowledge will be taken away (by the death of religious scholars), ignorance (in religion) and Al-Fitn (trials and afflictions) will appear; and Ḥajj will increase.” It was asked, “What is Ḥajj, O Allah’s Messenger?” He replied by beckoning with his hand indicating “killing.” (See Fath Al-Bārī, Vol.I, page 192)

86. Narrated Asmā’ (bint Abū Bakr) رضي الله عنهم: I came to ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها while she was offering Salāt (prayer), and said to her, “What has happened to the people?” She pointed out towards the sky. (I looked towards the mosque), and saw the people offering Salāt (the prayer). ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها said, “Subhān Allāh.” I said to her, “Is there a sign?” She nodded with her head meaning, “Yes.” I, too, then stood (for the prayer of eclipse) till I became (nearly) unconscious and later on I poured water on my head. After the prayer, the Prophet ﷺ praised and glorified Allāh and then said, “Just now at this place I have seen what I have never seen before, including Paradise and Hell. No

---

*(1)* (H.84) Ramy: i.e., throwing small stones at the Jamarāt and it is one of the ceremonies of Ḥajj during the days at Mina, the others are Ḥalāq (shaving of the head-hair), Dhābab (slaughtering of Ḥady), and Mobīt (to sleep at night there at Mina).
doubt it has been revealed to me that you will be put to trials in your graves, and these trials will be like the trials of Al-Masih Ad-Dajjāl or nearly like it (the subnarrator is not sure which expression Asmā’ used). You will be asked, ‘What do you know about this man (Prophet Muḥammad ﷺ)?’ Then the faithful believer (or Asmā’ said a similar word) will reply, ‘He is Muḥammad ﷺ, Allāh’s Messenger who came to us with clear evidences and guidance and so we accepted his teachings and followed him. And he is Muḥammad ﷺ.’ And he will repeat it thrice. Then the angels will say to him, ‘Sleep in peace as we have come to know that you were a faithful believer.’ On the other hand, a hypocrite or a doubtful person will reply, ‘I do not know, but I heard the people saying something and so I said it’ (the same).’ [See Vol. 2, Hadith No. 1338]

(25) CHAPTER. The Prophet ﷺ urged the people (mission) of ‘Abdul Qais to memorize the faith and the (religious) knowledge (as he explained to them) and to inform (convey) to their people whom they have left behind (at home).

Narrated Mālik bin Al-Huwairith that the Prophet ﷺ said to them, “Go back to your people and teach (religious knowledge) to them.

87. Narrated Abu Jamra: I was an interpreter between the people and Ibn ‘Abbas. Once Ibn ‘Abbas said that a delegation of the tribe of ‘Abdul Qais came to the Prophet ﷺ who asked them, “Who are the people (i.e., you)? (Or) who are the...
delegates?” They replied, “We are from the tribe of Rabi’ah.” Then the Prophet said to them, “Welcome, O people [or said, “O delegation of ‘Abdul Qais”]. Neither will you have disgrace nor will you regret.” They said, “We have come to you from a distant place and there is the tribe of the infidels of Mudar intervening between you and us and we cannot come to you except in the sacred month. So please order us to do something good (religious deeds), and that we may inform our people whom we have left behind (at home), and that we may enter Paradise (by acting on them.)” The Prophet ordered them to do four things, and forbade them from four things. He ordered them to believe in Allāh Alone, the Honourable the Majestic and said to them, “Do you know what is meant by believing in Allāh Alone?” They replied, “Allāh and His Messenger know better.” Thereupon the Prophet said, “That means to testify that La ilāha illāllah wa anna Muḥammad-ar-Rasūl Allāh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh and that Muḥammad is the Messenger of Allāh), Iqāmat-as-Salāt [to perform As-Salāt (the compulsory congregational prayers) perfectly], to pay Zakāt, to observe Saum [fasts (during the month of Ramaḍān)], (and) to pay Al-Khumus (one-fifth of the booty to be given in Allāh’s Cause).” Then he forbade them four things, namely Ad-Dubba, Al-Hantam, Al-Muzaffat (and) An-Naqūr or Al-Muqaiyar (These were the names of pots in which alcoholic drinks used to be prepared). The Prophet further said, “Memorize them (these instructions) and tell them to the people whom you have left behind.”

(26) CHAPTER. To travel seeking an answer to a problematic matter, and to teach it to one’s family.
88. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin Abī Mulaika: 'Uqba bin Al-Ḥarīth said that he had married the daughter of Abī Ihāb bin 'Azīz. Later on a woman came to him and said, “I have suckled (nursed) Uqba and the woman whom he married (his wife at my breast).” ‘Uqba said to her, “Neither I knew that you have suckled (nursed) me nor did you tell me.” Then he rode over to see Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ at Al-Madīna and asked him about it. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “How can you keep her as a wife when it has been said (that she is your suckling foster-sister)?” Then Uqba divorced her, and she married another man.

(27) CHAPTER. To fix the duties in rotation for learning (religious) knowledge.

89. Narrated 'Umar: My Ānṣārī neighbour from Banī Umaiyya bin Zaid who used to live at ‘Awālī Al-Madīna and I, used to visit the Prophet ﷺ by turns. He used to go one day and I another day. When I went, I used to bring the news of that day regarding the Divine Revelation and other things, and when he went, he used to do the same for me. Once my Ānṣārī friend, in his turn (on returning from the Prophet ﷺ), knocked violently at my door and asked if I was there. I became horrified and came out to him. He said, “Today a great thing has happened.” I then went to Ḥafṣa and saw her weeping. I asked her, “Did Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ divorce you all?” She replied, “I do not know.” Then, I entered upon the Prophet ﷺ and said while standing, “Have you divorced
your wives?” The Prophet replied in the negative. On that I said, “Allahu-Akbar (Allah is the Most Great).”
(See Ḥadīth No.5191, Vol.7 for details)

(28) CHAPTER. To be furious while preaching or teaching if one sees what one hates.

90. Narrated Abû Mas'ûd Al-Ansârî: A man asked the Prophet about the picking up of a Luqâṭa (fallen lost thing). The Prophet replied, “Recognise and get acquainted with its tying material and its container, and make public announcement..."
(about it) for one year, then utilize it but give it to its owner if he comes.” Then the person asked about the lost camel. On that, the Prophet ﷺ got angry and his cheeks or his face became red and he said, “You have no concern with it as it has its water container, and its feet and it will reach water, and eat (the leaves) of trees, so leave it till its owner finds it.” The man then asked about the (lost) sheep. The Prophet ﷺ replied, “It is either for you, for your brother (another person) or for the wolf.”

92. Narrated Abū Mūsa: The Prophet ﷺ was asked about things which he did not like, but when the questioners insisted, the Prophet ﷺ got angry. He then said to the people, “Ask me anything you like.” A man asked, “Who is my father?” The Prophet ﷺ replied, “Your father is Ḥudhāfa.” Then another man got up and said, “Who is my father, O Allāh’s Messenger?” He replied, “Your father is Salīm, Mālā (the freed slave) of Shaiba.” So when ‘Umar saw that (the anger) on the face of the Prophet ﷺ he said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! We repent to Allāh (for offending you).”

(29) CHAPTER. Whoever knelt down before the Imām or a (religious) preacher.

93. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: One day Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ came out
(before the people) and ‘Abdullāh bin Ḥudhāfā stood up and asked (him) “Who is my father?” The Prophet replied, “Your father is Ḥudhāfā.” The Prophet ﷺ told them repeatedly (in anger) to ask him anything they liked. ‘Umar knelt down before the Prophet ﷺ and said thrice, “We accept Allah as (our) Lord and Islām as (our) religion and Muḥammād as (our) Prophet.” After that the Prophet ﷺ became silent.

(30) CHAPTER. Repeating one’s talk thrice in order to make others understand.

The Prophet ﷺ said: “Beware from giving a false statement,” and he kept on repeating it. (See Hadith No.2654, Vol.3). Ibn ‘Umar said that the Prophet ﷺ said thrice, “Haven’t I conveyed Allah’s Message (to you?)”

94. Narrated Anas رضي الله عنه: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ asked permission to enter, he knocked the door thrice with greeting and whenever he spoke a sentence (said a thing) he used to repeat it thrice. (See Hadith No.6244, Vol.8).

95. Narrated Anas رضي الله عنه: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ spoke a sentence (said a thing), he used to repeat it thrice so that the people could understand it properly from him and whenever he asked permission to enter, (he knocked the door) thrice with greeting.
96. Narrated 'Abdullah bin 'Amr رضي الله عنهما: Once Allah’s Messenger ﷺ remained behind us in a journey. He joined us while we were performing ablution for the ‘Asr prayer which was overdue. We were just passing wet hands over our feet (not washing them properly) so the Prophet ﷺ addressed us in a loud voice and said twice or thrice, “Save your heels from the fire.”

(31) CHAPTER. A man teaching (religion to) his woman-slave and his family.

97. Narrated Abū Burdā’s father رضي الله عنه: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Three persons will have a double reward:
1. A person from the people of the Scriptures (a Jew or a Christian) who believed in his Prophet ['Iesa (Jesus) or Mūsā (Moses)] and then believed in Prophet Muḥammad ﷺ (i.e., has embraced Iṣlām).
2. A slave who fulfils his duties to Allāh and also to his master.
3. A master of a woman-slave who teaches her good manners and educates her in the best possible way (the religion) and manumits her and then marries her.”
(32) CHAPTER. The preaching (and teaching) of the (religious) knowledge to women by the imām (Chief):

98.Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Once Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ came out while Bīlāl was accompanying him. He went towards the women thinking that they had not heard him (i.e. his religious talk). So he preached them and ordered them to give alms. (Hearing that) the women started giving alms; some donated their ear-rings, some gave their rings and Bīlāl was collecting them in the corner of his garment.

(33) CHAPTER. Eagerness to (learn) the Hadīth.

99.Narrated Abū Hurairah: I said, “O Allāh’s Messenger!, Who will be the luckiest person who will gain your intercession on the Day of Resurrection?” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “O Abū Hurairah! I have thought that none will ask me about it before you as I know your eagerness to (learn) the Ahadīth. The luckiest person who will have my intercession on the Day of Resurrection will be the one who said sincerely from (the bottom of) his heart ‘Lā ilāha illallah’ (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh).”
(34) CHAPTER. How the (religious) knowledge will be taken away?

And ʿUmar bin ʿAbdul-ʿAziz wrote to Abū Bakr bin Ḥazm, “Look for the knowledge of Ḥadīth and get it written, as I am afraid that religious knowledge will vanish and the religious learned men will pass away (die). Do not accept anything save the Ḥadīth of the Prophet. Spread knowledge and teach the ignorant, for knowledge does not vanish except when it is kept secretly (to oneself).”

100. Narrated ʿAbdullāh bin ʿAmr bin ʿĀṣī: I heard Allah’s Messenger saying, “Allah does not take away the knowledge by taking it away from (the hearts of) the people, but takes it away by the death of the religious learned men till when none of the religious learned men remains, people will take as their leaders ignorant persons who when consulted will give their verdict without knowledge. So they will go astray and will lead the people astray.”

(35) CHAPTER. Should a day be fixed for women in order to teach them religion (apart from men)?

101. Narrated ʿAbū ʿSaʿīd Al-Khudrī: Some women requested the Prophet
to fix a day for them as the men were taking all his time. On that he promised them one day for religious lessons and commandments. Once during such a lesson the Prophet said, “A woman whose three children die will be shielded by them from the Hell-fire.” On that a woman asked, “If only two die?” He replied, “Even two (will shield her from the Hell-fire).”

102. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: "If she will bear their deaths with patience for getting reward from Allāh.

103. Narrated Ibn Abī Mulaika: Whenever ‘Āishah (the wife of the Prophet) heard anything which she did not understand, she used to ask again till she understood it completely. (‘Āishah said:) “Once the Prophet said, “Whoever will be called to account (about his deeds on the Day Of Judgment).”

(36) CHAPTER. Whoever heard something (but did not understand it) and then asked again till he understood it completely.

(1) (H.101) If she will bear their deaths with patience for getting reward from Allāh.
of Resurrection) will surely be punished.” I said, “Doesn’t Allah say:
‘He surely will receive an easy reckoning.’” (V.84:8)

The Prophet ﷺ replied, “This means only the presentation of the accounts, but whoever will be argued about his account, will certainly be perished (or ruined”).

(37) CHAPTER. It is incumbent on those who are present [in a religious meeting (or conference)] to convey the knowledge to those who are absent.

This statement has come from the Prophet ﷺ on the authority of Ibn ‘Abbás رضي الله عنّهما.

104. Narrated Sa‘īd بن ‘Abbās رضي الله عنّه: Abū Shuraiḥ said, [When ‘Amr bin Sa‘īd was sending the troops to Makkah (to fight ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair)] I said to him (‘Amr): O chief! Allow me to tell you what the Prophet ﷺ said on the day following the conquest of Makkah. My ears heard and my heart comprehended, and I saw him with my own eyes, when he said it. He glorified and praised Allāh and then said, “Allāh تَعَالَى and the people has made Makkah a sanctuary. So anybody who has belief in Allāh and the Last Day (i.e. a Muslim) should neither shed blood in it nor cut down its trees. If anybody argues that fighting is allowed in Makkah as Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ did fight (in Makkah), tell him that Allāh gave permission to His Messenger ﷺ, but He did not give it to you.” The Prophet ﷺ added: “Allāh allowed me only for a few hours on that day (of the conquest) and today (now) its sanctity is the same (valid) as it was before. So it is incumbent upon those who are present to convey it (this information) to
those who are absent.” Abū Shuraiḥ was asked, “What did ‘Amr reply?” He said ‘Amr said, “O Abū Shuraiḥ! I know better than you (in this respect). Makkah does not give protection to one who disobeys (Allāh) or runs after committing murder, or theft (and takes refuge in Makkah).”

105. Narrated Abū Bakrah: The Prophet said, “No doubt your blood, property;... the subnarrator Muḥammad thought that Abū Bakrah had also mentioned ‘and your honour (chastity)’... are sacred to one another as is the sanctity of this day of yours in this month of yours. It is incumbent on those who are present to inform those who are absent.” (Muḥammad the subnarrator used to say, “Allāh’s Messenger told the truth.”) The Prophet repeated twice: “No doubt! Haven’t I conveyed Allāh’s Message to you.”

(38) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who tells a lie against the Prophet.

106. Narrated ‘Ali: The Prophet said, “Do not tell a lie against me for whoever tells a lie against me (intentionally) then he will surely enter the Hell-fire.”

107. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair: I said to my father, “I do not hear from you any narration (Hadith) of Allāh’s Messenger as I hear (his narrations) from so-and-so?” Az-Zubair
replied, “I was always with him (the Prophet ﷺ) and I heard him saying, ‘Whoever tells a lie against me (intentionally) then (surely) let him occupy his seat in Hell-fire.’”

108. Narrated Anas: The fact which stops me from narrating a great number of Ḥadīth to you is that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Whoever tells a lie against me intentionally, then (surely) let him occupy his seat in Hell-fire.”

109. Narrated Salama: I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying, “Whoever (intentionally) ascribes to me what I have not said, then (surely) let him occupy his seat in Hell-fire.”

110. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Name yourselves with my name (use my name) but do not name yourselves with my Kunya name (i.e., Abū Qāsim). And whoever sees me in a dream then surely he has seen me for Satan cannot impersonate me. And whoever tells a lie against me intentionally, then (surely) let him occupy his seat in Hell-fire.”

(39) CHAPTER. The writing of knowledge.

111. Narrated Ash-Sha’bi: Abū Juḥaifa said, “I asked ‘Alī, ‘Have you got any book (which has been revealed to the Prophet ﷺ) which you have not written down? ’ Thus did ‘Alī reply, ‘The Book of Knowledge.’”
apart from the Qur'an)?' ‘Ali replied, 'No, except Allâh's Book or the power of understanding which has been bestowed (by Allâh) upon a Muslim, or what is (written) in this sheet of paper (with me).’’ Abû Juhaifa said, 'I asked, 'What is (written) in this sheet of paper?' ‘Ali replied, 'It deals with Diya [compensation (blood money) paid by the killer to the relatives of the victim in case of man slaughter only], the ransom for the releasing of the captives from the hands of the enemies, and the law that no Muslim should be killed in Qisas (equality in punishment) for the killing of (a disbeliever).’’

112. Narrated Abu Hurairah Ṭabarî: In the year of the conquest of Makkah, the tribe of Khuza'a killed a man from the tribe of Bani Laith in revenge for a killed person belonging to them. They informed the Prophet ﷺ about it. So he rode his Râhîla (she-camel for riding) and addressed the people saying, 'Allâh held back the elephant or killing from Makkah. (The sub narrator is in doubt whether the Prophet ﷺ said “elephant” or “killing,” as the Arabic words standing for these words have great similarity in shape), but He (Allâh) let His Messenger ﷺ and the believers overpower the infidels of Makkah. Beware! (Makkah is a sanctuary) Verily! Fighting in Makkah was not permitted for anyone before me, nor will it be permitted for anyone after me. It (war) in it was made legal for me for few hours or so on that day. No doubt it is at this moment a sanctuary, it is not allowed to uproot its thorny shrubs or to uproot its trees or to pick up its Luqata (fallen things) except by a person who will look for its owner (announce it publicly). And if somebody is killed, then his closest relative has the right to choose one of the two — the blood money (Diya) or
retaliation, having the killer killed.” In the meantime a man from Yemen came and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Get that written for me.” The Prophet ordered his Companions to write that for him. Then a man from Quraish said, “Except Al-Idhkhir (a type of grass that has good smell) O Allah’s Messenger, as we use it in our houses and graves.” The Prophet said, “Except Al-Idhkhir i.e. Al-Idhkhir is allowed to be plucked.”

113. Narrated Abū Hurairah
There is none among the Companions of the Prophet who has narrated more Ahãdīth than I except ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Amr (bin Al-‘Āṣ) who used to write them and I never did the same.

114. Narrated ‘Ubaidullah bin ‘Abdulläh:
Ibn ‘Abbâs said, “When the ailment of the Prophet became worse, he said, ‘Bring for me (writing) paper and I will write for you a statement after which you will not go astray.’ But ‘Umar said, ‘The Prophet is seriously ill, and we have got Allah’s Book with us and that is sufficient for us.’ But the Companions of the Prophet differed about this and there was a hue and cry. On that the Prophet said to them, ‘Go away (and leave me alone). It is not right that you should quarrel in front of me.’”

Ibn ‘Abbâs came out saying, “It was most unfortunate (a great disaster) that Allah’s Messenger was prevented from writing that statement for them because of their
disagreement and noise.”

(Note: It is apparent from this Hadith that Ibn ‘Abbās had witnessed the event and came out saying this statement. The truth is not so, for Ibn ‘Abbās used to say this statement on narrating the Hadīth and he had not witnessed the event personally. See Fath Al-Bārī, Vol.1, p.220 footnote.) (See also Ḥadīth No.3168, Vol.4).

(40) CHAPTER. The knowledge and its teaching and preaching at night.

115. Narrated Umm Salama رضي الله عنها: One night Allah’s Messenger ﷺ got up and said, “Subhān Allāh! How many Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions) have been descended tonight and how many treasures have been disclosed! Go and wake the sleeping lady occupants of these dwellings (his wives) up (for prayers). A well-dressed (person) in this world may be naked in the Hereafter.”

(41) CHAPTER. To speak about (religious) knowledge at night.

116. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنه: Once the Prophet ﷺ led us in the ‘Ishā’ prayer during the last days of his life and after finishing it [the Salāt (prayer) with Taslim] he said: “Do you realize (the importance of) this night?” Nobody present on the surface of the earth tonight will be living after the completion of one hundred years from this night.”
117. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: I stayed overnight in the house of my aunt Maimūna bint Al-Ḥārith (the wife of the Prophet) while the Prophet was there with her during her night turn. The Prophet offered the ‘Ishā’ prayer (in the mosque), returned home and after having prayed four Rakʿā, he slept. Later on he got up at night and then asked whether the boy (or he used a similar word) had slept? Then he got up for the Salāt (prayer) and I stood up by his left side, but he made me stand to his right and offered five Rakʿā followed by two more Rakʿā. Then he slept and I heard him snoring and then (after a while) he left for the (Fajr) prayer.

118. Narrated Abū Hurairah: People say that I have narrated many Ahādīth (the Prophet’s narrations). Had it not been for two Verses in the Qur’ān, I would not have narrated a single Hadīth, and the Verses are:

“Verily, those who conceal the clear proofs, and evidences and the guidance,
which We have sent down, after We have made it clear for the people in the Book, they are the ones cursed by Allāh and cursed by the cursers. Except those who repent and do righteous deeds, and openly declare (the truth which they concealed). These, I will accept their repentance. And I am the One Who accept repentance, the Most Merciful.” (V.2:159-160).

And no doubt our Muhājjir (emigrant) brothers used to be busy in the market with their business (bargains) and our Anṣārī brothers used to be busy with their property (agriculture). But I (Abū Hurairah) used to stick to Allāh’s Messenger, contented with what will fill my stomach and I used to attend that which they used not to attend and I used to memorize that which they used not to memorize.

119. Narrated Abū Hurairah: I said to Allāh’s Messenger: “I hear many narrations (Ahadīth) from you but I forget them.” Allāh’s Messenger said, “Spread your Rida’ (garment).” (1) I did accordingly and then he moved his hands as if filling them with something (and emptied them in my Rida’) and then said, “Take and wrap this sheet over your body.” I did it and after that I never forgot anything.

Narrated Ibrāhīm bin Al-Mundhir: Ibn Abī Fudaik narrated the same as above (Hadith No. 119) but added that the Prophet had moved his hands as if filling them with something.

120. Narrated Abū Hurairah: I have memorized two kinds of knowledge

---

(1) (H.119) Rida’: A piece of cloth (sheet etc.) worn around the upper part of the body.
from Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ. I have propagated one of them to you and if I propagate the second, then my pharynx (throat) will be cut off (i.e. killed).

(43) CHAPTER. To be quiet (and listen) to religious learned men.

121. Narrated Jarir: The Prophet ﷺ said to me during Hajjat-al-Wīdā’ (last pilgrimage of the Prophet ﷺ): “Let the people keep quiet and listen.” Then he said (addressing the people), “Do not become infidels (revert to disbelief) after me by cutting the necks of one another (killing each other).”

(44) CHAPTER. When a religious learned man is asked, “Who is the most learned person?” it is better for him to attribute or entrust absolute knowledge to Allāh and to say, “Allāh is the Most Learned (than anybody else).”

122. Narrated Sa‘īd b. Jubair: I said to Ibn ‘Abbās, “Nauf Al-Bakāli claims that Mūsa (Moses) (the companion of Khīḍr) was not the Mūsa of Bānī Isrā’îl but he was another Mūsa.” Ibn ‘Abbās remarked that the enemy of Allāh (Nauf) has told a lie.¹

Narrated Ubai bin Ka‘b: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Once the Prophet Mūsa (Moses) stood up and addressed Bānī Isrā’îl. He was asked, ‘Who is the most learned man amongst the people.’ He said, ‘I

(1) (H.122) Ibn Abbās said this in a state of anger without intending to abuse Nauf but to affirm that he did not tell the truth (see Fath Al-Bārî. Vol.I. P.229).
am the most learned.' Allâh admonished Mûsa as he did not attribute absolute knowledge to Him (Allâh). So Allâh revealed to him ‘At the junction of the two seas there is a slave amongst my slaves who is more learned than you.’ Mûsa said, ‘O my Lord! How can I meet him?’ Allâh said, ‘Take a fish in a basket (and proceed) and you will find him at the place where you will lose the fish.’ So Mûsa set out along with his (servant) boy, Yûsha' bin Nûn and carried a fish in a basket till they reached a rock, where they laid their heads (i.e., lay down) and slept. The fish came out of the basket and it took its way into the sea (straight) as in a tunnel. So it was an amazing thing for both Mûsa and his (servant) boy. They proceeded for the rest of that night and the following day. When the day broke, Mûsa said to his (servant) boy: ‘Bring us our early meal. No doubt, we have suffered much fatigue in this journey.’ Mûsa did not get tired till he passed the place about which he was told. There the (servant) boy told Mûsa, ‘Do you remember when we betook ourselves to the rock, I indeed forgot the fish.’ Mûsa remarked, ‘That is what we have been seeking.’ So they went back retracing their foot-steps, till they reached the rock. There they saw a man covered with a garment (or covering himself with his own garment). Mûsa greeted him.

Al-Khîdhr ( عليه السلام) replied saying, ‘How do people greet each other in your land?’ Mûsa said, ‘I am Mûsa.’ He asked, ‘The Moses of Bani Isrâ’il?’ Mûsa replied in the affirmative and added, ‘May I follow you so that you teach me of that knowledge which you have been taught.’ Al-Khîdhr replied, ‘Verily! You will not be able to have patience with me, O Mûsa! I have some of the knowledge of Allâh which He has taught me and which you do not know, while you have some
knowledge which Allâh has taught you which I do not know.' Mûsa said, 'If Allâh will, you will find me patient and I will not disobey you in aught.' So, both of them set out walking along the sea-shore, as they did not have a boat. In the meantime a boat passed by them and they requested the (crew of the boat) to take them on board. The crew recognized Al-Khîdhr and took them on board without fare. Then a sparrow came and stood on the edge of the boat and dipped its beak once or twice in the sea. Al-Khîdhr said: 'O Mûsa! My knowledge and your knowledge have not decreased Allâh's Knowledge except like the amount of water taken by this sparrow from the sea with its beak.' Then Al-Khîdhr went to one of the planks of the boat and plucked it out. Mûsa said, 'These people gave us a free lift but you have broken their boat and scuttled it so as to drown its people.' Al-Khîdhr replied, 'Didn't I tell you that you will not be able to have patience with me.' Mûsa said, 'Call me not to account for what I forgot.' The first (excuse) of Mûsa was that he had forgotten. Then they proceeded further and found a boy playing with other boys. Al-Khîdhr took hold of the boy's head from the top and plucked it out with his hands (i.e. killed him). Mûsa said, 'Have you killed an innocent person who has killed none.' Al-Khîdhr replied, 'Did I not tell you that you cannot have patience with me?' Then they both proceeded till when they came to the people of a town, they asked them for food, but they refused to entertain them. There they found a wall on the point of collapsing. Al-Khîdhr repaired it with his own hands. Mûsa said, 'If you had wished, surely you could have taken wages for it.' Al-Khîdhr replied, 'This is the parting between you and me.' The Prophet ﷺ added, 'May Allâh be Merciful to Mûsa! Would that he could
have been more patient to learn more about their story."

123. Narrated Abū Mūsa: A man came to the Prophet and asked, "O Allah's Messenger! What kind of fighting is in Allah's Cause? (I ask this), for some of us fight because of being enraged and angry and some for the sake of their pride and haughtiness." The Prophet raised his head (as the questioner was standing) and said, "He who fights that Allah's Word (i.e. Allah's Religion of Islāmic Monotheism) should be superior, fights in Allah's Cause."

(46) CHAPTER. To ask about a religious matter and to give a religious verdict (at Mina during Ḥajj) while doing the Ramy of Jimar (throwing of pebbles at the Jimar in Mina during Ḥajj).

124. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Amr: I saw the Prophet near the Jamra and the people were asking him questions (about
religious problems). A man asked, “O Allāh’s Messenger! I have slaughtered the Hady (sacrificial animal) before doing the Ramy.” The Prophet replied, “Do the Ramy (now) and there is no harm.” Another person asked, “O Allāh’s Messenger! I got my head shaved before slaughtering the animal.” The Prophet replied, “Do the slaughtering (now) and there is no harm.” So on that day, when the Prophet was asked about anything as regards the ceremonies of Hajj performed before or after its due time his reply was, “Do it (now) and there is no harm.”

(47) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh: “And of knowledge you (mankind) have been given only a little.” (V.17:85)

125. Narrated ʿAbdullāh (bin Maʿsūd): While I was walking along with the Prophet through the ruins of Al-Madīna and he was reclining on a date-palm leaf stalk, some Jews passed by. Some of them said to the others: “Ask him (the Prophet) about the Rāḥ (the spirit).” Some of them said that they should not ask him that question as he might give a reply which would displease them. But some of them insisted on asking, and so one of them stood up and asked, “O Abūl-Qāsim! What is the Rāḥ?” The Prophet remained quiet. I thought he was being inspired Divinely. So I stayed till that state of the Prophet (while being inspired) was over. The Prophet then said, “And they ask you (O Muhammad) concerning the Rāḥ (the Spirit); Say: Rāḥ (the spirit) is one of the things, the knowledge of which is only with my Lord. And of knowledge, you (mankind) have been given only a little.” (V.17:85)
(48) CHAPTER. Whosoever left some optional things simply for the fear that some people may not be able to understand them and may fall into something more difficult.

126. Narrated Aswad: Ibn Az-Zubair said to me, “‘Āishah used to tell you secretly a number of things. What did she tell you about the Ka’bah?” I replied, “She told me that once the Prophet said, ‘O ‘Āishah! Had not your people been still close to the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance (infidelity), I would have dismantled the Ka’bah and would have made two doors in it; one for entrance and the other for exit.’” Later on Ibn Az-Zubair did the same.

(49) CHAPTER. Whoever selected some people to teach them (religious) knowledge preferring them over others for fear that the others may not understand it.

And ‘Ali said, “You should preach to the people according to their mental calibre so that they may not convey wrong things about Allāh and His Messenger ﷺ.”


128. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: “Once Mu‘ādh was riding behind Allāh’s
Messenger as a companion rider. Allâh's Messenger said, "O Mu'âdh bin Jabal." Mu'âdh replied, "Labbai'k and Sa'daik, (1) O Allâh's Messenger!" Again the Prophet said, "O Mu'âdh!" Mu'âdh said thrice, "Labbai'k and Sa'daik, O Allâh's Messenger!" Allâh's Messenger said, "There is none who testifies sincerely from his heart that La ilaha illallah wa anna Muhammad-ar-Rasul Allâh" (none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh), except that Allâh will save him from the Hell-fire." Mu'âdh said, "O Allâh's Messenger! Should I not inform the people about it, so that they may have glad tidings?"

He replied, "When (the people hear about it), they will solely depend on it." Then Mu'âdh narrated the above mentioned Hadith just before his death, being afraid of committing a sin (by concealing the knowledge).

129. Narrated Anas: I was informed that the Prophet had said to Mu'âdh, "Whosoever will meet Allâh without associating anything in worship with Him will go to Paradise."

Mu'âdh asked the Prophet "Should I not inform the people of this good news?"

The Prophet replied, "No, I am afraid, lest they should depend upon it (absolutely)."

(50) CHAPTER. (What is said as regards): To be shy (Al-Hayâ) while learning (religious) knowledge.

And Mujâhid said, "Neither a shy nor a proud person can learn the religious knowledge." And 'Aishah said, "How excellent the women of the Ansâr are! They do not feel shy while learning sound knowledge in religion."

(1) (H.128) See Glossary.
130. Narrated Umm Salama 

Umm Sulaim came to Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ and said, “Verily, Allâh is not shy to tell the truth. Is it necessary for a woman to take a bath after she has a wet dream (sexual discharge)?” The Prophet ﷺ replied, “Yes, if she notices a discharge.” Umm Salama, then covered her face and asked, “O Allâh’s Messenger! Does a woman get a discharge?” He replied, “Yes, let your right hand be in dust (an Arabic expression you say to a person when you contradict his statement meaning “You will not achieve goodness”), and that is why the son resembles his mother.”

131. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar 

Once Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Amongst the trees there is a tree, the leaves of which do not fall and is like a Muslim, tell me the name of that tree.” Everybody started thinking about the trees of the desert areas and I thought of the date-palm tree but felt shy (to answer). The others asked, “O Allâh’s Messenger! Inform us of it.” He ﷺ replied, “It is the date-palm tree.” I told my father what had come to my mind and on that he said, “Had you said it I would have preferred it to such and such a thing that I might possess.”
(51) CHAPTER. Whosoever felt shy (to ask something) and then requested another person to ask on his behalf.

132. Narrated ‘Ali: I used to get the emotional urethral discharge frequently so I requested Al-Miqdād to ask the Prophet about it. Al-Miqdād asked him and he replied, “One has to perform ablution (after it).” (See Hadith No.269).

(52) CHAPTER. Teaching religious knowledge and giving religious verdicts in a mosque.

133. Narrated Nāfi’: ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar said: “A man got up in the mosque and said: ‘0 Allah’s Messenger! At which place you order us that we should assume the Ihram?’

Allah’s Messenger replied, ‘The residents of Al-Madīnā should assume the Ihram from Dhul-Hulaifa, the people of Syria from Al-Juhfah and the people of Najd from Qarn.’” Ibn ‘Umar further said, “The people claim that Allah’s Messenger also said, ‘The residents of Yemen should assume Ihram from Yalamlam.’” Ibn ‘Umar used to say, “I do not remember whether Allah’s Messenger had said the last statement or not.”

(53) CHAPTER. Whosoever answered to the questioner more than what he asked.

134. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: A man asked the Prophet: “What (kinds of
clothes) should a Muhrim (a Muslim intending to perform 'Umra or Ḥajj) wear?"
He replied, "He should not wear a shirt, a turban, trousers, a headcloak or a garment scented with saffron or Wars (kinds of perfumes). And if he has no slippers, then he can use Khuff (leather socks) but the socks should be cut short so as to make the ankles bare." (See Hadith No.1542, Vol.2).
4 - THE BOOK OF WUDU"

(1) CHAPTER. What has been revealed regarding ablution?

And the Statement of Allâh says: "O you who believe! When you intend to offer Salât (prayer), wash your faces and your hands (forearms) up to the elbows, rub (by passing wet hands over) your heads, and (wash) your feet up to the ankles..." (V.5:6)

Abû 'Abdullah said: The Prophet ᶦ had made clear that it is obligatory (while performing) ablution to wash the (above mentioned) body-parts once. And the Prophet ᶦ also did perform the ablution by washing (these) parts twice and thrice, but he never washed them more than three times.

And the religious learned men disliked exceeding the limits set by the Prophet ᶦ while performing ablution, and to surpass the action of the Prophet ᶦ.

(2) CHAPTER. No Salât (prayer) is accepted without ablution (i.e. to remove the small Hadath (1) by ablution or the big Hadath by taking a bath).

135. Narrated Abû Hurairah ᶦ: Allâh’s Messenger ᶦ said, “The Salât (prayer) of a person who does Hadath (passes urine, stool or wind) is not accepted till he performs (repeats) the ablution.”

A person from Ḥadamawt asked Abû Hurairah ᶦ, “What is Hadath?” Abû Hurairah ᶦ replied, “Hadath means the passing of wind from the anus.”

(3) CHAPTER. The superiority of ablution. And Al-Ghurr-ul-Muhajjalun (the parts of the

(1) (Ch.2) See Glossary.
body of the Muslims washed in ablation will shine on the Day of Resurrection and the angels will call them by that name) from the traces of ablation.

136. Narrated Nu'aim Al-Mujmir: Once I went up the roof of the mosque, along with Abū Hurairah. He performed ablation and said, “I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying, ‘On the Day of Resurrection, my followers will be called Al-Ghurr-ul-Muhajjalun from the traces of ablation and whoever can increase the area of his radiance⁴ should do so (i.e. by performing ablation in the most perfect manner).’”

137. Narrated 'Abbād bin Tamīm: My uncle asked Allah’s Messenger ﷺ about a person who imagined to have passed wind during Salāt (prayer). Allah’s Messenger ﷺ replied: “He should not leave his Salāt unless he hears sound or smells something.”


(4) CHAPTER. One should not repeat ablation if in doubt unless and until he is convinced (that he has lost his ablation by having Hadath).

(5) CHAPTER. To perform a light ablation.
snores and then offered *Salāt* (prayer) (or probably lay till his breath sounds were heard and then got up and prayed)." Ibn 'Abbās added: "I stayed overnight in the house of my aunt, Mā'mūna, the Prophet slept for a part of the night; and late in the night, he got up and performed ablution from a hanging water-skin, a light (perfect) ablution and stood up for *Salāt*. I, too, performed a similar ablution, then I went and stood on his left. He drew me to his right and prayed as much as Allāh wished, and again lay and slept till his breath sounds were heard. Later on the *Muaḍh-dhin* (call-maker for the *Salāt*) came to him and informed him that it was time for *Salāt*. The Prophet went with him for the *Salāt* without performing a new ablution." (Sufyān said to ‘Amr that some people said, "The eyes of Allāh’s Messenger sleep but his heart does not sleep." ‘Amr replied, "I heard ‘Ubayd bin ‘Umar saying that the dreams of Prophets were Divine Revelations, and then he recited the Verse: ...(O my son! I have seen in a dream that I am slaughtering you (offer you in sacrifice to Allāh)..." (V.37:102). (See *Fath Al-Bārī*, Vol.1, page 249).
(See *Hadith* No.183)

(6) CHAPTER. The completion (or perfection) of ablution (one should wash all the parts perfectly).

And Ibn ‘Umar said, “The completion of ablution means to clean the parts perfectly.”

139. Narrated Usāma bin Zaid: Allāh’s Messenger proceeded from
Arafāt till when he reached a mountain path, he dismounted, urinated and then performed ablution but not a perfect one. I said to him, ("Is it the time for) Ṣalāt (prayer), O Allāh's Messenger?" He said, "The (place of) Ṣalāt is ahead of you." He rode till when he reached Al-Muzdalifa, he dismounted and performed ablution – a perfect one. The (call for Adhān and) Ḥājāt was pronounced and he Ḥājāt led the Ḥājāt prayer. Then everybody made their camels kneel down at its place. Then the Ḥājāt was pronounced for the 'Ishā' prayer which the Prophet ﷺ led and no (optional Nawāfil or Ṣalāt etc.) prayer was offered in between the two Ṣalāt (Ishā' and Ḥājāt).

CHAPTER. To wash the face with both hands by a handful of water.

140. Narrated 'Atā’ bin Yasār: Ibn ‘Abbās performed ablution and washed his face (in the following way): He ladled out a handful of water, rinsed his mouth and washed his nose with it by putting in water and then blowing it out. He, then, took another handful (of water) and did like this (gesturing) joining both hands, and washed his face, took another handful of water and washed his right forearm. He again took another handful of water and washed his left forearm, and passed (wet) hands over his head and took another handful of water and poured it over his right foot (up to his ankles) and washed it thoroughly and similarly took another handful of water and washed thoroughly his left foot (up to the ankles) and said, "I saw Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ performing ablution in this way."
4. THE BOOK OF WUDU

(8) CHAPTER. To recite “In the Name of Allah,” during every action and on having sexual relations with one’s wife.

141. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “If anyone of you on having sexual relations with his wife said (and he must say it before starting) ‘In the Name of Allah. O Allah! Protect us from Satan and also protect what You bestow upon us (i.e. the coming offspring) from Satan, and if it is destined that they should have a child then, Satan will never be able to harm that offspring.”

(9) CHAPTER. What to say while going to the lavatory (water closet).

142. Narrated Anas: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ went to answer the call of nature, he used to say, “Allahumma inni a‘udhu bika min al khawatir binti bani Isra’il [i.e., O Allah, I seek refuge with You from devils – males and females (or all offensive and wicked things, evil deeds etc.)].”
(10) CHAPTER. Providing water at lavatories (for washing the private parts after answering the call of nature).

143. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs رضي الله عنهم: Once the Prophet ﷺ entered a lavatory and I placed water for his ablution. He asked, “Who placed it?” He was informed accordingly and so he said, “O Allah! Make him (Ibn ‘Abbâs) a learned scholar in religion (Islam).”

(11) CHAPTER. While urinating or defecating, never face the Qiblah except when you are screened by a building or a wall or something like that.

144. Narrated Abû Ayyûb Al-Anšârî رضي الله عنهم: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If anyone of you goes to an open space for answering the call of nature he should neither face nor turn his back towards the Qiblah; he should either face the east or the west.”

(12) CHAPTER. Defecating while sitting over two bricks.

145. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: People say, “Whenever you sit for answering the call of nature, you should not face the Qiblah or Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem).” I told them, “Once I went up the roof of our house and I saw Allah’s Messenger ﷺ answering the call of nature while sitting on two bricks facing Bait-ul-Maqdis [but there was a screen covering him. (Fath Al-Bâri, Vol.1, page 258)].
146. Narrated 'Aishah: The wives of the Prophet used to go to Al-Manāṣ, a vast open place (near Baqī' at Al-Madīna) to answer the call of nature at night. 'Umar used to say to the Prophet, “Let your wives be veiled,” but Allāh’s Messenger did not do so. One night Sauda bint Zam‘a the wife of the Prophet went out at ‘Isḥā time and she was a tall lady. ‘Umar addressed her and said, “I have recognized you, O Sauda.” He said so, as he desired eagerly that the Verses of Al-Ḥijāb (the observing of veils by the Muslim women) may be revealed. So Allāh revealed the verses of Al-Ḥijāb (a complete body cover excluding the eyes).

147. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet said to his wives, “You are allowed to go out to answer the call of nature.”
(14) CHAPTER. To defecate in houses.

148. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: I went up to the roof of Ḥafṣa’s house for some job and I saw Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ answering the call of nature facing Shām (Syria, Jordan, Palestine and Lebanon regarded as one country) with his back towards the Qiblah. (See Hadith No.145).

149. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: Once I went up the roof of our house and saw Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ answering the call of nature while sitting over two bricks facing Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem). (See Hadith No.145).

(15) CHAPTER. To wash the private parts with water after answering the call of nature.

150. Narrated Anas bin Mālik رضي الله عنه: Whenever Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went to answer the call of nature, I along with another boy used to accompany him with a tumbler full of water. (Ḥishām commented, “So that he might wash his private parts with it.”)
(16) CHAPTER. Getting water carried by somebody else for purification (washing one’s private parts).

And Abu Ad-Darda’ said (to the people of Iraq), “Is not the man whose nick-names are Ṣāḥib An-Na’lān, Ṣāḥib At-Tahūr and Ṣāḥib Al-Wīsād (‘Abdullāh bin Mas‘ūd) amongst you?” ['Abdullāh bin Mas‘ūd used to carry the Na’lān (shoes) and Tahūr (water for purification and ablution) and Wīsād (carpet) for the Prophet ﷺ, so he was called by those names].

151. Narrated Anas: Whenever Allah’s Messenger ﷺ went to answer the call of nature, I along with another boy from us used to go behind him with a tumbler full of water.

(17) CHAPTER. To carry an ‘Anaza (spear-headed stick) along with the water for washing the private parts after answering the call of nature.

152. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Whenever Allah’s Messenger ﷺ went to answer the call of nature, I along with another boy used to carry a tumbler full of water (for cleaning the private parts) and an ‘Anaza (spear-headed stick).
(18) CHAPTER. It is forbidden to clean the private parts with the right hand.

153. Narrated Abū Qatādah: Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, “Whenever anyone of you drinks water, he should not breathe in the drinking utensil, and whenever anyone of you goes to a lavatory, he should neither touch his penis with his right hand nor clean his private parts with his right hand.”

(19) CHAPTER. While passing urine one should not hold his penis with his right hand.

154. Narrated Abū Qatādah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whenever anyone of you urinates, he should neither hold his penis with his right hand nor clean his private parts with his right hand. (And while drinking) one should not breathe in the drinking utensil.”

(20) CHAPTER. To clean the private parts with stones.

155. Narrated Abū Hurairah: I followed the Prophet ﷺ while he was going out to answer the call of nature. He used not to look this way or that. So, when I approached near him he said to me, “Fetch me some stones for cleaning the privates parts (or said something similar), and do not bring a bone or a piece of dung(1).” So I brought the stones in the corner of my garment and placed

---

(1) (H.155) The Arabic word ṭa'aḍh means the dung of mules, horses, or donkeys only, but the camel’s dung is called Bar’ in Arabic and the cow’s dung in Arabic is called Khithi.
them by his side and I then went away from him. When he finished (from answering the call of nature) he used them.

(21) CHAPTER. Do not clean the private parts with dung.

156. Narrated 'Abdullah رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ went out to answer the call of nature and asked me to bring three stones. I found two stones and searched for the third but could not find it. So, I took a dried piece of dung and brought it to him. He took the two stones and threw away the dung and said, “This is Rikṣun (a degenerative or a filthy thing).”

(22) CHAPTER. The washing of the body parts (i.e., the parts which are washed in ablution) once only while performing ablution.

157. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ performed ablution by washing the body parts only once.

(23) CHAPTER. The washing of the body parts twice while performing ablution.
158. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid: The Prophet performed ablution by washing the body parts twice.

159. Narrated Humrān, the slave of ‘Uthmān: I saw ‘Uthmān bin ‘Affān asking for a tumbler of water (and when it was brought), he poured water over his hands and washed them thrice and then put his right hand in the water container and rinsed his mouth, washed his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out. Then he washed his face and forearms up to the elbows thrice, passed his (wet) hands over his head and washed his feet up to the ankles thrice. Then he said, “Allāh’s Messenger said, ‘If anyone performs ablution like that of mine and offers a two Rakʿā ʿṢalāt (prayer) during which he does not think of anything else then his past sins will be forgiven.’”

160. Narrated Humrān: When ‘Uthmān performed the ablution, he said, “I am going to tell you a Hadīth which I would not have told you except for (had I not been compelled by) a certain Holy Verse. I heard the Prophet saying, ‘If a man performs ablution
perfectly and then offers the compulsory congregational Salàt (prayer), Allah will forgive his sins committed between that (prayer) and the (next) prayer till he offers it.’” The subnarrator ‘Urwa said: This Verse is: “Verily, those who conceal the clear proofs and evidences and the guidance which We have sent down…” (V.2:159).

(25) CHAPTER. The cleaning of the nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out during ablution.

161. Narrated Abú Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever performs ablution should clean his nose with water by putting the water in it and then blowing it out, and whoever cleans his private parts with stones should do it with odd number of stones.”

(26) CHAPTER. To clean the private parts with odd number of stones.

162. Narrated Abú Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If anyone of you performs ablution he should put water in his nose and then blow it out, and whoever cleans his private parts with stones should do so with odd numbers. And whoever wakes up from his sleep should wash his hands before putting them in the water for ablution because nobody knows where his hands were during sleep.”
(27) CHAPTER. Washing both feet, and it is not sufficient to pass wet hands over the feet.

163. Narrated ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Amr Li: The Prophet remained behind us on a journey. He joined us while we were performing ablution for the ‘Asr prayer which was over-due and we were just passing (wet) hands over our feet (not washing them thoroughly) so he addressed us in a loud voice saying twice or thrice, “Save your heels from the fire.”

(28) CHAPTER. To rinse the mouth with water while performing ablution.

This statement has come from the Prophet on the authority of Ibn ‘Abbãs and ‘Abdullãh bin Zaid.

164. Narrated Humrân, the freed slave of ‘Uthmãn bin ‘Affãn: I saw ‘Uthmãn bin ‘Affãn asking (for a tumbler of water) to perform ablution (and when it was brought), he poured water from it over his hands and washed them thrice and then put his right hand in the water container and rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out. Then he washed his face thrice and (then) forearms up to the elbows thrice, then passed his (wet) hands over his head, and then washed each foot thrice. After that ‘Uthmãn said, “I saw the Prophet performing ablution like this of mine, and he said, ‘If anyone performs ablution like that of mine and offers a two Rakãa prayer during which he does not think of anything else then his past sins will be forgiven’.”
(29) CHAPTER. The washing of heels during ablution.
Whenever Ibn Sirin performed ablution he used to wash the place that was under the ring.

165. Narrated Muhammad bin Ziyad: I heard Abu Hurairah saying as he passed by us while the people were performing ablution from a utensil containing water, “Perform ablution perfectly and thoroughly for Abul-Qasim (the Prophet) said, ‘Save your heels from the Hell-fire.’”

(30) CHAPTER. Washing the feet, when one is wearing shoes; and it is not sufficient for one to pass a wet hand over the shoes (but one should take off the shoes and wash one’s feet).

166. Narrated Ubaid bin Juraij: I asked Abdullah bin ‘Umar: “O Abu ‘Abdur Rabbân! I saw you doing four things which I never saw being done by anyone of your companions?” Abdullah bin ‘Umar said, “What are those, O Ibn Juraij?” I said, “I never saw you touching any corner (of the Ka’bah) except these (two) facing south (Yemen), and I saw you wearing shoes made of tanned leather and dyeing your hair with Hinnâ; (a kind of dye). I also noticed that whenever you were in Makkah, the people assume Ihlál on seeing the new moon crescent (1st of Dhul-Hijja) while you did not assume the Ihlál (Ihrám is also called Ihlál which means ‘Loud calling’ because a Muhárim has to recite Talbiya aloud when assuming the state of IHRÁM) — till the 8th of
Dhul-Hijja (Day of Tarwiya).

‘Abdullāh replied, “Regarding the corners (of Makkah), I never saw Allāh’s Messenger touching except those facing south (Yemen) and regarding the tanned leather shoes, no doubt I saw Allāh’s Messenger wearing non-hairy shoes, and he used to perform ablution while wearing the shoes (i.e. wash his feet and then put on the shoes). So I love to wear similar shoes. And about the dyeing of hair with Ḥimmā; no doubt I saw Allāh’s Messenger dyeing his hair with it and that is why I like to dye (my hair with it). Regarding Ḥijāl, I did not see Allāh’s Messenger assuming Ḥijāl till he set out for Hajj.”

(31) CHAPTER. While performing ablution or taking a bath one should start from the right side of the body.

167. Narrated Umm-‘Atiyyā that the Prophet at the time of washing his deceased daughter had said to them, “Start from the right side beginning with those parts which are washed in ablution.”

168. Narrated ‘Āshāh: The Prophet used to like to start from the right side on wearing shoes, combing his hair and cleaning or washing himself and on doing anything else.
(32) CHAPTER. To look for water (for ablution) when the time for the prayer is due.

‘Aishah رضي الله عنها said: Once the Fajr prayer was due and water was searched for (for ablution) but it was not found. Thereupon the Divine Revelation of Tayammum was revealed. (Tayammum means to put or strike lightly on clean earth with one’s hands and then pass the palm of each on the back of the other, blow off the dust and then pass them on the face).

169. Narrated Anas bin Mālik رضي الله عنـه: I saw Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ when the ‘Asr prayer was due and the people searched for water to perform ablution but they could not find it. Later on (a vessel full of) water for ablution was brought to Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ. He put his hand in that vessel and ordered the people to perform ablution from it. I saw the water springing out from underneath his fingers till all of them performed the ablution (it was one of the miracles of the Prophet ﷺ).

(33) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the water with which human hair has been washed.

‘Atâ’ رضي الله عنه saw no harm in making threads and ropes out of the human hair. The utilization of the thing which is licked or eaten by a dog, and the passing of dogs through the mosque. Az-Zuhri said. “It is permissible for one to perform ablution with water which has been licked by a dog provided that there is no water except that.” (See Hadîth No.172). Suфиـان said, “This is the true religious
verdict: Allâh said: And you find no water then perform Tayammum.” (V.4:43).

170. Narrated Ibn Sirîn: I said to ‘Abîda, “I have some of the hair of the Prophet which I got from Anas or from his family.” ‘Abîda replied. “No doubt if I had a single hair of that it would have been dearer to me than the whole world and whatever is in it.”

171. Narrated Anas: When Allâh’s Messenger got his head shaved, Abu Talha was the first to take some of his hair.

CHAPTER. If a dog drinks from the utensil of any one of you then it is essential to wash it seven times.

172. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allâh’s Messenger said, “If a dog drinks from the utensil of anyone of you it is essential to wash it seven times.”

173. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet said, “A man saw a dog eating mud from (the severity of) thirst. So, that man took a shoe (and filled it) with water and kept on pouring the water for the dog till... [continued in next page]
it quenched its thirst. So Allāh approved of his deed and made him to enter Paradise.”

174. Narrated Ḥamza bin ʿAbdullāh : My father said, “During the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, the dogs used to urinate, and pass through the mosque (come and go), nevertheless they never used to sprinkle water on it (i.e. urine of the dog.)”

175. Narrated ʿAdi bin Ḥatim: I asked the Prophet ﷺ (about the hunting dogs) and he replied, “If you let loose (with Allāh’s Name) your tamed dog after a game and it hunts it, you may eat it, but if the dog eats of (that game) then do not eat it because the dog has hunted it for itself.” I further said, “Sometimes I send my dog for hunting and find another dog with it.”

He said, “Do not eat the game for you have mentioned Allāh’s Name only on sending your dog and you did not mentioned Allāh’s Name on the other dog.”

(34) CHAPTER. Whosoever considers not to repeat ablution except if something is discharged or passed from either exit (front or back private parts)

As is mentioned in the Statement of
Allāh ṭa’līna: “…Or any of you comes from answering the call of nature…” (V.5:6). And ‘Aṭā’ said, “If a worm comes out of one’s anus or if a drop of discharge equal to the size of a louse comes out of one’s penis (then it is essential to repeat the ablution.)” Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh said, “If one laughs in Ṣalāt (prayer), he must repeat his Ṣalāt and not the ablution.” Al-Ḥasan said, “If someone takes out (cut) some of his hair, cuts his nails or removes his leather socks, he is not to repeat his ablution.” Abū Hurairah said, “It is not necessary to repeat ablution except on Ḥadāth.” And Jābir stated, “The Prophet ﷺ was in the battle of Dhatt ur-Riqā‘ and a person was shot with an arrow and he bled profusely, but he bowed and prostrated and continued his Ṣalāt.” Al-Ḥasan said, “The Muslims used to offer Ṣalāt regularly with their wounds.” Ṭawūs, Muḥammad bin ‘Alī, ‘Aṭā and the people of Hijāz say, “Bleeding does not necessitate the repetition of ablution.” Ibn ‘Umar squeezed one of his pimples and blood came out but he did not repeat his ablution. Ibn Abī Aūfa spat out blood but he carried on with his Ṣalāt. Ibn ‘Umar and Al-Ḥasan said, “If any one lets his blood out then it is necessary for him to wash the cut area only.”

176. Narrated Abū Hurairah ﷺ: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “A person is considered in Ṣalāt (prayer) as long as he is waiting for the prayer in the mosque and as long as he does not do Ḥadāth.” A non-Arab man asked, “O Abū Hurairah! What is Ḥadāth?” I replied, “It is the passing of wind (from the anus) (that is one of the types of Ḥadāth).”
177. Narrated ‘Abbâd bin Tamîm: My uncle said, the Prophet ﷺ said, “One should not leave (his prayer) unless he hears sound or smells something.”

178. Narrated ‘Ali: I used to get emotional urethral discharges frequently and felt shy to ask Allah’s Messenger ﷺ about it. So I requested Al-Miqdâd bin Al-Aswad to ask (the Prophet ﷺ) about it. Al-Miqdâd asked him and he replied, “One has to perform ablution (after it).”

179. Narrated Zaid bin Khälid: I asked ‘Uthmân bin ‘Affân ﷺ about a person who engaged in intercourse but did not discharge. ‘Uthmân replied, “He should perform ablution like the one for an ordinary Salāt (prayer), but he must wash his penis.” ‘Uthmân added, “I heard it from Allah’s Messenger ﷺ.” I asked ‘Ali, Az-Zubâir, Ṭalĥa and Ubâi bin Ka‘b رضي الله عنهم about it and they, too, gave the same reply. (This order was cancelled later on and taking a bath became compulsory for such cases).
180. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī:

Allāh’s Messenger Ḥ️ sent for an Ansārī man who came with water dropping from his head. The Prophet Ḥ️ said, “Perhaps we have forced you to hurry up, haven’t we?” The Ansārī replied, “Yes.” Allāh’s Messenger Ḥ️ further said, “If you are forced to hurry up (during intercourse) or you do not discharge then you should perform ablution.”

(This order was cancelled later on, i.e. one has to take a bath).

(35) CHAPTER. (What is said regarding) a man who helps his companion to perform ablution (by pouring water for him).

181. Narrated Usāma bin Zaid:

“When Allāh’s Messenger Ḥ️ departed from ‘Arafāt, he turned towards a mountain path where he answered the call of nature. (After he had finished) I poured water and he performed ablution and then I said to him, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Will you offer Salāt (prayer)?” He replied, “The Musalla (place of the prayer) is ahead of you (in Al-Muzdalifa).”

182. Narrated Al-Mughira bin Shu‘ba:

I was in the company of Allāh’s Messenger Ḥ️ on one of the journeys and he went out to answer the call of nature (and after he finished) I poured water and he performed ablution; he washed his face,
forearms and passed his (wet) hand over his head and over the two Khuffain (two leather socks).

(36) CHAPTER. The recitation of Qur’an or doing other invocations etc. after Hadath.

And Mansūr quoted İbrahim, “There is no harm in reciting anything in bathrooms (without closets) and in writing letters without ablution.” And Hammād quoted from İbrahim, “Greet them if they are wearing their Izār (waist covers) otherwise do not greet them.”

183.Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās that he stayed overnight in the house of Maimūna, the wife of the Prophet, his aunt. He added: I lay on the cushion transversally in its breadthwise direction while Allah’s Messenger and his wife lay in its lengthwise direction. Allah’s Messenger slept till the middle of the night, either a bit before or a bit after it and then woke up, rubbing the traces of sleep off his face with his hands. He then recited the last ten Verses of Sūrat Āl-İmān, got up and went to a hanging water-skin. He then performed the ablution from it and it was a perfect ablution, and then stood up to offer Salāt (prayer). I, too, got up and did as the Prophet had done. Then I went and stood by his side (on his left side). He placed his
right hand on my head and caught my right ear and twisted it (pulled me, and made me to stand by his right side). He prayed two Rakā', then two Rakā', and then two Rakā', and then two Rakā', and then two Rakā' and then two Rakā' (separately six times), and finally one Rakā' (the Witr). Then he lay down again in the bed till the Mu'ādhdhin came to him whereupon the Prophet got up, offered a light two Rakā' prayer and went out and led the Fajr prayer.

(37) CHAPTER. Whoever does not repeat ablution except after falling into deep sleep — losing consciousness completely.

184. Narrated Asmā’ bint Abī Bakr رضي الله عنها: I came to ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها, the wife of the Prophet ∘ during the solar eclipse. The people were standing and offering the Salāt (prayer) and she was also praying. I asked her, “What is wrong with the people?” She beckoned with her hand towards the sky and said, “Subhān Allāh.”(1) I asked her, “Is there a sign?” She pointed out, “Yes.” So, I too, stood for the Salāt till I fell unconscious and later on I poured water on my head. After the Salāt, Allāh’s Messenger praised and glorified Allāh تعالى and said, “Just now I have seen something which I never saw before at this place of mine, including Paradise and Hell. And it has been revealed to me that you will be put to trials in your graves and these trials will be like the trials of Ad-Dajjāl, or nearly like it (the

(1) (H.184) See glossary.
subnarrator is not sure of what Asmā' said). Angels will come to every one of you and ask, ‘What do you know about this man?’ A believer will reply, ‘He is Muhammad, Allāh’s Messenger (ﷺ), and he came to us with self-evident truth and guidance. So we accepted his teaching, believed and followed him.’ Then the angels will say to him to sleep in peace as they have come to know that he was a believer. On the other hand a hypocrite or a doubtful person will reply, ‘I do not know but heard the people saying something and so I said the same’."

(38) CHAPTER. To pass wet hands over the whole head during ablution.

As is referred to by the Statement of Allāh as referred to by the Statement of Allāh as referred to by the Statement of Allāh (V.5:6): “…Rub (by passing wet hands over) your heads…” And Ibn Al-Musaiyab said, “This order is both for men and women.” And Mālik was asked, “Is the passing of a wet hand over a part of the head sufficient (and that is not sufficient)?” He took his verdict from the narration of ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid which follows.

185. Narrated Yaḥyā Al-Māzīnī: A person asked ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid who was the grandfather of ‘Amr bin Yaḥyā, “Can you show me how Allāh’s Messenger (ﷺ) used to perform ablution?” ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid replied in the affirmative and asked for
water. He poured it on his hands and washed them twice, then he rinsed his mouth thrice and washed his nose with water thrice by putting water in it and blowing it out. He washed his face thrice and after that he washed his forearms up to the elbow twice and then passed his wet hands over his head from its front to its back and vice versa (beginning from the front and taking them to the back of his head up to the nape of the neck and then brought them to the front again from where he had started) and then washed his feet (up to the ankles).

(39) CHAPTER. The washing of feet up to the ankles.


‘Abdullah bin Zaid asked for earthen ware pot containing water and performed ablution like that of the Prophet ﷺ in front of them. He poured water from the pot over his hand and washed his hands thrice and then he put his hands in the pot and rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out with three handfuls of water. Again he put his hand in the water and washed his face thrice and washed his forearms up to the elbows twice; and then put his hands in the water and then passed them over his head by bringing them to the front and then to the rear of the head once, and then he washed his feet up to the ankles.
(40) CHAPTER. The using of the remaining water after ablution.

And Jarîr bin 'Abdullah ordered the members of his family to perform ablution with the water in which he had put his Siwâk (a piece of a root of a tree called Al-Arâk used as a tooth-brush).

187. Narrated Abû Juhaifa رضي الله عنه: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ came to us at noon and water for ablution was brought to him. After he had performed ablution, the remaining water was taken by the people and they started smearing their bodies with it (as a blessed thing). The Prophet ﷺ offered two Rak‘â of the Zuhr prayer and then two Rak‘â of the ‘Asr prayer while an ‘Anaza (spear-headed stick) was there (as a Sutra) in front of him.

188. Abû Mûsâ said: The Prophet ﷺ asked for a tumbler containing water and washed both his hands and face in it and then threw a mouthful of water in the tumbler and said to both of us (Abû Mûsâ and Bilâl), “Drink from the tumbler and pour some of its water on your faces and chests.”

189. Narrated Ibn Shihâb: Maḥmûd bin Ar-Râbi’ رضي الله عنه who was the person on whose face the Prophet ﷺ had ejected a mouthful of water from his family’s well while he was a boy, and ‘Urwa (on the authority of Al-Miswar and others) who testified each other, said, “Whenever the Prophet ﷺ performed ablution, his Companions were nearly fighting for the remains of that water.”
CHAPTER.

190. Narrated As-Šā‘ib bin Yazīd: رضي الله عنَّه My aunt took me to the Prophet ﷺ and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! This son of my sister has got a disease in his legs.” So he ﷺ passed his hands on my head and prayed for Allah’s Blessings for me; then he performed ablution and I drank from the remaining water. I stood behind him and saw the seal of Prophethood between his shoulders, and it was like the Zirīl-Hajala” (means the button of a small tent, but some said ‘egg of a partridge.’ etc.)

(41) CHAPTER. Rinsing one’s mouth and putting water in one’s nose and cleaning it by blowing the water out with a single handful of water.

191. Narrated ‘Amr bin Yahyā on the authority of his father: ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid رضي الله عنه poured water on his hands from a utensil containing water and washed them and, then, with one handful of water he rinsed his mouth and cleaned his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out. He repeated it thrice. He, then, washed his hands and forearms up to the elbows twice and passed (wet) hands over his head, both forwards and backwards, and washed his feet up to the ankles and said, “Thus was the ablution of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ.”
(42) CHAPTER. The passing of wet hands over the head once only (while performing ablution).

192. Narrated 'Amr bin Yahya: My father said, “I saw 'Amr bin Abī Hasan asking 'Abdullāh bin Zaid about the ablution of the Prophet ﷺ. 'Abdullāh bin Zaid asked for an earthenware pot containing water and performed ablution in front of them. He poured water over his hands and washed them thrice. Then he put his (right) hand in the pot and rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and, then, blowing it out thrice with three handfuls of water. Again he put his hand in the water and washed his face thrice. After that he put his hand in the pot and washed his forearms up to the elbows twice, and then again put his hand in the water and passed (wet) hands over his head by bringing them from the front to the back (and returned them) and once more he put his hand in the pot and washed his feet (up to the ankles.)”

Narrated Wuhaib: that he (the Prophet ﷺ as in narration 191 above) had passed his wet hands on the head once only.

(43) CHAPTER. The performance of ablution by a man along with his wife. The utilization of water remaining after a woman has performed ablution. 'Umar performed ablution with warm water and with water brought from the house of a Christian woman.

193. And narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar, “During the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ men and women used to perform ablution together.”
(44) CHAPTER. The sprinkling of remaining water after performing ablution on an unconscious person by the Prophet ﷺ.

194. Narrated Jābir ibn Zayd: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ came to visit me while I was sick and unconscious. He performed ablution and sprinkled the remaining water on me and I became conscious and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! To whom will my inheritance go as I have neither ascendents nor descendants?” Then the Divine Verses regarding Farā’id (inheritance) were revealed.

(45) CHAPTER. To take a bath or perform ablution from a Mikhḍab (utensil), a tumbler, or a wooden or stone pot.

195. Narrated Anas ibn Mâlik: It was the time for Salāt (prayer), and those whose houses were near got up and went to their people (to perform ablution), and there remained some people (sitting). Then a painted stone pot (Mikhḍab) containing water was brought to Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ. The pot was small, not broad enough for one to spread one’s hand in; yet all the people performed ablution. (The subnarrator said, “We asked Anas, ‘How many persons were you?’ Anas replied, ‘We were eighty or more’”). (It was one of the miracles of Allāh’s Messenger).

196. Narrated Abū Mūsā: Once the Prophet ﷺ asked for a tumbler
containing water. He washed his hands and face in it and also threw a mouthful of water in it.

197. Narrated ‘Abdulläh bin Zaid: Once Allah’s Messenger came to us and we brought out water for him in a brass pot. He performed ablution thus: He washed his face thrice, and his forearms to the elbows twice, then passed his (wet) hands lightly over the head from front to rear and brought them to front again and washed his feet (up to the ankles).

198. Narrated ‘Aishah: When the ailment of the Prophet aggravated and his disease became worse, he asked his wives to permit him to be nursed (treated) in my house. So they gave him the permission. Then the Prophet came (to my house) with the support of two men, and his legs were dragging on the ground, between ‘Abbãs, and another man.” ‘Ubaid-Ullãh (the subnarrator) said, “I informed ‘Abdullah bin ‘Abbas of what ‘Aishah said, Ibn ‘Abbãs said: ‘Do you know who was the other man?’ I replied in the negative. Ibn ‘Abbãs said, ‘He was ‘Ali (bin Abi Tãlib).’” ‘Aishah further said, “When the Prophet came to my house and his sickness became worse he ordered us to pour seven skins full of water on him, so that he might give some advice to the people. So he was seated in a Mikhdab (brass tub) belonging to Ḥafṣa, the wife of the Prophet.
Then, all of us started pouring water on him from the water-skins till he beckoned to us to stop and that we have done (what he wanted us to do). After that he went out to the people."

(46) CHAPTER. To perform ablution from an earthen-ware pot.

199. Narrated ‘Amr bin Yahya on the authority of his father: My uncle used to perform ablution extravagantly and once he asked ‘Abdullah bin Zaid to tell him how he had seen the Prophet performing ablution. He asked for an earthen-ware pot containing water, and poured water from it on his hands and washed them thrice, and then put his hand in the earthen-ware pot and rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out thrice with one handful of water; he again put his hand in the water and took a handful of water and washed his face thrice, then washed his hands up to the elbows twice, and took water with his hand, and passed it over his head from front to back and then from back to front, and then washed his feet (up to the ankles) and said, “I saw the Prophet performing ablution in that way.”

200. Narrated Thabit: Anas said: “The Prophet asked for water and a tumbler with a broad base and not so deep,
containing a small quantity of water, was brought to him whereby he put his fingers in it.” Anas further said, “I noticed the water springing out from amongst his fingers.” Anas added, “I estimated that the people who performed ablution with it numbered between seventy to eighty.”

(47) CHAPTER. To perform ablution with one Mudd of water. (Mudd is practically 2/3 of a Kilogram):

201. Narrated Anas (رضي الله عنه): The Prophet ﷺ used to take a bath with one Sa’ or up to five Mudd (1 Sa’ = 4 Mudd) of water and used to perform ablution with one Mudd of water.

(48) CHAPTER. To pass wet hands over Khuffain [two leather socks covering the ankles].

202. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar (رضي الله عنه): Sa’d bin Abi Waqqas said, “The Prophet ﷺ passed wet hands over his Khuffain.” ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar (رضي الله عنه) asked ‘Umar about it. ‘Umar replied in the affirmative and added: “Whenever Sa’d narrates a Hadīth from the Prophet ﷺ, there is no need to ask anyone else about it.”
203. Narrated Al-Mughira bin Shu‘ba: Once Allah's Messenger ﷺ went out to answer the call of nature and I followed him with a tumbler containing water, and when he finished, I poured water and he performed ablution and passed wet hands over his Khuffain (two leather socks).

204. Narrated Ja‘far bin ‘Amr bin Umaiya A-d-Ḍamrī: My father said, “I saw the Prophet ﷺ passing wet hands over his Khuffain (two leather socks).”

205. Narrated Ja‘far bin ‘Amr: My father said, “I saw the Prophet ﷺ passing wet hands over his ‘Imāma (turban) and Khuffain (two leather socks).”

(49) CHAPTER. If one puts on (Khuff) just after performing ablution (there is no need to wash one’s feet again in ablution) (24 hours for non-travellers and three days for travellers).

206. Narrated ‘Urwa bin Al-Mughira: My
father said, “Once I was in the company of the Prophet on a journey and I dashed to take off his Khuff. He ordered me to leave them as he had put them on after performing ablution. So he passed wet hands over them.”

(50) CHAPTER. Not repeating ablution after eating mutton and As-Sawiq.

Abū Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmān ate such food but did not repeat ablution.

207. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Abbās: Allah’s Messenger ate a piece of cooked mutton from the shoulder region and offered Salāt (prayer) without repeating ablution.

208. Narrated Ja’far bin Amr bin Umaiyya: My father said, “I saw Allah’s Messenger taking a piece of (cooked) mutton from shoulder region and then he was called for Salāt (prayer). He put his knife down and offered Salāt without repeating ablution.”

(51) CHAPTER. Rinsing one’s mouth (with water) after eating As-Sawiq without repeating ablution.

209. Narrated Suwaid bin Al-Nu‘mān: Allah’s Messenger...
In the year of the conquest of Khaibar, I went with Allâh's Messenger till we reached Sahba', a place near Khaibar, where Allâh's Messenger offered the ‘Asr prayer and asked for food. Nothing but As-Sawiq was brought. He ordered it to be moistened with water. He and all of us ate it and the Prophet got up for Maghrib (prayer), rinsed his mouth with water and we did the same, and he then offered Salât (prayer) without repeating the ablution.

210. Narrated Maimûna: The Prophet ate (a piece of) mutton from the shoulder region and then offered Salât (prayer) without repeating the ablution.

(52) CHAPTER. Whether to rinse the mouth after drinking milk.

211. Narrated Ibn `Abbas: Allâh's Messenger drank milk, rinsed his mouth and said, “It has fat.”

(53) CHAPTER. Ablution after sleep. And whoever considers it unnecessary to repeat
ablation after dozing once or twice or after nodding once in slumber.

212. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If anyone of you feels drowsy while offering Salāt (prayer) he should go to bed (sleep) till his slumber is over, because in praying while drowsy, one does not know whether one is asking for forgiveness or for a bad thing for oneself.”

213. Narrated Anas ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “If anyone of you feels drowsy while offering Salāt (prayer), he should sleep till he understands what he is saying (reciting).”

(54) CHAPTER. To perform ablation even on having no Hadath.

214. Narrated ‘Amr bin ‘Amir: Anas رضي الله عنها said, “The Prophet ﷺ used to perform ablution for every Salāt (prayer).” I asked Anas, “What you used to do?” Anas replied, “We used to pray with the same ablution until we break it with Hadath.”

215. Narrated Suwaid bin Nu’man رضي الله عنها: In the year of the conquest of Khaibar I went with Allah’s Messenger ﷺ till we reached Sahbā where Allah’s Messenger ﷺ led the ‘Aṣr prayer and asked for food.
Nothing but Sawīq was brought and we ate it and drank (water). The Prophet got up for Maghrib (prayer), rinsed his mouth with water and then led the prayer without repeating the ablution.

(55) CHAPTER. One of the major sins is not to protect oneself (one’s clothes and body) from one’s urine (i.e. from being soiled with it).

216. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: Once the Prophet, while passing through one of the Heyān (gardens or graveyards) of Al-Madina or Makkah heard the voices of two persons who were being tortured in their graves. The Prophet said, “These two persons are being tortured not for a major sin (to avoid).” The Prophet then added, “Yes! (they are being tortured for a major sin). Indeed, one of them never saved himself from being soiled with his urine while the other used to go about with calumnies (to make enmity between friends).” The Prophet then asked for a green branch (of a date-palm tree), broke it into two pieces and put one on each grave. On being asked why he had done so, he replied, “I hope that their torture might be lessened, till these get dried.”

(56) CHAPTER. What is said regarding washing out urine.

(1) (H.216) This action was a kind of invocation on the part of the Prophet for the deceased persons (Fath Al-Bān).
And the Prophet remarked about the person in the grave that he never saved himself from being soiled with his urine. And the Prophet mentioned only the urine of human beings.

217. Narrated Anas bin Malik:
Whenever the Prophet went to answer the call of nature, I used to bring water with which he used to wash his private parts.

CHAPTER

218. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas:
The Prophet once passed by two graves and said, “These two persons are being tortured not for a major sin (to avoid). One of them never saved himself from being soiled with his urine, while the other used to go about with calumnies (to make enmity between friends).” The Prophet then took a green branch (of a date-palm tree), split it into two pieces and fixed one on each grave. They said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Why have you done so?” He replied, “I hope that their punishment might be lessened till these (branches) become dry.” (See the footnote of Hadith 216)
finished urinating in the mosque.

219. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet saw a bedouin urinating in the mosque and told the people not to disturb him. When he finished, the Prophet asked for some water and poured it over (the urine).

(58) CHAPTER. The pouring of water over the urine in the mosque.

220. Narrated Abū Hurairah: A bedouin stood up and started urinating in the mosque. The people caught him but the Prophet ordered them to leave him and to pour a bucket or a tumbler of water over the place where he had passed the urine. The Prophet then said, “You have been sent to make things easy (for the people) and not sent to make things difficult for them.”

221. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet said as above (Hadith No. 220).

CHAPTER. The spilling of water over the place where there is urine.

Narrated Anas bin Malik: A bedouin came and passed urine in one corner of the mosque. The people shouted at him but the Prophet stopped them till he finished urinating. The Prophet ordered
them to spill a bucket of water over that place and they did so.

(59) CHAPTER. The urine of children.

222. Narrated 'Aishah رضي الله عنها, the Mother of faithful believers: A child was brought to Allah's Messenger ﷺ and it urinated on the garment of the Prophet ﷺ. The Prophet ﷺ asked for water and poured it over the soiled place.

223. Narrated Umm Qais bint Mihsan رضي الله عنها: I brought my young son, who had not started eating (ordinary food) to Allah's Messenger ﷺ, who took him and made him sit on his lap. The child urinated on the garment of the Prophet ﷺ, so he asked for water and sprinkled it over the soiled (area) and did not wash it.

(60) CHAPTER. To pass urine while standing and sitting.

224. Narrated Hudhaifa رضي الله عنه: Once the Prophet ﷺ went to the dumps of some people and passed urine while standing. He then asked for water and so I brought it to him and he performed ablution.
(61) CHAPTER. To urinate beside one’s companion while screened by a wall.

225. Narrated Hudhaifa: The Prophet and I walked till we reached the dumps of some people. He stood, as any one of you stands, behind a wall and urinated. I went away, but he beckoned me (to come). So I approached him and stood near his back till he finished.

(62) CHAPTER. To urinate near the dumps of some people.

226. Narrated Abu Wa’il: Abu Musa Al-Ash’ari used to lay great stress on the question of urination and he used to say, “If anyone from Banî Isrâîl happened to soil his clothes with urine, he used to cut that portion away.” Hearing that, Hudhaifa said to Abu Wa’il, “I wish he (Abu Musa) didn’t lay great stress on that matter.” Hudhaifa added, “Allâh’s Messenger went to the dumps of some people and urinated while standing.”

(63) CHAPTER. The washing out of blood.

227. Narrated Asma’ : A woman came to the Prophet and said, “If anyone of us gets menses in her clothes then what should she do?” He replied, “She should (take hold of the soiled place), rub it and put it in the water and rub it in order to remove the traces of blood and then pour water over it. Then she can offer Salât (prayer) in it.”

228. Narrated Faţima bint Abî Hubaish came to the Prophet and
said, "O Allâh’s Messenger! I get persistent bleeding (from the uterus) and do not become clean. Shall I give up my Salât (prayer)"
Allâh’s Messenger replied, "No, because it is from a blood vessel and not the menses. So when your real menses begin give up your Salât and when it has finished, wash off the blood (take a bath) and offer your Salât."

Hishâm (the subnarrator) said that his father added: (the Prophet told her):
"Perform ablution for every Salât (prayer) till the time of the next period comes."

(64) CHAPTER. The washing out of semen with water and rubbing it off (when it is dry) and the washing out of what comes out of women (i.e. discharge).

229. Narrated ʿAishah: I used to wash the traces of Janâba (semen) from the clothes of the Prophet and he used to go for Salât (prayers) while traces of water were still on it (water spots were still visible).

230. Narrated Sulaimân bin Yasâr: I asked ʿAishah about the clothes soiled with semen. She replied, “I used to wash it off the clothes of Allâh’s Messenger and he would go for the Salât (prayer) while water spots were still visible.”
(65) CHAPTER. If the (traces of) Janaba (semen) or other spots are not removed completely on washing.

231. Narrated ‘Amr bin Maimun: I heard Sulaiman bin Yasir talking about the clothes soiled with semen. He said: ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها said, “I used to wash it off the clothes of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and he would go for the Salat (prayers) while water spots were still visible on them.”

232. Narrated ‘Aishah ﷺ رضي الله عنها: I used to wash the semen off the clothes of the Prophet ﷺ and even then I used to notice one or more spots on them.

(66) CHAPTER. (What is said) about the urine of camels, sheep and other animals and about their folds.

Abu Musa offered prayer at Darr-il-Barid (post office) and there was animal dung in it though a vast strip of land was near it. Abu Musa said: Both these places are similar (for offering of the prayers).

233. Narrated Abu Qilaba: Anas ﷺ رضي الله عنه said, “Some people of ‘Ukl or ‘Uraina tribe came to Al-Madina and its climate did not suit them. So the Prophet ﷺ ordered them to go to the herd of (milch) camels and...
to drink their milk and urine (as a medicine). So they went as directed and after they became healthy, they killed the shepherd of the Prophetﷺ and drove away all the camels. The news reached the Prophetﷺ early in the morning and he sent (men) in their pursuit and they were captured and brought at noon. Heﷺ then ordered to cut their hands and feet (and it was done), and their eyes were branded with heated pieces of iron. They were put in Al-Ḥarra and when they asked for water, no water was given to them.”

Abū Qilāba added, “Those people committed theft, murder, became disbelievers after embracing Islām (Murtadin) and fought against Allāh and His Messengerﷺ.”

234. Narrated Anas S.: Prior to the construction of the mosque, the Prophetﷺ offered Salāt (prayers) at sheep-folds.

(67) CHAPTER. An-Najasat(1) (impure and filthy things) which fall in cooking butter (ghee — which is obtained by evaporating moisture from butter) and water.

Az-Zuhri said, “There is no harm in using water if its taste, odour or colour is not changed.” Ḥammād said, “There is no harm

(1) (Ch.67) An-Najasat (impurity or impure things) is either: (a) physical or (b) spiritual.
   a) Physical as regards urine, stool and sexual discharges etc.
   b) Spiritual as regards not having belief in the Oneness of Allāh and His Messenger Muḥammadﷺ e.g., Al-Muşhrīkūn*. [See (V.9:28) the Qur’ān].
   * Al-Muşhrīkūn (polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allāh and in His Messenger Muḥammadﷺ).
if the feathers of dead birds fell in it.” About
the bones of dead animals like an elephant,
Az-Zuhri said, “I met some of the old
learned religious men who were using them
(bones) as combs and as containers for
ooling, etc., and they found no harm in
that.” Ibn Sirin and Ibrahim said, “There is
no harm in the trade of ivory.”

235. Narrated Maimuna: Allah’s Messenger was asked regarding
ghee (cooking butter) in which a mouse had
fallen. He said, “Take out the mouse and
throw away the ghee around it and use the
rest.”

236. Narrated Maimuna: The
Prophet was asked regarding ghee in
which a mouse had fallen. He said, “Take
out the mouse and throw away the ghee
around it (and use the rest.)”

237. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet said, “A wound which a
Muslim receives in Allah’s Cause will appear
on the Day of Resurrection as it was at the
time of infliction; blood will be flowing from
the wound and its colour will be that of the
blood but will smell like musk (perfume)."

(68) CHAPTER. Urinating in stagnant water.

238. Narrated Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “We (Muslims)
are the last (people to come in the world) but
(will be) the foremost (on the Day of
Resurrection).”

239. The same narrator told that the
Prophet ﷺ had said, “You should not pass
urine in stagnant water which is not flowing
then (you may need to) wash in it.”

(69) CHAPTER. If a dead body or a polluted
thing is put on the back of a person offering
Ṣalāt (prayer), his Ṣalāt will not be annulled
(rejected by Allah).

In prayer Ibn ‘Umar used to take off his
clothes whenever he saw blood on them and
used to continue his prayer. Ibn Al-
Musaiyyab and Ash-Sha‘bī said, “Whenever
a person offers his Ṣalāt (prayers) while
wearing clothes stained with blood or
Janāba or offers Ṣalāt facing in a direction
other than the Qiblah (un-intentionally) or
with Tayammum and finds water before the
time of that Ṣalāt is over, he has not to
repeat his Ṣalāt in any of the above-
mentioned cases.”
240. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Mas‘ūd: Once the Prophet was offering Salāt (prayers) near the Ka‘bah. Abū Jahl was sitting with some of his companions. Some of them said to the others, “Who amongst you will bring the abdominal contents (intestines, etc.) of a camel of Bani so-and-so and put it on the back of Muḥammad, when he prostrates?” The most wretched of them (Uqba bin Abī Mu‘āj) got up and brought it. He waited till the Prophet prostrated and then placed it on his back between his shoulders. I was watching but could not do anything. I wished I had some people with me to hold out against them. They started laughing and falling on one another. Allāh’s Messenger was in prostration and he did not lift his head up till Fāṭima (Prophet’s daughter) came and threw that (camel’s abdominal contents) away from his back. He raised his head and said thrice, “O Allāh! Destroy the (infidels of) Quraish.”

So, it was hard for Abū Jahl and his companions when the Prophet invoked Allāh against them as they had a conviction that the prayers and invocations were accepted in this city (Makkah). The Prophet said, “O Allāh! Destroy Abū Jahl, ‘Utba bin Rabī‘a, Shaiba bin Rabī‘a, Al-Walīd bin ‘Utba, Umaiyya bin Khalaf, and ‘Uqba bin Abī Mu‘āj (and he mentioned the seventh whose name I cannot recall). By Allāh in Whose Hands my life is, I saw the dead bodies of those persons who were counted by Allāh’s Messenger in the Qalīb (one of the wells) of Badr.”
(70) CHAPTER. Spitting or blowing out the nose or doing similar action in one’s own garment.

Narrated Miswar bin Makhrma and Marwan: Allah’s Messenger set out at the time of Al-Hudaibiya (treaty), and mentioned the rest of Hadith and when Allah’s Messenger spitted, the spittle would fall in the hand of one them (the Prophet’s Companions) who would rub it on his face and skin.


(71) CHAPTER. It is unlawful to perform ablution with Nabidh (water in which dates or grapes etc. are soaked and is not yet fermented) or with any other intoxicant.

Hasan and Abul-‘Aliya disliked it. ‘Ata’ said: I prefer to do Tayammum instead of doing ablution with milk or Nabidh.
242.Narrated 'Aishah : The Prophet said, "All drinks that produce intoxication are *Harām* (prohibited) to drink.

(72) CHAPTER. Washing blood by a woman off her father's face.

Abul-'Aliya said: Rub my leg as it is aching.

243. Narrated Abū Ḥāzim: Sahl bin Sa'd Aṣ-Ṣā'īḍī was asked by the people, "With what was the wound of the Prophet treated?" Sahl replied, "None remains among the people living who knows that better than I. 'Alī used to bring water in his shield and Fāṭima used to wash the blood off his face. Then straw mat was burnt and the wound was filled with it (i.e. its ashes)."

(73) CHAPTER. *Siwāk* (to clean the teeth with *Siwāk* which is a tooth-brush in the form of a pencil from the roots of the *Arāk* tree).

Ibn 'Abbās said, "Once I passed the night with the Prophet and saw him cleaning his teeth (with *Siwāk*)."

244. Narrated Abū Burda: My father (Abū Mūsa) said: "I came to the Prophet and saw him carrying a *Siwāk* in his hand and cleaning his teeth, saying, "U' U'," as if he was retching while the *Siwāk* was in his mouth."
245. Narrated Hudhaifa: Whenever the Prophet got up at night, he used to clean his mouth with Siwāk.

(74) CHAPTER. To give Siwāk to the oldest person of the group.

246. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet said, “I dreamt that I was cleaning my teeth with a Siwāk and two persons came to me. One of them was older than the other and I gave the Siwāk to the younger. I was told that I should give it to the older and so I did.”

(75) CHAPTER. The superiority of a person who sleeps with ablution.

247. Narrated Al-Barā’ bin ‘Ázib: The Prophet said to me, “Whenever you go to bed perform ablution like that for Salāt (prayer), lie on your right side and say, Allähumma inni aslamtu wajhi ilaika, wa fauwadtu, amrī ilaika, wa aljā’tu zahri ilaika raghbatan wa rahbatan ilaika. Lā maljā’ wa lā manjā minka illā ilaika. Allähumma āmantu bikitābikal-ladhi anzalta wa bina-biyikal-ladhi arsalta. [O Allāh! I surrender to You and entrust all my affairs to You and depend...
upon You for Your Blessings, both with hope and fear of You. There is no fleeing from You, and there is no place of protection and safety except with You. O Allah! I believe in Your Book (the Qur'an) which You have revealed and in Your Prophet (Muhammad ﷺ) whom You have sent]. Then if you die on that very night, you will die with faith (i.e., on the religion of Islam). Let the aforesaid words be your last utterance (before sleep)."

I repeated it before the Prophet ﷺ and when I reached "Allahumma āmantu bikaṭābikal-ladī anzalā (O Allah I believe in Your Book which You have revealed)." I said, "Wa Rasūlika." The Prophet ﷺ said, "No, (but say): ‘Wa Nabiyikal-ladī arsalta (Your Prophet whom You have sent), instead.”
5 – THE BOOK OF GHUSL

(Washing of the whole body)

The Statement of Allâh the Most High: "...If you are in a state of Janâba (i.e., after a sexual discharge), purify yourselves (bathe your whole body). But if you are ill or on a journey or any of you comes from answering the call of nature, or you have had been in contact with women (i.e. sexual intercourse) and you find no water then perform Tayammum with clean earth and rub therewith your faces and hands. Allâh does not want to place you in difficulty, but He wants to purify you and to complete His Favour to you, that you may be thankful."

(V.5:6) And also the Statement of Allâh the Most High: "O you who believe! Approach not As-Salâ (the prayer) when you are in a drunken state until you know (the meaning) of what you utter, nor when you are in a state of Janâba (i.e., in a state of sexual impurity and not have yet taken a bath) except when travelling on the road (without enough water, or just passing through a mosque), till you wash your whole body. And if you are ill or on a journey or one of you comes after answering the call of nature, or you have been in contact with women (by sexual relations) and you find no water then perform Tayammum with clean earth and rub therewith your faces and hands. Truly Allâh is Ever Oft-Pardoning, Oft-Forgiving."

(1) CHAPTER. The performance of ablution before taking a bath.

248. Narrated ‘Aishah Widow of the Prophet ﷺ: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ took a bath after Janâba, he started by washing his hands and then performed ablution like that for Salâ (prayer). After that he would put his fingers...
in water and move the roots of his hair with them, and then pour three handfuls of water over his head and then pour water all over his body.

249. Narrated Maimūna, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ performed ablution like that for ṣalāt (prayer) but did not wash his feet. He washed off the discharge from his private parts and then poured water over (his body). He withdrew his feet from that place (the place where he took the bath) and then washed them. And that was his way of taking the bath of Janāba.

(2) CHAPTER. Taking a bath by a man along with his wife.

250. Narrated ‘Aishah ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ and I used to take a bath from a single pot called Faraq.

(3) CHAPTER. Taking a bath with a Shā’ of water or so. (One Shā’ = 3 kilograms approx.)
251. Narrated Abū Salama: ‘Āishah’s brother and I went to ‘Āishah and he asked her about the bath of the Prophet ﷺ. She brought a pot containing about a Sā’ of water and took a bath and poured it over her head and at that time there was a screen between her and us.

252. Narrated Abū Ja’far: While I and my father were with Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh, some people were with him and they asked him about taking a bath. He replied, “A Sā’ of water is sufficient for you.” A man said, “A Sā’ is not sufficient for me.” Jābir said, “A Sā’ was sufficient for one who had more hair than you and was better than you (meaning the Prophet ﷺ).” And then Jābir (put on) his garment and led As-Salāt (prayer).

253. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ and Maimūna used to take a bath from a single pot.
(4) CHAPTER. Pouring water thrice on one's head.

254. Narrated Jubair bin Mu't'im: Allah's Messenger said, "As for me, I pour water three times on my head." And he pointed with both his hands.

255. Narrated Jâbir bin 'Abdullâh: The Prophet used to pour water three times on his head.

256. Narrated Abû Ja'far: Jâbir bin 'Abdullâh said to me, "Your cousin (Hasan bin Muhammad bin Al-Hasâfîya) came to me and asked about the bath of Janâba. I replied, 'The Prophet used to take three handfuls of water, pour them on his head and then pour more water over his body.' Al-Hasan said to me, 'I am a hairy man.' I replied, 'The Prophet had more hair than you.'"
(5) CHAPTER. To wash the body (parts) once only.

257. Narrated Maimūna: I placed water for the bath of the Prophet. He washed his hands twice or thrice and then poured water on his left hand and washed his private parts. He rubbed his hands over the earth (and cleaned them), rinsed his mouth, washed his nose by putting water in it and blowing it out, washed his face and both forearms and then poured water over his body. Then he withdrew from that place and washed his feet.

(6) CHAPTER. Starting one’s bath by scenting oneself with Hilāb or some other scent.

258. Narrated ‘Aishah: Whenever the Prophet took the bath of Janāba (sexual relation or wet dream) he asked for the Hilāb or some (other scent). He used to take it in his hand, rub it first over the right side of his head and then over the left and then rub the middle of his head (with both hands).

(7) CHAPTER. To rinse the mouth and to clean the nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out while taking the bath of Janāba.

259. Narrated Maimūna: I placed water for the bath of the Prophet and he poured water with his right hand on his left and washed them. Then he washed his private parts and rubbed his hands on the...
ground (and cleaned them), washed them with water, rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and blowing it out, washed his face and poured water on his head. He withdrew from that place and washed his feet. A piece of cloth (towel) was given to him but he did not use it.

(8) CHAPTER. The rubbing of hands with earth in order to clean them thoroughly.

260. Narrated Maimūna: The Prophet ﷺ took the bath of Janāba. (sexual relation or wet dream). He first cleaned his private parts with his hand, and then rubbed it (that hand) on the wall (earth) and washed it. Then he performed ablution like that for the Salāt (prayer), and after the bath he washed his feet.

(9) CHAPTER. Can a Junub (a person who has yet to take a bath after the sexual act or wet dream) put his hands in a pot (containing water) before washing them if they are not polluted with a dirty thing except Janāba?

Ibn ‘Umar and Al-Bara’ bin ‘Āzib had put their hands in the water without washing them and then they performed ablution. Ibn ‘Umar and Ibn ‘Abbās did not think there was any harm if the water dribbled from the body (while taking a bath) back in the same
container from which the bath of Janāba was taken.

261. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet and I used to take a bath from a single pot of water and our hands used to go in the pot after each other in turn.


263. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet and I used to take a bath from a single pot of water after Janāba.

264. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet and one of his wives used to take a bath from a single pot of water. (Shu’ba added to Anas’s statement “After the Janāba.”)

(10) CHAPTER. Interval during ablution or bath.

It is quoted from Ibn ‘Umar: that he washed his feet after the other parts (which
are washed in ablution) had become dry.

265. Narrated Maimūna: I placed water for the bath of Allāh's Messenger ﷺ, and he poured water over his hands and washed them twice or thrice; then he poured water with his right hand over his left and washed his private parts (with his left hand). He rubbed his hand over the earth and rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and blowing it out. After that he washed his face, both forearms and head thrice and then poured water over his body. He withdrew from that place and washed his feet.

(11) CHAPTER. Pouring water with one's right hand over the left one, during the bath.

266. Narrated Maimūna bint Al-Hārith: I placed water for the bath of Allāh's Messenger ﷺ and put a screen. He poured water over his hands, and washed them once or twice. (The subnarrator added that he did not remember if she had said thrice or not). Then he poured water with his right hand over his left one and washed his private parts. Then he rubbed his hand over the earth or the wall and washed it. Then he rinsed his mouth and washed his nose by putting water in it and blowing it out. He washed his face, forearms and head. He poured water over his body and then withdrew from that place and washed his feet. I presented him a piece of cloth (towel) and he pointed with his hand (that he does not want it) and did not take it.
(12) CHAPTER. Having sexual intercourse and repeating it. And engaging with one's own wives and taking a single bath (after doing so).

267. Narrated Muḥammad bin Al-Muntashir on the authority of his father that he had asked 'Aishah (about the Hadith of Ibn 'Umar). She said, “May Allah be Merciful to Abu 'Abdur Rahman. I used to put scent on Allah’s Messenger and he used to go round his wives, and in the morning he assumed the Ihram, and the fragrance of scent was still coming out from his body.”

268. Narrated Qatada: Anas bin Mālik said, “The Prophet used to visit all his wives in a round, during the day and night and they were eleven in number.” I asked Anas, “Had the Prophet the strength for it?” Anas replied, “We used to say that the Prophet was given the strength of thirty (men).” And Sa’id said on the authority of Qatada that Anas had told him about nine wives only (not eleven).
(13) CHAPTER. The washing away of emotional urethral discharge and performing ablution after it.

269. Narrated 'Ali bin 'Abdul Qaid: I used to get emotional urethral discharge frequently. Being the son-in-law of the Prophet, I requested a man to ask him about it. So the man asked the Prophet about it. The Prophet replied, "Perform ablution after washing your organ (penis)."

(14) CHAPTER. Whoever scented himself and then took a bath while the effect of scent remained even after bathing.

270. Narrated Muhammad bin Al-Muntashir on the authority of his father that he had asked 'Aishah about the saying of Ibn 'Umar (i.e. he did not like to be a Muhrim while the smell of scent was still coming from his body). 'Aishah said, "I scented Allah's Messenger and he went round (had sexual intercourse with) all his wives, and in the morning he was a Muhrim (after taking a bath)."

271. Narrated 'Aishah: It is as if I am just now looking at the glitter of scent in the parting of the Prophet's head hair while he was a Muhrim.

(15) CHAPTER. To rub the hair thoroughly (while taking a bath) till one feels that one has made his skin wet (underneath the hair) and then one pours water over it.
272. Narrated Hishām bin ‘Urwa on the authority of his father: ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها said, “Whenever Allah’s Messenger ﷺ took the bath of Janāba, he cleaned his hands and performed ablution like that for Ṣalāt (prayer) and then took a bath and rubbed his hair, till he felt that the whole skin of the head had become wet, then he would pour water thrice and wash the rest of the body.”

273. ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها further said, “I and Allah’s Messenger ﷺ used to take a bath from a single water container, from which we took water simultaneously.”

(16) CHAPTER. Whoever performed the ablution of Janāba and then washed his body but did not wash once again the parts which were washed in ablution.

274. Narrated Maimūna رضي الله عنها: Water was placed for the ablution of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ after Janāba. He poured water with his right hand over his left twice or thrice and then washed his private parts and rubbed his hands on the earth or on a wall twice or thrice and then rinsed his mouth, washed his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out, and then washed his face and forearms and poured water over his head and washed his body. Then he shifted from that place and washed his feet. I brought a piece of cloth, but he did not take it and removed the traces of water from his body with his hand.”
(17) CHAPTER. If someone while in the mosque remembers that he is Junub, he should leave (the mosque to take a bath) and should not perform Tayammum.

275. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Once the call (Iqāma) for the Salāt (prayer) was announced and the rows were straightened. Allāh’s Messenger came out; and when he stood up at his Musalla, he remembered that he was Junub. Then he ordered us to stay at our places and went to take a bath and then returned with water dropping from his head. He said, “Allāhu-Akbar”, and we all offered the Salāt with him.

(18) CHAPTER. The removing of water from one’s body with one’s hands after taking the bath of Janāba.

276. Narrated Maimūna: I placed water for the bath of the Prophet and screened him with a garment. He poured water over his hands and washed them. After that he poured water with his right hand over his left and washed his private parts, rubbed his hands with earth and washed them, rinsed his mouth, washed his nose by putting water in it and then blowing it out and then washed his face and forearms. He poured water over his head and body. He then shifted from that place and washed his feet. I gave him a piece
of cloth but he did not take it and came out removing the water (from his body) with both his hands.

(19) CHAPTER. Starting from the right side of one's head while taking a bath.

277. Narrated ‘Aishah: Whenever any one of us was Junub, she poured water over her head thrice with both her hands and then rubbed the right side of her head with one hand and rubbed the left side of the head with the other hand.

(20) CHAPTER. Whosoever took a bath alone (in seclusion) completely naked.

And whosoever screened himself and screening oneself is better. The Prophet ﷺ said, “One must feel shy from Allah more than from the people as He has the right for it.”

278. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The (people of) Bani Isrā’īl used to take bath naked (all together) looking at each other. Prophet Mūsā (Moses) used to take bath alone. They said, ‘By Allah! Nothing prevents Mūsā from taking a bath with us except that he has a scrotal hernia.’ So once Mūsā went out to take a bath and put his clothes over a stone
and then that stone ran away with his clothes. Mūsā followed that stone saying, ‘My clothes, O stone! My clothes, O stone!’, till the people of Bānī Isrā‘īl saw him and said, ‘By Allāh, Mūsā has got no defect in his body. Mūsā took his clothes and began to beat the stone.’

Abū Hurairah added, “By Allāh! There are still six or seven marks present on the stone from that excessive beating.”

279. Narrated Abū Hurairah Z

The Prophet said, “When the Prophet Ayyūb (Job) was taking a bath naked, golden locusts fell on him. Ayyūb started collecting them in his clothes. His Lord addressed him, ‘O Ayyūb! Haven’t I given you enough so that you are not in need of them.’ Ayyūb replied, ‘Yes! By Your Honour (Power) But I cannot dispense with Your Blessings.’” (See Hadith No. 3391, Vol. 4)

(21) CHAPTER. To screen oneself from the people while taking a bath.

280. Narrated Umm Hānī bint Abī Ṭālib

I went to Allah’s Messenger in the year of the Conquest of Makkah and found him taking a bath while Fāṭima was screening him. The Prophet asked, ‘Who is it?’ I replied, ‘I am Umm Hānī.’
281. Narrated Maimūna: Zayd b. al-‘Abbās: I screened the Prophet while he was taking a bath of Janāba. He washed his hands, poured water from his right hand over his left and washed his private parts. Then he rubbed his hand over a wall or the earth, and performed ablution similar to that for the Salāt (prayer) but did not wash his feet. Then he poured water over his body, shifted from that place, and washed his feet.

(22) CHAPTER. If a woman has a wet dream (nocturnal sexual discharge).

282. Narrated Umm Salama, the Mother of the believers: Umm Sulaim, the wife of Abū Ṭalḥa, came to Allāh’s Messenger and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Verily, Allāh is not shy to tell the truth. Is it necessary for a woman to take a bath after she has a wet dream (nocturnal sexual discharge)?” Allāh’s Messenger replied, “Yes, if she notices a discharge.”
(283) **NARRATED ABU HURAIRAH**

The Prophet ﷺ came across me in one of the streets of Al-Madina and at that time I was Junub. So I slipped away from him and went to take a bath. On my return the Prophet ﷺ said, “O Abu Hurairah! Where have you been?” I replied, “I was Junub, so I disliked to sit in your company while I was in a state of impurity.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Subhan Allah! A Believer (who believes in Islamic Monotheism) never becomes Najas\(^1\) (impure). (See V.9:28 – the Qur’an)

(284) **NARRATED ANAS BIN MALIK**

The Prophet ﷺ used to visit all his wives in one night and he had nine wives at that time.

---

\(^1\) Najas i.e., impure; it is either: (a) Physical, as regards urine, stools and blood etc.. (b) Spiritual, as regards not having belief in the Oneness of Allah and His Messenger Muhammad ﷺ e.g., Al-Mushrikun (polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allah and in His Messenger Muhammad ﷺ. And the word Najas is used only for those persons who have spiritual impurity e.g. Al-Mushrikun etc.
285. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah's Messenger came across me and I was Junub. He took my hand and I went along with him till he sat down. I slipped away, went home and took a bath. When I came back, he was still sitting there. He then said to me, “O Abū Hurairah! Where have you been?” I told him about it. The Prophet said, “Subhan Allah! O Abū Hurairah! A Believer (who believes in Islamic Monotheism) never becomes Najas (impure).”

(25) CHAPTER. A Junub can stay at home without taking a bath but with ablution.

286. Narrated Abū Salama: I asked ‘Āishah, “Did the Prophet use to sleep while he was Junub?” She replied, “Yes, but he used to perform ablution (before going to bed).”

(26) CHAPTER. Sleeping of a Junub person.

287. Narrated ‘Umar bin Al-Khattāb: I asked Allāh’s Messenger, “Can anyone of us sleep while he is Junub?” He replied, “Yes, if he performs ablution, he can sleep while he is Junub.”

(27) CHAPTER. A Junub person should perform ablution before sleeping.

288. Narrated ‘Āishah: Whenever the Prophet intended to sleep while he was Junub, he used to wash his
private parts and perform ablution like that for the Salât (prayer).

289. Narrated ‘Abdullâh, “Umar asked the Prophet : “Can anyone of us sleep while he is Junub?” He replied, "Yes, if he performs ablution."

290. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar ; ‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb told Allah’s Messenger , “I became Junub at night.” Allah’s Messenger replied, “Perform ablution (after) washing your penis (private parts) and then sleep.”

(28) CHAPTER. When male and female organs come in close contact (bath becomes compulsory).

291. Narrated Abû Hurairah : The Prophet said, “When a man sits in between the four parts of a woman and did the sexual intercourse with her (1), bath becomes compulsory.”

(1) (H.291) The head of his private organ entered in her private female part.
5 – THE BOOK OF GHUSL

(29) CHAPTER. Washing away what comes out from the private parts of a woman (woman’s discharge) if one gets soiled with that.

292. Narrated Zaid bin Khalid Al-Juhani: I asked ‘Uthmân bin ‘Affân about a man who engaged in the sexual intercourse with his wife but did not discharge. ‘Uthmân replied, “He should perform ablution like that for the prayer after washing his private parts.” ‘Uthmân added, “I heard that from Allah’s Messenger ∘.” I asked Ali bin Abi Ṭālib, Az-Zubair bin Al-‘Awwâm, Ṭalḥa bin ‘Ubaidullah and Ubai bin Ka‘b and all gave the same reply.

(Abū Ayyūb said that he had heard that from Allah’s Messenger ∘) (This order was cancelled later on so one has to take a bath. See Ḥadīth No.291).

293. Narrated Ubai bin Ka‘b: I asked Allah’s Messenger ∘ about a man who engages in sexual intercourse with his wife but does not discharge. He replied, “He should wash the parts which comes in contact with the private parts of the woman, perform ablution and then offer Salât (prayer).” (Abū ‘Abdullâh said, “To be on the safe side one should take a bath and that is the last order.”) (See Ḥadīth No.291).
And the Statement of Allah: “They ask you (O Muhammad) concerning menstruation. Say, that is an Adha (a harmful thing for a husband to have sexual intercourse with his wife while she is having her menses), therefore, keep away from women during menses and go not unto them until they have been purified (from menses and have taken a bath). And when they have purified themselves, then go in unto them as Allah has ordained for you (go in unto them in any manner as long as it is in their vagina). Truly, Allah loves those who turn unto Him in repentance and loves those who purify themselves.” (V.2:222).

(1) CHAPTER. How the menses started.

And the statement of the Prophet, “This is a thing which Allah has ordained for the daughters of Adam.” Some people said that the menses first came for Banî Isra'il. But what the Prophet said, is more comprehensive (the truth).

CHAPTER. Menses (a thing) ordained (by Allah and instructions) for women when they get their menses.

294.Narrated Al-Qãsim: ‘Áishah said, “We set out with the sole intention of performing Hajj and when we reached Sarif, (a place 11 k.m. from Makkah) I got my menses. Allah's Messenger came to me while I was weeping. He said ‘What is the matter with you? Have you got your menses?’ I replied, ‘Yes.’ He said, ‘This is a thing which Allah has ordained for the daughters of Adam. So do what all the pilgrims do with the exception of the Tawaf (circumambulation) round the Ka'bah.’” ‘Áishah added,
“Allah’s Messenger sacrificed cows on behalf of his wives.”

(2) CHAPTER. The washing of the husband’s head and the combing of his hair by a menstruating wife.

295. Narrated ‘Aishah: While in menses, I used to comb the hair of Allah’s Messenger.

296. Narrated ‘Urwa: A person asked me, “Can a woman in menses serve me? And can a Junub woman come close to me?” I replied, “All this is easy for me. All of them can serve me, and there is no harm for any other person to do the same.” ‘Aishah told me that she used to comb the hair of Allah’s Messenger while she was in her menses, and he was in Ḥajj (in the mosque). He would bring his head near her.

(H.296) Ḥajj: Seclusion in a mosque for the purpose of worshipping Allah only. The one in such a state should not have sexual relations with his wife, and one is not allowed to leave the mosque except for a very short period, and that is only for very urgent necessity e.g., answering the call of nature or joining a funeral procession etc.)
in her room and she would comb his hair, while she used to be in her menses.”

(3) CHAPTER. To recite the Qur’ân while lying in the lap of one’s own menstruating wife.

Abû Wâ’il used to send his menstruating maid servant to bring the Qur’ân from Abî Razin by carrying it from the hanger (of its case).

297. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet used to lean on my lap during my menses and then would recite the Qur’ân.

(4) CHAPTER. Using the word Nifâs for menses.

298. Narrated Umm Salama: While I was laying with the Prophet under a single woolen sheet, I got the menses. I slipped away and put on the clothes for menses. He said, “Have you got Nifâs (menses)?” I replied, “Yes.” He then called me and made me lie with him under the same sheet.
(5) CHAPTER. Fondling a menstruating wife.

299. Narrated ‘Āishah: The Prophet ﷺ and I used to take a bath from a single pot while we were Junub.

300. (‘Āishah added): And he ﷺ used to order me to put on an Izār (dress worn below the waist) and used to fondle me. While I used to be in my periods (menses).

301. (‘Āishah added): While in I’tikāf, he ﷺ used to bring his head near me and I would wash it while I used to be in my periods (menses).

302. Narrated ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin Al-Aswad on the authority of his father: ‘Āishah said: “Whenever Allah’s Messenger ﷺ wanted to fondle anyone of us during her periods (menses), he used to order her to put on an Izār and start fondling her.” ‘Āishah added, “None of you could control his sexual desire as the Prophet ﷺ could.”

303. Narrated Māimūna: Whenever Allah’s Messenger ﷺ wanted to fondle any of his wives during their periods (menses), he used to ask her to wear an Izār.
6 - THE BOOK OF MENSES

(6) CHAPTER. A menstruating woman should leave observing Sa'um (fasting).

304. Narrated Abū Sa'īd Al-Khudrī: Once Allāh's Messenger went out to the Musalla [to offer the Ṣalāt (prayer)] of 'Īd-al-Adhā or 'Īd-al-Fitr, and he passed by the women and said, "O you the assembly of women! Give alms, as I have seen that the majority of the dwellers of Hell-fire were you (women)." They asked, "Why is it so, O Allāh's Messenger?" He replied, "You curse frequently and are ungrateful to your husbands. I have not seen anyone more deficient in intelligence and religion than you. A cautious sensible man could be led astray by some of you." The women asked, "O Allāh's Messenger! What is deficient in our intelligence and religion?" He said, "Is not the witness (evidence) of two women equal to the witness of one man?" They replied in the affirmative. He said, "This is the deficiency in her intelligence. Isn't it true that a woman can neither offer Ṣalāt (prayers) nor observe Sa'um (fasting) during her menses?" The women replied in the affirmative. He said, "This is the deficiency in her religion."

(7) CHAPTER. A menstruating woman should perform all the ceremonies of Hajj except the Ṭawāf around the Ka'bah.
Ibrāhīm said, “There is no harm in reciting a Verse of the Qur’ān by a menstruating woman.” Ibn ‘Abbās considers that there was no harm in the recitation of the Qur’ān by a Junub. The Prophet ﷺ used to remember (glorify) Allāh at all times. Umm ‘Aṭiyā said that they were ordered to let the menstruating women come out (on festivals) to say Takbirat (Allahu- Akbar), and to invoke Allāh. Ibn ‘Abbās narrated on the authority of Abū Sufyān: Heraclius asked for the letter of the Prophet ﷺ and read it. It began: “In the Name of Allāh, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful. 0 people of the Scripture (Jews and Christians): Come to a word that is just between us and you that we worship none but Allāh ... (V.3:64). And ‘Aṭā quoted from Jābir, “‘Āishah got her menses and she performed all the ceremonies of Hajj except the Tawāf round the Ka’bah and she did not offer Salāt (prayers).” Al-Ḥakam said, “I slaughter the animal even if I were Junub.” And Allāh ﷺ said: “Eat not (O believers) of that (meat) on which Allāh’s Name has not been pronounced (at the time of slaughtering of the animal).” (V.6:121).

305. Narrated ‘Āishah: We set out with the Prophet ﷺ for Hajj and when we reached Sarif I got my menses. When the Prophet ﷺ came to me, I was weeping. He asked, “Why are you weeping?” I said, “I wish if I had not performed Hajj this year.” He asked, “May be that you got your menses?” I replied, “Yes.” He then said, “This is the thing which Allāh has ordained for all the daughters of Adam. So do what all the pilgrims do except that you do not perform the Tawāf round the Ka’bah till you are clean.”
(8) CHAPTER. Al-Istihāda [bleeding (from the womb) in between a woman’s periods].

306. Narrated 'Āishah bint Abī Ḥubayš: Fāṭima bint Abī Ḥubayš said to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, “O Allah’s Messenger! I do not become clean (from bleeding). Shall I give up my ṣalāt (prayers)?” Allah’s Messenger ﷺ replied: “No, because it is from a blood vessel and not the menses. So when the real menses begins give up your ṣalāt and when it (the period) has finished wash the blood off your body (take a bath) and offer your prayers.”

(9) CHAPTER. Washing out the menstrual blood.

307. Narrated Asmā’ bint Abī Bakr: A woman asked Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, “O Allah’s Messenger! What should we do if the blood of menses falls on our clothes?” Allah’s Messenger ﷺ replied, “If the blood of menses falls on the garment of anyone of you, she must take hold of the blood spot, rub it, and wash it with water and then offer ṣalāt (prayers) in (with) it.”
308. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: Whenever anyone of us got her menses, she, on becoming clean, used to take hold of the blood spot and rub the blood off her garment, and pour water over it and wash that portion thoroughly and sprinkle water over the rest of the garment. After that she would offer Salāt (prayers) in (with) it.

(10) CHAPTER. The ʿĪtikāf of a woman who is bleeding in between her periods.

309. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: Once one of the wives of the Prophet ﷺ did ʿĪtikāf along with him and she was bleeding in between her periods. She used to see the blood (from her private parts) and she would perhaps put a dish under her for the blood. (The subnarrator ʿIkrima added, ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها once saw the liquid of safflower and said, “It looks like what so-and-so used to have.”)

310. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: “One of the wives of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ joined him in ʿĪtikāf and she noticed blood and yellowish discharge (from her private parts) and put a dish under her when she offered Salāt (prayers).”

311. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: One of the Mothers of the faithful believers (i.e. the wives of the Prophet ﷺ) did ʿĪtikāf while she was having bleeding in between her periods.
(11) CHAPTER. Can a woman offer her Salat (prayers) in the clothes in which she has her menses?

312.Narrated ‘Aishah (رضي الله عنها): None of us had more than a single garment and we used to have our menses while wearing it. Whenever it got soiled with blood of menses we used to apply saliva to the blood spot and rub off the blood with our nails.

(12) CHAPTER. Putting perfume by women at the time of taking a bath after finishing from the menses.

313.Narrated Umm ‘Atiyya (رضي الله عنها): We were forbidden to mourn for a dead person for more than three days except in the case of a husband, for whom mourning was allowed for four months and ten days. (During that time) we were not allowed to put Kohl (antimony eye powder) in our eyes or to use perfumes or to put on coloured clothes except a dress made of ’Asb (a kind of Yemen cloth, very coarse and rough). We were allowed to use Kum Afar (very light perfumes) at the time of taking a bath after menses and also we were forbidden to go with the funeral procession.

(13) CHAPTER. A woman should rub her own body thoroughly during a bath after the menses.
How to take a bath after menses and rub the place soiled with blood with a perfumed piece of cloth.

314. Narrated ‘Aishah: A woman asked the Prophet about the bath which is taken after finishing from the menses. The Prophet told her what to do and said, “Purify yourself with a piece of cloth scented with musk.” The woman asked, “How shall I purify myself with it?” He said, “Subhan Allah! Purify yourself with it.” I pulled her to myself and said, “Rub the place soiled with blood with it.”

(14) CHAPTER. To take a bath after finishing from the menses.

315. Narrated ‘Aishah: An Ansari woman asked the Prophet how to take a bath after finishing from the menses. He replied, “Take a piece of cloth perfumed with musk and clean the private parts with it, thrice.” The Prophet felt shy and turned his face. So I pulled her to me and told her what the Prophet meant.

(15) CHAPTER. The combing of head-hair by a woman on taking a bath after finishing from the menses.

316. Narrated ‘Aishah: In the last Hajj of Allah’s Messenger, I assumed the Iḥrām for Hajj along with Allah’s
Messenger ﷺ. I was one of those who intended *Tamattu*’ (to perform *Hajj* and *Umra* together, with a break in between) and did not take the *Hady* (animal for sacrifice) with me. I got my menses and was not clean till the night of *Arafa*. I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! It is the night of the Day of *Arafa* and I intended to perform the *Hajj* *Tamattu*’ with *Umra.*” Allah’s Messenger ﷺ told me to undo my head-hair and comb it and to postpone the *Umra*. I did the same and completed the *Hajj*. On the night of Al-Hasba (i.e., a place outside Makkah where the pilgrims go after finishing all the ceremonies of *Hajj* at Minâ) he (the Prophet ﷺ) ordered ‘Abdur Rahmân (‘Aishah’s brother) to take me to At-Tan‘îm to assume the *Ihram* for *Umra* in lieu of that of *Hajj-at-Tamattu*’ which I had intended to perform.

(16) CHAPTER. A woman should undo her head-hair while taking the bath after finishing from her menses.

317. Narrated ‘Aishah ﷺ: On the 1st of Dhul-Hijja we set out with the intention of performing *Hajj*. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Anyone who likes to assume the *Ihram* for *Umra*, he can do so. Had I not brought the *Hady* with me, I would have assumed the *Ihram* for *Umra*. Some of us assumed the *Ihram* for *Umra* while the others assumed the *Ihram* for *Hajj*. I was one of those who assumed the *Ihram* for *Umra*. I got menses and kept on menstruating until the Day of *Arafa* and complained of that to the Prophet ﷺ. He told me to postpone my *Umra*, undo and comb my head-hair, and to assume the *Ihram* of *Hajj* and I did so. On the night of *Hasba*, he sent my brother ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin Abi Bakr with me to At-Tan‘îm, where I assumed the *Ihram* for *Umra* in lieu
of the previous one.

Hishām said, “For that (‘Umra) no Hady, fasting or alms were required.”

(17) CHAPTER. “(A little lump of flesh) some formed and some unformed.” (V.22:5)

318. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet said, “At every womb Allah appoints an angel who says, ‘O Lord! A drop of semen, O Lord! A clot. O Lord! A little lump of flesh.’ Then if Allah wishes (to complete) its creation, the angel asks, (O Lord!) (A) Will it be a male or female, (B) a wretched or a blessed, (C) and how much will his provision be? (D) And what will his age be’? So all that [A, B, C, D] is written while the child is still in the mother’s womb.”

(18) CHAPTER. How a menstruating woman should assume Ihram for Hajj or for ‘Umra.

319. Narrated ‘Urwa: ‘Aishah said, “We set out with the Prophet in his last Hajj. Some of us intended to perform ‘Umra while others Hajj. When we reached Makkah, Allāh’s Messenger said, ‘Anyone who had assumed the Ihram for ‘Umra and had not brought the Hady should finish his Ihram, and whoever had assumed

---

(1) (H.318) The wretched (in the Hereafter) is he who will choose the way which will lead him to Hell-fire.

(2) (H.318) The blessed (in the Hereafter) is he who will choose the way which will lead him to Paradise.
the Ihram for 'Umra and brought the Hady should not finish the Ihram till he has slaughtered his Hady, and whoever had assumed the Ihram for Hajj should complete his Hajj.

‘Aishah further said, “I got my menses and kept on menstruating till the Day of ‘Arafa, and I had assumed the Ihram for ‘Umra only (Tamattu’). The Prophet ordered me to undo and comb my head-hair and assume the Ihram for Hajj only and leave the ‘Umra. I did the same till I completed the Hajj. Then the Prophet sent ‘Abdur Rahman bin Abi Bakr with me and ordered me to perform ‘Umra from At-Tanim in lieu of the missed ‘Umra.”

(19) CHAPTER. The beginning and the ending of menstrual periods.

Some women used to send the pads of cotton with traces of yellowish discharge to ‘Aishah (for her verdict to know whether they had become clean from menses or not). And ‘Aishah would say, “Do not hurry till you see the cotton pad is white (meaning the perfect disappearance of menses).” The daughter of Zaid bin Thabit was told that some women used to ask for candles at midnight to see whether the menses had stopped or not. On that the daughter of Zaid said that the ladies (the wives of the Prophet’s Companions) had never done so, and she blamed them (the former women).

320. Narrated ‘Aishah: Fāṭima bint Abi Ḥubaish used to have bleeding in between the periods, so she asked the Prophet about it. He replied, “The bleeding is from a blood vessel and not the menses. So give up As-Salāt (the prayers)
when the (real) menses begin and when it has finished, take a bath and start offering prayers.”

(20) CHAPTER. There is no \textit{Salāt} (prayer) to be offered by a menstruating woman in lieu of the missed \textit{Salāt} during her menses.

And the Prophet \\(\mathbin{\mathcal{N}}\) said, “The lady (in her menses) must leave her \textit{Salāt} (prayers).”

321. Narrated Mu‘ādh: A woman asked ‘Aishah, “Should I offer the \textit{Salāt} (prayer) that which I did not offer because of menses.” ‘Aishah said, “Are you from the Haraura (a town in ‘Iraq)\(^{(1)}\). We were with the Prophet \\(\mathbin{\mathcal{N}}\) and used to get our periods but he never ordered us to offer them (the \textit{Salāt} missed during menses),” or ‘Aishah said, “We did not offer them.”

(21) CHAPTER. Sleeping with a menstruating woman (one’s wife) while she is wearing her clothes (that are worn during menses).

322. Narrated Zainab bint ‘Abi Salama: Umm Salama said, “I got my menses while I was lying with the Prophet \\(\mathbin{\mathcal{N}}\) under a woolen sheet. So I slipped away, took the clothes for menses and put them on. Allāh’s Messenger \\(\mathbin{\mathcal{N}}\) said, ‘Have you got your menses?’ I replied, ‘Yes.’ Then he called me and took me with him under the woolen sheet.”

Umm Salama further said, “The Prophet \\(\mathbin{\mathcal{N}}\) used to kiss me while he was observing \textit{Saum} (fasting). The Prophet \\(\mathbin{\mathcal{N}}\) said:

---

\(\text{\(^{(1)}\)}\) (H.321) Haraura was a village near Kūfa in ‘Iraq where the Kharijites assembled for the first time and a sect of those Kharijites regarded it compulsory for a menstruating women to offer the \textit{Salāt} (prayers) missed during menses.
and I used to take the bath of Janāba from a single pot.”

(22) CHAPTER. Whoever kept a special dress for menses besides other dresses for the clean period.

323. Narrated Umm Salama: While I was lying with the Prophet under a woolen sheet, I got my menses. I slipped away and put on the clothes for menses. The Prophet said, “Have you got your menses?” I replied, “Yes.” He called me and I slept with him under the woolen sheet.

(23) CHAPTER. The participation of menstruating women in the two ‘Eid festivals and in religious gatherings of Muslims and their isolation from the Muṣallā (praying place).

324. Narrated Ayūb: Ḥafṣa said, “We used to forbid our young women to go out for the two ‘Eid prayers. A woman came and stayed at the palace of Bani Khalaf and she narrated about her sister whose husband took part in twelve Ghazwāt (holy wars) along with the Prophet, and her sister was with her husband in six (out of these twelve). She (the woman’s sister) said, “We used to treat the wounded, look after the patients and once I asked the Prophet, ‘Is there any harm for any of us to stay at
home if she doesn’t have a veil?’ He said, ‘She should cover herself with the veil of her companion and should participate in the good deeds and in the religious gathering of the Muslims.’ When Umm ‘Atiyya came I asked her whether she had heard it from the Prophet. She replied, ‘Yes. May my father be sacrificed for him (the Prophet)! (Whenever she mentioned the Prophet she used to say, ‘May my father be sacrificed for him’).’ I have heard the Prophet saying, ‘The unmarried virgins and the mature girls and the menstruating women should come out and participate in the good deeds as well as the invocations of faithful believers, but the menstruating women should keep away from the Masjid — praying place [i.e., Salat (prayers)].’

Haifa asked Umm ‘Atiyya (surprisingly), “Do you say the menstruating women?” She replied, “Doesn’t a menstruating woman attend ‘Arafat (Hajj) and such and such (other deeds)?”

(24) CHAPTER. If a woman gets menses thrice a month.

Can we believe a woman if she says she is menstruating or pregnant, and whatever is related to menses as is referred to by the Statement of Allâh: “…And it is not lawful for them to conceal what Allâh has created in their wombs…” (V.2:228). ‘Ali and Shuraih said, “If a woman presents witness from her relatives who are good Muslims that she is getting menses thrice a month then she is to be believed.” ‘Atha said, “Her previous menstrual cycles are to be taken into consideration.” The same was said by Ibrâhim. ‘Atha said, “Menses can last from one to fifteen days.” Ibn Sirin was asked about a woman who noticed blood five days
after her menstrual cycle. He replied: The women knew better about that.

325. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها: Fātima bint Abī Ḥubaish رضي الله عنها asked the Prophet ﷺ, “I got persistent bleeding (in between the periods) and do not become clean. Shall I give up Ṣalāt (prayers)?” He replied, “No, it is from a blood vessel. Give up the Ṣalāt only for the days on which you usually get the menses and then take a bath and offer your prayers.”

(25) CHAPTER. Yellowish discharge not during the menses.

326. Narrated Umm ‘Aṭiyya رضي الله عنها: We never considered yellowish discharge as a thing of importance (during a non-menstruating period).

[See Fath Al-Bārī Vol.1, page 442].

(26) CHAPTER. Al-Istihādah (bleeding in between the periods is from a blood vessel.)

327. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: Umm Ḥabība رضي الله عنها got bleeding in between the periods for seven years. She asked Allah’s Messenger ﷺ about it. He ordered her to take a bath (after the termination of actual periods) and added that it was from a blood vessel. But she used to take a bath for every Ṣalāt (prayer). (Without being ordered by the Prophet ﷺ, See Fath Al-Bārī).
(27) CHAPTER. If a woman gets her menses after *Tawaf-al-Ifada* (1)

328. Narrated ‘Aishah, the wife of the Prophet 
: I told Allâh’s Messenger 
that Safiyya bint Huyai had got her menses. He said, “She will probably delay us. Did she perform *Tawaf* (al-Ifada) with you?” We replied, “Yes.” On that the Prophet 
told her to depart.

329. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs : A woman is allowed to leave (go back home) if she gets menses (after *Tawaf-al-Ifada*).

330. Ibn ‘Umar formerly used to say that she should not leave but later on I heard him saying, “She may leave, since Allâh’s Messenger 
gave them the permission to leave (after *Tawaf-al-Ifada*.)”

(28) CHAPTER. When a woman having bleeding in between her periods notices signs of cleanliness from her menses.

Ibn ‘Abbâs said: She should take a bath and offer *Salât* (prayers) even if (she were clean) for an hour and she can have (sexual relation with her husband) after the prayer and *As-Salât* (the prayer) is more superior and important (than anything else).

---

(1) (Ch. 27) See glossary.
331. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ said to me, “Give up As-Salât (the prayer) when your menses begin and when it has finished, wash the blood off your body (take a bath) and start offering Salât.”

(29) CHAPTER. The offering of a funeral prayer for a woman who had died during (or after) delivery and its (i.e., funeral prayer’s) legal way of performing. [See Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol.2, Hadith No.1333,1334 and its chapter No. 64].

332. Narrated Samura bin Jundab رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ offered the funeral prayer for the dead body of a woman who died of (during) delivery (i.e., childbirth) and he stood by the middle of her body.

(30) CHAPTER.

333. Narrated Maimūna رضي الله عنها, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: During my menses, I never offered Salât (prayer), but used to sit on the mat beside the mosque of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ. He used to offer the Salât on his sheet and in prostration some of his clothes used to touch me.”
The Statement of Allah: "...And you find no water, then perform Tayammum with clean earth and rub therewith your faces and hands..." (V.5:6).

(1) CHAPTER.

334. Narrated 'Aishah, the wife of the Prophet: We set out with Allah's Messenger on one of his journeys till we reached Al-Baidâ’ or Dhâtil-Jaish, a necklace of mine was broken (and lost). Allah's Messenger stayed there to search for it, and so did the people along with him. There was no water at that place, so the people went to Abû Bakr As-Siddiq and said, "Don't you see what 'Aishah has done? She has made Allah's Messenger and the people stay where there is no water and they have no water with them." Abû Bakr came while Allah's Messenger was sleeping with his head on my thigh, He said, to me: "You have detained Allah's Messenger and the people stay where there is no water and they have no water with them." So he admonished me and said what Allah wished him to say and hit me on my flank with his hand. Nothing prevented me from moving (because of pain) but the position of Allah's Messenger on my thigh. Allah's Messenger got up when dawn broke and there was no water. So Allah revealed the Divine Verses of Tayammum. So they all performed Tayammum. Usaid bin Hûdair said, "O the family of Abû Bakr! This is not

(1) (Ch.1) Tayammum: To strike lightly the hands over clean earth and then pass the palm of each on the back of the other, blow off the dust and then pass them on the face. This is performed instead of Wudu' (ablution) and Ghusl (in case of Janaba etc.) when water is not available (or under other circumstances etc.) See Sahih Al-Bukhârî, Vol.1, Hadith No.338 and 344.
the first blessing of yours.” Then the camel on which I was riding was caused to move from its place and the necklace was found beneath it.

335. Narrated Jābīr bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ said, “I have been given five (things) which were not given to anyone else before me.

1. Allāh made me victorious by awe, (by His frightening my enemies) for a distance of one month’s journey.

2. The earth has been made for me (and for my followers) a place for offering Salāt (prayer) and a thing to purify (perform Tayammum), therefore anyone of my followers can offer Salāt wherever he is, at the time of a Salāt.

3. The booty has been made Halāl (lawful) to me yet it was not lawful to anyone else before me.

4. I have been given the right of intercession (on the Day of Resurrection).

5. Every Prophet used to be sent to his nation only but I have been sent to all mankind.

(2) CHAPTER. What to do if neither water nor earth is available.

336. Narrated ‘Urwa’s father: ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها said, “I borrowed a necklace from Asmā’ and it was lost. So Allāh’s
Messenger ﷺ sent a man to search for it and he found it. Then the time of the ﺷالات (prayer) became due and there was no water. They offered ﺷالات (without ablution) and informed Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ about it, so the Verse of Tayammum was revealed.”

Usâid bin Hudâir said to ‘Aishah ﷺ, “May Allâh reward you. By Allâh, whenever anything happened which you did not like, Allâh brought good for you and for the Muslims in that.”

(3) CHAPTER. The performance of Tayammum by a non-traveller (is permissible) when water is not available and when one is afraid that the time of ﺷالات (prayer) may elapse.

‘Aţâ’ supported that opinion. Al-‘Hasân says, “If a patient has water but there is no one to hand it over to him, then he can perform Tayammum.” Ibn ‘Umar came from his land at Al-Juruf and the time for the ‘Asr prayer became due while he was at Marbad-an-Na‘ām (sheep-fold), so he (performed Tayammum) and offered ﺷالات (prayer) there, and then entered Al-Madinah when the sun was still high but he did not repeat that ﺷالات.

337. Narrated Abû Juhaim Al-Ansârî: The Prophet ﷺ came from the direction of Bi‘r Jamal. A man met him and greeted him. But he did not return back the greeting till he went to a (mud) wall and rubbed his hands and his face with its dust (performed Tayammum) and then returned back the greeting.
(4) CHAPTER. Can a person blow off the dust from his hands in performing Tayammum (before passing them over his face).

338. Narrated ‘Abdur Rahmân bin Abza:
A man came to ‘Umar bin Al-Khattãb and said, “I became Junub but no water was available.” ‘Ammâr bin Yâsir said to ‘Umar, “Do you remember that you and I (became Junub while both of us) were together on a journey and you didn’t offer Salât (prayer) but I rolled myself on the ground and offered Salât? I informed the Prophet about it and he said, ‘It would have been sufficient for you to do like this.’ The Prophet then stroked lightly the earth with his hands and then blew off the dust and passed his hands over his face and hands.”

(5) CHAPTER. Tayammum is for the hands and the face.

339. Narrated Sa‘îd bin ‘Abdur Rahmân bin Abza on the authority of his father who said: ‘Ammâr said so (the above statement). And Shu’ba stroked lightly the earth with his hands and brought them close to his mouth...
(blew off the dust) and passed them over his face and then the backs of his hands. 'Ammăr said, "Ablution (meaning Tayammum here) is sufficient for a Muslim if water is not available."

340. Narrated ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin Abza that while he was in the company of ‘Umar رضي الله عنه, ‘Ammăr رضي الله عنه said to ‘Umar, "We were in a detachment and became Junub and I blew the dust off my hands [performed the rolling over the earth and offered Salāt (prayer)]."

341. Narrated ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin Abza: ‘Ammăr رضي الله عنه said to ‘Umar رضي الله عنه, "I rolled myself in the dust and came to the Prophet ﷺ who said, 'Passing dusted hands over the face and the backs of the hands was sufficient for you'."

342. Narrated ‘Ammăr رضي الله عنه as above.

343. Narrated ‘Ammăr رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ stroked the earth with his hands...
and then passed them over his face and the back of his hands (while demonstrating Tayammum).

(6) CHAPTER. Clean earth is sufficient for a Muslim as a substitute for water for ablution (if he does not find water).

Al-Hasan said, “Tayammum is sufficient unless one does Hadath.” Ibn ‘Abbas led the Salât (prayer) with Tayammum. Yahyâ bin Sa‘id said, “There is no harm in offering Salât on a moorland (a barren salty land) and performing Tayammum with it.”

344. Narrated ‘Imran Z: Once we were travelling with the Prophet and we carried on travelling till the last part of the night and then we (halted at a place) and slept (deeply). There is nothing sweeter than sleep for a traveller in the last part of the night. So it was only the heat of the sun that made us to wake up; and the first to wake up was so-and-so, then so-and-so and then so-and-so (the narrator ‘Aûf said that Abu Raja had told him their names but he had forgotten them) and the fourth person to wake up was ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb. And whenever the Prophet used to sleep, nobody would wake him up till he himself used to get up as we did not know what was happening (being revealed) to him in his sleep. So, ‘Umar got up and saw the condition of the people, and he was a strict man, so he said, “Allâhu-Akbar” and raised his voice with Takbîr, and kept on saying loudly till the Prophet got up because of it. When he got up, the people informed him about what had happened to them. He said,
“There is no harm (or it will not be harmful). Depart!” So they departed from that place, and after covering some distance the Prophet ﷺ stopped and asked for some water to perform the ablution. So, he performed the ablution and the call for the Salāt was pronounced and he led the people in Salāt. After he finished from the Salāt, he saw a man sitting aloof who had not offered Salāt with the people. He ﷺ asked, “0 so-and-so! What has prevented you from offering Salāt with us?” He replied, “I am Junub and there is no water.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Perform Tayammum with (clean) earth and that is sufficient for you.”

Then the Prophet ﷺ proceeded on, and the people complained to him of thirst. Thereupon he got down and called a person (the narrator ‘Auf added that Abū Raja’ had named him but he had forgotten) and ‘Alī, and ordered them to go and bring water. So they went in search of water and met a woman who was sitting on her camel between two bags of water. They asked, “Where can we find water?” She replied, “I was there (at the place of water) this hour yesterday and my people are behind me.” They requested her to accompany them. She asked, “Where?” They said, “To Allah’s Messenger ﷺ.” She said, “Do you mean the man who is called the Sābi (with a new religion)?” They replied, “Yes, the same person. So come along.”

They brought her to the Prophet ﷺ and narrated the whole story. He said, “Help her to dismount.” The Prophet ﷺ asked for a pot, then he opened the mouths of the bags and poured some water into the pot. Then he closed the big openings of the bags and opened the small ones and the people were called upon to drink and water their animals. So they all watered their animals and they
(too) all quenched their thirst and also gave water to others and last of all the Prophet ﷺ gave a pot full of water to the person who was Junub and told him to pour it over his body. The woman was standing and watching all that which they were doing with her water. By Allah, when her water bags were returned they looked like as if they were more full (of water) than they had been before. Then the Prophet ﷺ ordered us to collect something for her; so dates, flour and Sawīq were collected which amounted to a good meal that was put in a piece of cloth. She was helped to ride on her camel and that cloth full of food-stuff was also placed in front of her and then the Prophet ﷺ said to her, “We have not taken your water but Allah has given water to us.” She returned home late. Her relatives asked her: “O so-and-so what has delayed you?” She said, “A strange thing! Two men met me and took me to the man who is called the Saiṭi and he did such and such a thing. By Allah, he is either the greatest magician between this and this (gesturing with her index and middle fingers raising them towards the sky indicating the heaven and the earth) or he is Allah’s Messenger, in truth.”

Afterwards the Muslims used to attack the pagans around her abode but never touched her village. One day she said to her people, “I think that these people leave you purposely. Have you got any inclination to Islam?” They obeyed her and all of them embraced Islam.

Abū ‘Abdullāh said: The word Saiṭa means “The one who has deserted his old religion and embraced a new religion.” Abūl ‘Alīya said, “The Saiṭūn are a sect of people of the Scripture who recite the Book (Psalms of Saiṭūn) they used to live in ’Iraq. They were neither Jews nor Christians.”
It is said that once ‘Amr bin Al-‘As became Junub in a very cold night. He performed Tayammum and recited the following Verse from the Qur’an: “...And do not kill yourself (nor kill one another). Surely, Allâh is Most Merciful to you.” (V.4:29) When that was reported to the Prophet ﷺ he did not object to it.

345. Narrated Abû Wâ’il: Abû Mûsa said to ‘Abdullâh bin Mas’ûd رضي الله عنه, “If one does not find water (for ablution) can he give up the prayer?” Abdullâh replied, “If you give the permission to perform Tayammum they will perform Tayammum even if water was available, if one of them found it cold.” Abû Mûsâ said, “What about the statement of ‘Ammâr to ‘Umar?” ‘Abdullâh replied, “‘Umar was not satisfied by his statement.”

346. Narrated Shaqiq bin Salama: I was with ‘Abdullâh and Abû Mûsâ; the latter
asked the former, “O Abū Abdur-Rahmān! What is your opinion if somebody becomes Junub and no water is available?” ‘Abdullāh replied, “Do not offer Salāt (prayer) till water is found.” Abū Mūsā said, “What do you say about the statement of ‘Ammār (who was ordered by the Prophet to perform Tayammum). The Prophet said to him: “Perform Tayammum and that would be sufficient.” ‘Abdullāh replied, “Don’t you see that ‘Umar was not satisfied by ‘Ammār’s statement?” Abū Mūsá said, “All right, leave ‘Ammār’s statement, but what will you say about this Verse (of Tayammum)?” ‘Abdullāh kept quiet and then said, “If we allowed it, then they would probably perform Tayammum even if water was available, if one of them found it (water) cold.”

The narrator added, “I said to Shaqīq, ‘Then did ‘Abdullāh dislike to perform Tayammum because of this?’ He replied, ‘Yes.’

(8) CHAPTER. Tayammum with one light stroke (on the earth).

347. Narrated Al-A’māsh: Shaqīq said, “While I was sitting with ‘Abdullāh and Abū Mūsā Al-Asḥarī, the latter asked the former, ‘If a person becomes Junub and does not find water for one month, can he perform Tayammum and offer his Salāt (prayer)?’ (He replied in the negative). Abū Mūsā said, ‘What do you say about this Verse from Sūrat Al-Mā’ida: …And you find not water then perform Tayammum with clean earth and rub therewith your faces and hands… (V.5:6)’ ‘Abdullāh replied, ‘If we allowed it then they would probably perform Tayammum with clean earth even if water
were available but cold." I said, "You then
disliked to perform Tayammum because of
this?" He said, "Yes." (Shaqiq added),
"Abû Mûsa said, 'Haven't you heard the
statement of 'Ammâr to 'Umar? [He
(Ammâr) said:] I was sent out by Allâh's
Messenger for some job and I became Junub
and could not find water so I rolled
myself over the dust (clean earth) like an
animal does, and when I told the Prophet of
that he said, 'Like this would have been
sufficient.' The Prophet (saying so) lightly
stroked the earth with his hand once and blew
it off, then passed his (left) hand over the
back of his right hand or his (right) hand over
the back of his left hand and then passed
them over his face.' So 'Abdullâh said (to
Abû Mûsa), "Don't you know that 'Umar
was not satisfied with 'Ammâr's statement?"

Narrated Shaqiq: While I was with
'Abdullâh and Abû Mûsa, the latter said to
the former, "Haven't you heard the
statement of 'Ammâr to 'Umar? He said,
"Allâh's Messenger sent you and I out, I
became Junub and rolled myself in the dust
(clean earth) (for Tayammum). When we
came to Allâh's Messenger I told him
about it and he said, 'This would have been
sufficient,' passing his hands over his face
and the back of his hands once only.'"

(9) CHAPTER.

348. Narrated 'Imrân bin Husain Al-
Khuzâ'î: Allâh's Messenger saw a person sitting aloof and not offering Salât (prayer) with the people. He asked
him, "O so-and-so! What prevented you
from offering the Salât with the people?"
He replied, “O Allah’s Messenger! I am Junub and there is no water.” The Prophet said, “Perform Tayammum with clean earth and that will be sufficient for you.”
8 – THE BOOK OF AŠ-ŠALĀT (The Prayer)

(1) CHAPTER. How Aš-Šalāt (the prayer) was prescribed on the night of Al-Isrā’ (miraculous night journey) of the Prophet  to Jerusalem (and then to the heavens).

Ibn ‘Abbās said: Abū Sufyān, when telling the narration of Heraclius, mentioned: “The Prophet  ordered us to offer our Salāt (prayers) regularly and to be true and chaste.”

349. Narrated Abū Dhar: Allah’s Messenger  said, “While I was at Makkah, the roof of my house was opened and Jibrīl (Gabriel) descended, opened my chest, and washed it with Zamzam water. Then he brought a golden tray full of wisdom and faith and having poured its contents into my chest, he closed it. Then he took my hand and ascended with me to the nearest heaven, when I reached the nearest heaven, Jibrīl said to the gatekeeper of the heaven, ‘Open (the gate).’ The gatekeeper asked, ‘Who is it?’ Jibrīl answered: ‘Jibrīl.’ He asked, ‘Is there anyone with you?’ Jibrīl replied, ‘Yes, Muhammad  is with me.’ He asked, ‘Has he been called?’ Jibrīl said, ‘Yes.’ So the gate was opened and we went over the nearest heaven and there we saw a man sitting with Āswīdā (a large number of people) on his right and Āswīdā (a large number of people) on his left. When he looked towards his right, he laughed and when he looked toward his left he wept. Then he said, ‘Welcome! O pious Prophet and pious son.’ I asked Jibrīl, ‘Who is he?’ He replied, ‘He is  and the souls of his offspring. Those on his right are the people of Paradise and those on his left are the people of Hell, and when he looked towards his right he laughed and
when he looked towards his left he wept.'

Then he ascended with me till he reached the second heaven and he (Jibrîl) said to its gatekeeper, ‘Open (the gate).’ The gatekeeper said to him the same as the gatekeeper of the first heaven had said, and he opened the gate.

Anas said: “Abû Dhar added that the Prophet met Adam, Idrîs, Müsa (Moses), ‘Iesa (Jesus) and Ibrahim (Abraham) on the second heaven. He (Abû Dhar) did not mention on which heaven they were but he mentioned that he (the Prophet met Adam on the nearest heaven and Ibrahim on the sixth heaven.”

Anas said, “When Jibrîl, along with the Prophet passed by Idrîs, the latter said, ‘Welcome! O pious Prophet and pious brother.’ The Prophet asked, ‘Who is he?’ Jibrîl replied, ‘He is Idrîs’.”

The Prophet added, “I passed by Müsa and he said, ‘Welcome! O pious Prophet and pious brother.’ I asked Jibrîl, ‘Who is he?’ Jibrîl replied, ‘He is Müsa.’ Then I passed by ‘Iesa and he said, ‘Welcome! O pious brother and pious Prophet.’ I asked, ‘Who is he?’ Jibrîl replied, ‘He is ‘Iesa (Jesus)’

Then I passed by Ibrahim and he said, ‘Welcome! O pious Prophet and pious son.’ I asked Jibrîl, ‘Who is he?’ Jibrîl replied, ‘He is Ibrahim’

The Prophet added, “Then Jibrîl ascended with me to a place where I heard the creaking of the pens.”

Ibn Hazm and Anas bin Mâlik said: The Prophet said, ‘Then Allâh enjoined fifty Salât (prayers) on my followers, when I returned with this Order of Allâh, I passed by Müsa who asked me, ‘What has Allâh enjoined on your followers?’ I replied, ‘He has enjoined fifty Salât on them.’ Müsa said, ‘Go back to your Lord (and appeal for
reduction), for your followers will not be able to bear it.' (So, I went back to Allâh and requested for reduction) and He reduced it to half. When I passed by Mûsa again and informed him about it, he said, 'Go back to your Lord as your followers will not be able to bear it.' So I returned to Allâh and requested for further reduction and half of it was reduced. I again passed by Mûsa and he said to me: 'Return to your Lord, for your followers will not be able to bear it.' So I returned to Allâh and He said, 'These are five Salât and they are all (equal to) fifty (in reward) for My Word does not change.' I returned to Mûsa and he told me to go back once again. I replied, 'Now I feel shy of asking my Lord again.' Then Jîbril took me till we reached Sidrat-ul-Muntahâ (lote tree of the utmost boundary) which was shrouded in colours indescribable. Then I was admitted into Paradise where I found small walls (made) of pearls and its earth was of musk (a kind of perfume)."

350. Narrated 'Aishah, the Mother of believers: Allâh enjoined As-Salât (the prayer) when He enjoined it, it was two Rak'a only (in every Salât) both when in residence or during a journey. Then the Salât
offered during a journey remained the same, but (the Rakā of) Salah for non-travellers were increased.

(2) CHAPTER. It is obligatory to wear clothes while offering As-Salāt (the prayers).

And the Statement of Allah تعالى: ‘Take your adornment (by wearing your clean clothes covering completely the Aurah: – [it means, – while offering Salah (prayer), a male must cover himself with clothes from umbilicus of his abdomen up to his knees, and it is better that both his shoulders should be covered. And a female must cover all her body and feet, except face, and it is better that her both hands are also covered.]\(^1\) while praying and going round (the Tawaf of) the Ka’bah (V.7:31).

And offering Salah while wearing a single garment wrapped round the body, Salma bin Al-Akwa’ narrated: The Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم said, “He should pin it, even if with a thorn.”

Offering Salah with the same garment in which one has had sexual intercourse (is permissible) if one does not see anything dirty on it.

The Prophet صلى الله عليه وسلم ordered that no one should go around the Ka’bah (perform Tawaf) in a naked state.

351. Narrated Umm ‘Atiyya: We were ordered to bring out our menstruating women and veiled women in the religious gatherings and invocation of Muslims on the two ’Eid festivals. These menstruating women were to keep away from

---

\(^1\) (Ch.2): See the footnote of Ch.13 before Hadith No.372.
their *Musallā*. A woman asked, “O Allah’s Messenger! What about one who does not have a veil?” He said, “Let her share the veil of her companion.”

(3) CHAPTER. To tie *Izār* (dress worn below the waist) at one’s back while offering *Salāt* (prayers).

Sahl said, “Some people offered *Salāt* (prayer) with the Prophet *saw* with their *Izār* tied to their necks.”

352. Narrated Muḥammad bin Al-Munkadīr: Once Jābir *ra* offered *Salāt* (prayer) with his *Izār* tied to his back while his clothes were lying beside him on a wooden peg. Somebody asked him, “Do you offer your *Salāt* in a single *Izār*?” He replied, “I did so to show it to the one with no sense like you. Had anyone of us two garments in the lifetime of the Prophet *saw*?”

353. Narrated Muḥammad bin Al-Munkadīr: I saw Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh *ra* offering *Salāt* (prayer) in a single garment and he said that he had seen the Prophet *saw* offering *Salāt* in a single garment.
4) CHAPTER. To offer *As-Salát* (the prayers) with a single garment wrapped round the body.

Umm Hāni ʿ said that the Prophet  wrapped his body with a single garment and crossed its ends over his shoulders.


355. Narrated ‘Umar bin Abi Salama  : I saw the Prophet  offering *Salát* (prayer) in a single garment in the house of Umm Salama and he had crossed its ends around his shoulders.

356. Narrated ‘Umar bin Abi Salama  : In the house of Umm Salama, I saw Allāh’s Messenger  offering *Salát* (prayer), wrapped in a single garment around his body with its ends crossed round his shoulders.
357. Narrated Abū Murra, the freed-slave of Umm Hānī, the daughter of Abī Ṭalib said, “I went to Allāh’s Messenger in the year of the conquest of Makkah and found him taking a bath and his daughter Fāṭima was screening him. I greeted him. He asked, ‘Who is she?’ I replied, ‘I am Umm Hānī bint Abī Ṭalib.’ He said, ‘Welcome! O Umm Hānī.’” When he finished his bath he stood up and prayed eight Rak‘a while wearing a single garment (wrapped round his body) and when he finished I said, ‘O Allāh’s Messenger! My brother has told me that he will kill a person whom I gave shelter and that person is so-and-so the son of Hubaira.’ The Prophet said, ‘We shelter the person whom you have sheltered.’”

Umm Hānī added, “And that was before noon (Duḥa).”

358. Narrated Abū Hurairah: A person asked Allāh’s Messenger about the offering of Ṣalāt (the prayer) in a single garment. Allāh’s Messenger replied, “Has everyone of you got two garments?”

(5) CHAPTER. If someone offers Ṣalāt (prayer) wrapped in a single garment, he should cross its corners round his shoulders.

359. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “None of you should
offer *Ṣalāt* (prayer) in a single garment that does not cover one's shoulders.”

360. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever offers *Ṣalāt* (prayer) in a single garment, must cross its ends (over the shoulders).”

(6) CHAPTER. If the garment is tight (over the body).

361. Narrated Sa‘īd bin Al-Hārith: I asked Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh about offering *Ṣalāt* (prayer) in a single garment. He said, “I travelled with the Prophet ﷺ during some of his journeys, and I came to him at night for some purpose and I found him offering *Ṣalāt*. At that time, I was wearing a single garment with which I covered my shoulders and offered *Ṣalāt* by his side. When he finished the *Ṣalāt*, he asked, ‘O Jābir! What has brought you here?’ I told him what I wanted. When I finished, he asked, ‘O Jābir! What is this garment which I have seen and with which you covered your shoulders?’ I replied, ‘It is a (tight) garment.’ He said, ‘If the garment is large enough, wrap it round the body (covering the shoulders) and if it is tight (too short) then use it as an *Izār* (tie it around your waist only).’”

362. Narrated Sahl: The men used to offer *Ṣalāt* (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ.
with their *Izār* (lower-half body-cover sheet) tied around their necks as boys used to do; therefore the Prophet ﷺ told the women not to raise their heads (from prostration) till the men sat down straight (while praying).

(7) CHAPTER. To offer *Aṣ-Ṣalāt* (the prayer) in a Syrian cloak (made by infidels).

Al-Ḥasan said that there was no harm in wearing clothes woven by a Magian. And Maʾmar said that he had seen Az-Zuhārī wearing Yemenite garments dyed with urine. And ‘Alī offered *Ṣalāt* (prayer) in a new unwashed garment.

363. Narrated Mughīra bin Shuʿba رضي الله عنه: Once I was travelling with the Prophet ﷺ and he said, “O Mughira! Take this container of water.” I took it and Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went far away till he disappeared. He answered the call of nature and he was wearing a Syrian cloak. He tried to take out his hands from its sleeve but it was very tight, so he took out his hands from under it. I poured water and he performed ablution like that for *Ṣalāt* (prayer) and passed his (wet) hands over his *Khuff* (leather socks) and then offered *Ṣalāt*.

(8) CHAPTER. It is disliked to be naked during *Aṣ-Ṣalāt* (the prayers).

364. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنه: While Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ was
carrying stones (along) with the people of Makkah for (the building of) the Ka'bah wearing an Izār (waist-sheet, lower-half body-cover), his uncle Al-'Abbas said to him, "O my nephew! (It would be better) if you take off your Izār and put it over your shoulders underneath the stones." So he took off his Izār and put it over his shoulders, but he fell unconscious and since then he had never been seen naked.

(9) CHAPTER. To offer Ṣalāt (prayer) with a shirt, trousers, a Tubbān or a Qabā’ (an outer garment with full length sleeves).

365. Narrated Abū Hurairah ṭabī: A man stood up and asked the Prophet ﷺ about offering Ṣalāt (prayer) in a single garment. The Prophet ﷺ said, “Has every one of you got two garments?” A man put a similar question to ‘Umar; on which he replied, “When Allāh makes you wealthier then you should clothe yourself properly during Ṣalāt. Otherwise one can offer Ṣalāt with an Izār and a Rīdā’ (a sheet covering the upper part of the body), Izār and a shirt, Izār and a Qabā’, trousers and a Rīdā’, trousers and a shirt or trousers and a Qabā’, Tubbān(1) and a Qabā’ or Tubbān and a shirt.” (The narrator added, “I think that he also said a Tubbān and a Rīdā’.”)
366. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: A person asked Allah's Messenger, "What should a Muhrim wear?" He replied, "He should not wear shirts, trousers, a Burans (a hooded cloak), or clothes which are stained with saffron or Wars (a kind of perfume). Whoever does not find a sandal to wear can wear Khuff, but these should be cut short so as not to cover the ankles.

(10) CHAPTER. What may be used to cover the private parts of the body.

367. Narrated Abu Sa'id Al-Khudri: Allah's Messenger forbade Ishitum-as-Samma' (wrapping one's body with a garment so that one cannot raise its end or take one's hand out of it). He also forbade Al-Ihtiba' (sitting on buttocks with knees close to abdomen, and feet apart with the hands circling the knees) while wrapping oneself with a single garment, without having a part of it over the private parts.

368. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet forbade two kinds of sales i.e., Al-Limas and An-Nibadh (the former is a kind of sale in which the deal is completed if the buyer touches a thing, without seeing or checking it properly; and the latter is a kind of sale in which the deal is completed when the seller throws a thing towards the buyer giving him no opportunity to see, touch or
check it) and (the Prophet forbade) also Ishtimãl-As-Samma’ and Al-Itiba’in a single garment.

369. Narrated Abû Hurairah: On the Day of Nahr (10th of Dhul-Ḥijja, in the year prior to the last Ḥajj of the Prophet when Abû Bakr was the leader of the pilgrims in that Ḥajj), Abû Bakr sent me along with other announcers to Minã to make a public announcement (proclaiming): “No Musâhir (polytheist, pagan, idolater and disbeliever in the Oneness of Allâh and in His Messenger Muhammad) is allowed to perform Ḥajj after this year; and no naked person is allowed to perform the Tawaf around the Ka’bah.” Then Allâh’s Messenger sent ‘Ali to read out the Sûrat Barâ’a (At-Tauba) to the people; so he made the announcement along with us on the day of Nahr in Minã: “No Musâhir — (polytheist, pagan, idolater and disbeliever in the Oneness of Allâh and in His Messenger Muhammad) is allowed to perform Ḥajj after this year and no naked person is allowed to perform the Tawaf around the Ka’bah.”

(11) CHAPTER. To pray without a Rida’.

370. Narrated Muḥammad bin Al-Munkadîr: I went to Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh and he was offering Salât (prayer) wrapped in a garment and his Rida’ was lying beside him. When he finished the Salât, I said “O ‘Abdullâh! You offer Salât (in a single garment) while your Rida’ is lying beside you.” He replied, “Yes, I did it intentionally so that the ignorant ones like you might see me. I saw the Prophet offering Salât (prayer) like this.”
(12) CHAPTER. What is said about the thigh.

Narrated Ibn 'Abbâs and Jarhad and Muḥammad bin Jahsh: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The thigh is 'Aurah (i.e., it is illegal to keep it bare).” And Anas bin Mãlik said, “The Prophet ﷺ uncovered his thigh.” The narration of Anas is dependable, but it would be safer to take Jarhad's narration into consideration in order to get rid of the difference between them. Abû Mūsa said, “The Prophet ﷺ covered his knees when 'Uthmân entered.” Zaid bin Thâbit said, “Divine Revelation came to Allah's Messenger ﷺ while his thigh was on my thigh and it became so heavy that I was afraid that it might break my thigh.”

371. Narrated 'Abdul 'Azîz: Anas ﷺ said, “When Allah's Messenger ﷺ invaded Khaibar, we offered the Fajr prayer there (early in the morning) when it was still dark. Allah's Prophet ﷺ rode and Abû Ṭâlîa rode, too, and I was riding behind Abû Ṭâlîa. Allah's Prophet ﷺ passed through the lane of Khaibar quickly and my knee was touching the thigh of Allah's Prophet ﷺ. Then his thigh was uncovered by the shift of his Izar (waist-sheet), and I saw the whiteness of the thigh of Allah's Prophet ﷺ. When he entered the town, he said, 'Allâhu Akbar! Khaibar is ruined. Whenever we approach near a (hostile) nation (to fight) then evil will be the morning of those who have been warned.' He repeated this thrice. The people came out for their jobs and some of them said, 'Muḥammad (has come) along with his army.' We conquered Khaibar, (took the captives), and the booty was collected. Dihya came and said, 'O Allah's Prophet! Give me a slave-girl from the captives.' The Prophet...
said, 'Go and take any slave-girl.' He took Safiyya bint Huyal. A man came to the Prophet ﷺ and said, 'O Allah's Messenger! You gave Safiyya bint Huyal to Dihya and she is the chief-mistress of (the ladies) of the tribes of Quraiza and An-Nadir, she befits none but you.' So the Prophet ﷺ said, 'Bring him along with her.' So Dihya came with her and when the Prophet ﷺ saw her, he said to Dihya, 'Take any slave-girl other than her from the captives.'”

Anas added: The Prophet ﷺ then manumitted her and married her.

Thabit asked Anas, “O Abū Ḥamza! What did the Prophet ﷺ pay her (as Mahr)?” He said, “She herself was her Mahr for he ﷺ manumitted her and then married her.” Anas added, “While on the way, Umm Sulaim dressed her for marriage (ceremony) and at night she sent her as a bride to the Prophet ﷺ. So, the Prophet ﷺ was a bridegroom and he said, ‘Whoever has anything (food) should bring it.’ He spread out a leather sheet (for the food) and some brought dates and others cooking butter. [I think he (Anas) mentioned As-Sawiq]. So they prepared a dish of Hais (a kind of meal). And that was Walima (the marriage banquet) of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ.”
8. THE BOOK OF AS-SALĀT (The Prayer)

(13) CHAPTER. In how many (what sort of) clothes a woman should offer Šalāt (prayer).

‘Ikrima said, “If she can cover all her body with one garment, it is sufficient.”

372. Narrated ‘Aishah رضی الله عنها: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer the Fajr prayer and some believing women covered with their veiling sheets used to attend the Fajr prayer with him and then they would return to their homes unrecognized.

(14) CHAPTER. If a person offered Šalāt (prayer) in a dress with marks and looked at those marks during the Šalāt.

373. Narrated ‘Aishah رضی الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ offered Šalāt (prayer) in a Khāmiṣa (a square garment) having marks. During the Šalāt, he looked at its marks. So, when he finished the Šalāt he said, “Take this Khāmiṣa of mine to Abū Jahl and get me his Anbijāniyya (a woolen garment without marks) as it (the Khāmiṣa) has diverted my attention from the Šalāt.”

Narrated ‘Aishah رضی الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ said, ‘I was looking at its (Khāmiṣa’s) marks during the Šalāt (prayer) and I was afraid that it may put me in trial (by diverting my attention).

(1) (Ch.13) It is agreed by the majority of the religious scholars that a woman while offering Šalāt (prayer) should cover herself completely except her face, and it is better that she should cover her hands with gloves or cloth etc., but her feet must be covered either with a long dress or she must wear socks to cover her feet. This verdict is based on the Prophet’s statement (Abū-Dawūd).
(15) CHAPTER. If someone offers Salāt (prayer) in a garment bearing marks of a cross or pictures, will the Salāt be annulled? And what is forbidden thereof.

374. Narrated Anas: 'Āishah ṭārīqī allah ẓārīqī allah had a Qirām (a thin, marked woolen curtain) with which she had screened one side of her home. The Prophet ṣallallāhu 'alayhi wa sallam said, “Take away this Qirām of yours, as its pictures are still displayed in front of me during my Salāt (prayer) (i.e., they divert my attention from the Salāt).”

(16) CHAPTER. Whoever offered Salāt (prayer) in a silk Farrūj (an outer garment opened at the back) and then took it off.

375. Narrated 'Uqba bin 'Amir: The Prophet ṣallallāhu 'alayhi wa sallam was given a silken Farrūj as a present. He wore it while offering Salāt. When he had finished his Salāt (prayer), he took it off violently as if with a strong aversion to it and said, “It is not the dress of Al-Muttaqun: [Al-Muttaqun means those pious and righteous persons who fear Allāh much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allāh much (do all kinds of good deeds which He has ordered)].

(17) CHAPTER. (It is permissible) to offer Salāt (prayer) in a red garment.

376. Narrated Abū Juḥaifa: I saw Allāh’s Messenger ṣallallāhu 'alayhi wa sallam in a red leather tent and I saw...
Bilāl taking the remaining water with which the Prophet had performed ablution. I saw the people taking the utilized water impatiently and whoever got some of it, rubbed it on his body and those who could not get any, took the moisture from the others’ hands. Then I saw Bilāl carrying an ‘Anaza (a spear-headed stick) which he planted in the ground. The Prophet came out tucking up his red cloak, and led the people in Salāt (prayer) and offered two Bak’ā (facing the Ka’bah) taking ‘Anaza as a Sutra for his Salāt. I saw the people and animals passing in front of him beyond the ‘Anaza.

(18) CHAPTER. (It is permissible) to offer Salāt (prayer) on roofs, a pulpit or wood.

Al-Ḥasan finds no objection for one to offer Salāt (prayer) over snow or bridges, even if urine were flowing underneath, or over, or in front of them as long as there was a Sutra (any object put in front of the praying person to act as symbolic barrier between him and others) in front of the person. Abū Hurairah Ṭabīṭibī al-ḥanāfī offered Salāt on the roof of the mosque with the Imam, and Ibn ‘Umar offered Salāt on snow.

377. Narrated Abu Ḥazīm: Sahl bin Sa’d was asked about the (Prophet’s) pulpit as to what thing it was made of? Sahl replied, “None remains alive amongst the people, who knows about it better than I. It was made of tamarisk (wood) of the forest. So-and-so, the slave of so-and-so prepared it for Allah’s Messenger. When it was constructed and placed (in the mosque), Allah’s Messenger
stood on it facing the Qiblah and said 'Allāhu 'Akbar', and the people stood behind him [and he led the people in Salāt (prayer)]. He recited and bowed and the people bowed behind him. Then he raised his head and stepped back, got down and prostrated on the ground and then he again ascended the pulpit, recited, bowed, raised his head and stepped back, got down and prostrated on the ground. So, this is what I know about the pulpit."

Aḥmad bin Ḥanbal said, "As the Prophet was at a higher level than the people, there is no harm according to the above-mentioned Hadīth if the Imām is at a higher level than his followers during the prayers."

378. Narrated Anas bin Malik:

Once Allah's Messenger fell off a horse and his leg or shoulder got injured. He swore that he would not go to his wives for one month and he stayed in a Maṣhruba (attic room) having stairs made of date palm trunks. So his Companions came to visit him, and he led them in Salāt (prayer) sitting, whereas his Companions were standing. When he finished the Salāt, he said, "Imām is meant to be followed, so when he says Allāhu 'Akbar, say Allāhu 'Akbar and when he bows, bow and when he prostrates, prostrate

(1) [This order is abrogated by the last action of the Prophet when he offered Salāt (prayer) sitting while his Companions (followers) were praying standing. Please see Hadīth No. 689.].
and if he offers \textit{Salât} standing offer \textit{Salât} standing\(^{(1)}\). After the 29th day the Prophet \(\text{ﷺ}\) came down (from the attic room) and the people asked him, “O Allah’s Messenger! You swore that you will not go to your wives for one month.” He said, “The month is of 29 days.”

\textbf{(19) CHAPTER. If the clothes of a praying person in prostration touched his wife [would that make his \textit{Salât} (prayer) invalid]?

379. Narrated Maimūna: “Allah’s Messenger \(\text{ﷺ}\) was offering \textit{Salât} (prayer) while I was sitting beside him during my menses and sometimes his clothes would touch me during his prostration.”

Maimūna added, “He prayed on a \textit{Khumra} (a small mat hardly sufficient for the face and the hands, while prostrating during \textit{Salât})."
with water as it had become dark because of prolong use and Allah's Messenger ﷺ stood on it. The orphan and I aligned behind him and the old lady (Mulaika) stood behind us. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ led us in the Salãt and offered two Rak’a and then left.”

(21) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) on a Khumra (a small mat, hardly sufficient for the face and hands while prostrating during Salat).

381. Narrated Maimuna رضي الله عنها, “Allah's Messenger ﷺ used to offer As-Salat (the prayer) on a Khumra.

(22) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salat (the prayer) on the bed.

Anas offered Salat (prayer) on his bed. Anas said: We used to offer As-Salat (the prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and prostrate on our clothes.

382. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها (the wife of the Prophet ﷺ): I used to sleep in front of Allah's Messenger ﷺ and my legs were opposite his Qiblah and in prostration he pushed my legs and I withdrew them and when he stood, I stretched them. ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها added, “In those days the houses were without lights.”
383. Narrated 'Āishah رضي الله عنها: Allāh's Messenger ﷺ offered Salāt (prayer) while I was lying like a dead body on his family bed between him and his Qiblah.

384. Narrated 'Urwa: The Prophet ﷺ offered Salāt (prayer) while 'Āishah رضي الله عنها was lying between him and his Qiblah on the bed on which they used to sleep.

(23) CHAPTER. To prostrate on a garment in scorching heat.

Al-Ḥasan said: People used to prostrate on their turbans and head-covers with their hands in their sleeves (because of scorching heat).

385. Narrated Anas bin Mālik رضي الله عنه: We used to offer Salāt (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and some of us used to place the ends of their clothes at the place of prostration because of scorching heat.
(24) CHAPTER. To offer \textit{Salāt} (prayer) with the shoes on.

386. Narrated Abū Maslama Sa‘īd bin Yazid Al-Azdi saying: I asked Anas bin Mālik whether the Prophet ﷺ had ever offered \textit{Salāt} (prayer) with his shoes on. He replied, “Yes.”

(25) CHAPTER. To offer \textit{Aṣ-Ṣalāt} (prayer) wearing \textit{Khuff} (leather socks).

387. Narrated Ibrāhīm: Hammām bin Al-Hārith said, “I saw Jarīr bin ‘Abdullāh passing urine and then he performed ablution and passed his (wet) hands over his \textit{Khuffain} (two leather-socks), stood up and offered \textit{Salāt} (prayer). He was asked about it. He replied that he had seen the Prophet ﷺ doing the same.” They approved of this narration as Jarīr was one of those who embraced Islam very late.

388. Narrated Al-Mughīra bin Shu‘ba: I helped the Prophet ﷺ in performing ablution and he passed his (wet) hands over his \textit{Khuffain} (two leather-socks) and prayed.

(26) CHAPTER. If some one does not prostrate properly.
389. Narrated Ḥudhaifa that he saw a person bowing and prostrating imperfectly. When he finished his Salāt (prayer), Ḥudhaifa told him that he had not offered Salāt. The subnarrator added, “I think that Ḥudhaifa also said: Were you to die you would die on a “Sunna” (legal way) other than that of Muḥammad ﷺ.”

(27) CHAPTER. During prostrations one should show his armpits and separate his forearms from his body.

390. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Mālik bin Buhaina, “Whenever the Prophet ﷺ offered Salāt (prayer) (during prostration), he used to separate his arms from his body so widely that the whiteness of his armpits was visible.”

(28) CHAPTER. Superiority of (praying) facing the Qiblah with the toes toward it as well.

Abū Ḥumaid said that referring to what the Prophet ﷺ said or used to do.

391. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever offers Salāt (prayer) like us and faces our Qiblah (Ka’bah at Makkah during Salāt and eats our slaughtered animals, is a Muslim and is under Allah’s and His Messenger’s Protection. So do not betray Allah by betraying those who are in His Protection.”
392. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, "I have been ordered to fight the people till they say: "Lā ilāha illallah" (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh). And if they say so, offer prayers like our Salāt (prayers), face our Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah during prayer) and slaughter as we slaughter, then their blood and property will be sacred to us, and we will not interfere with them except legally and their reckoning will be with Allāh."

393. Narrated Maimūn bin Siyāh that he asked Anas bin Malik, "O Abī Hamza! What makes the life and property of a person sacred?" He replied, "Whoever says: "Lā ilāha illallah" (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh), faces our Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah) during the prayers, offers prayers like us and eats our slaughtered animal, then he is a Muslim, and has got the same rights and obligations as other Muslims have."

(29) CHAPTER. The Qiblah for the people of Al-Madīna, Shām and the East.

The Qiblah is neither to the East nor to the West (for the people of Al-Madīna) as the Prophet ﷺ said (to them), "Do not face
Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah) during defecation and urination (in an open space). Face either east or west.”

394. Narrated Abū Ayyūb Al-Anṣārī: The Prophet ﷺ said, “While defecating, neither face nor turn your back to the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah) but face either east or west.” Abū Ayyūb added, “When we arrived in Sham we came across some lavatories facing the Qiblah; therefore we turned ourselves while using them and asked for Allah's forgiveness.”

395. Narrated 'Amr bin Dīnār: I asked Ibn ‘Umar, “Can a person who has performed the Tawāf around the Ka'bah for 'Umra but has not performed the Tawāf [Sa'y (going)] of Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa, have a sexual relation with his wife?” Ibn ‘Umar replied, “When the Prophet ﷺ reached Makkah he performed the Tawāf around the Ka'bah (circumambulated it seven times) and offered a two Rakʿā Salāt (prayer) (at the place) behind the Maqām [place of Ibrāhīm (Abraham)] and then performed the Tawāf.
[Sa’y (going)] of Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa, and verily in Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ you have a good example to follow…"

396. Then we put the same question (as in the above Hadith No.395) to Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh and he too replied, “He should not go near his wife (for sexual relation) till he has finished the Tawâf [Sa’y (going)] of Aṣ-Ṣafâ and Al-Marwa.”

397. Narrated Mujâhid: Someone came to Ibn ‘Umar and said, “Here is Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ entering the Ka’bah.” Ibn ‘Umar said, “I went there but the Prophet ﷺ had come out of the Ka’bah and I found Bilâl standing between its two doors. I asked Bilâl, ‘Did the Prophet ﷺ offered Salât (prayer) in the Ka’bah?’ Bilâl replied, ‘Yes, he prayed two Rak’à between the two pillars which are to your left on entering the Ka’bah. Then Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ came out and offered a two Rak’à Salât facing the Ka’bah.’"

398. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: When the Prophet ﷺ entered the Ka’bah, he invoked Allâh in each and every side of it and did not offer Salât (prayer) till he came out of it, and offered a two Rak’à prayer facing the Ka’bah and said, “This is the Qiblah.”(1)

(1) (H. 398) The direction in which all Muslims turn their faces in Salât (prayers) and that direction is towards the Ka’bah in Makkah (Saudi Arabia). The narration of Bilâl (Hadith No.397) is more authentic as Ibn Abbâs did not enter the Ka’bah with the Prophet ﷺ but narrates the episode from another Companion.
(31) CHAPTER. [During the obligatory \textit{\text{Salāt}} (prayers)] one should face the \textit{Qiblah} (Ka'bah at Makkah) wherever one may be.

Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet 

 قال: "Face the \textit{Qiblah} (Ka'bah at Makkah) and say \textit{Allāhu Akbar}.

399. Narrated Barā' bin 'Āzib: Allah's Messenger 

proposed \textit{Salāt} (prayer) facing Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem) for sixteen or seventeen months but he loved to face the Ka'bah (at Makkah) so Allah revealed: "Verily! We have seen the turning of your (Muḥammad's) face towards the heaven..." (V.2:144) So the Prophet faced the Ka'bah and the fools amongst the people namely, the Jews said, "What has turned them from their \textit{Qiblah} (prayer direction (towards Jerusalem) — Bait-ul-Maqdis) to which they used to face in prayer?" (Allāh revealed): "...Say (O Muḥammad): 'To Allah belong both, east and the west. He guides whom He wills to the straight path.' " (V.2:142)

A man offered \textit{Salāt} with the Prophet (facing the Ka'bah) and went out. He saw some of the \textit{Anṣār} offering the \textit{Aṣr} prayer with their faces towards Bait-ul-Maqdis, he said, "I bear witness that I offered \textit{Salāt} with Allāh's Messenger facing the Ka'bah." So all the people turned their faces towards the Ka'bah (at Makkah).

400. Narrated Jābir: Allah's Messenger 

used to offer \textit{Salāt} (prayer)
(optional, non-obligatory prayer) while riding on his mount (Râhilu) wherever it turned, and whenever he wanted to offer the compulsory Salâh he dismounted and prayed facing the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah).

401. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Abbâs: The Prophet Ó offered Salât (prayer) (and the subnarrator Ibrâhîm said, “I do not know whether he prayed more or less than usual”), and when he had finished Salât he was asked, “O Allah’s Messenger Ó! Has there been any change in the As-Salat (the prayers)?” He said, “What is it?” The people said, “You have prayed so much and so much.” So the Prophet Ó bent his legs, faced the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah) and performed two prostrations (of Sahw) and finished his prayers with Taslim (by turning his face to right and left saying: ‘As-Salâmû ‘Alâikaum-wa Rahmat-ul-llah’). When he turned his face to us he said, “If there had been anything changed in Salât, surely I would have informed you; but I am a human being like you and liable to forget like you. So if I forget remind me and if anyone of you is doubtful about his Salát, he should follow what he thinks to be correct and complete his Salat accordingly and finish it and perform two prostrations (of Sahw).”

(32) CHAPTER. What has been said about (facing) the Qiblah (Ka’bah at Makkah) and whoever considered that there was no need to repeat the Salât (prayer) if someone offered prayers by mistake facing a direction other than that of the Qiblah.

When the Prophet Ó did Taslim after offering two Rak‘a of Zuhr prayer he then
faced the people and then completed the rest of the prayer.

402. Narrated `Umar (bin Al-Khaṭṭāb): My Lord agreed (accepted my invocation) with me in three things:
1. I said, “O Allah’s Messenger, I wish we took the “Maqâm” (place) of Ibrāhîm (Abraham) as our praying place [for some of our ʿSalât (prayers)]. So came the Divine Revelation: ...And take you (people) the Maqâm (place) of Ibrâhîm (Abraham) (or the stone on which Ibrahim stood while he was building the Ka’bah) as a place of prayer (for some of your prayers e.g., two Rak’â after the Ṭawāf of Ka’bah)”. (V.2:125)
2. And as regards the (Verse of) the veiling of the women, I said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! I wish you ordered your wives to cover themselves from the men because good and bad ones talk to them.’ So the Verse of the veiling of the women was revealed. [V.24:31 and V.33:59]
3. Once the wives of the Prophet made united front against the Prophet and I said to them, It may be if he (the Prophet) divorced you, (all) that his Lord (Allah) will give him instead of you wives better than you.’ So this Verse [(V.66:5) the same as I had said] was revealed.”

403. Narrated `Abdullâh bin `Umar: While the people were offering the Fajr prayer at Qubâ (near Al-Madîna), someone came to them and said: “It has been revealed to Allah's Messenger tonight, and he has been ordered to offer prayer facing the Ka’bah. So turn your faces to the Ka’bah.” Those people were facing Sham (Jerusalem) so they turned their faces towards Ka’bah (at Makkah).
404. Narrated 'Abdullãh: Once the Prophet offered five Rakã in Zuhr prayer. He was asked, “Is there an increase in the (Rakã) of Salàt (prayers)?” The Prophet said, “And what is it?” They said, “You have offered five Rakã.” So he bent his legs and performed two prostrations (of Sâhin).

33) CHAPTER. To scrape off the sputum from the mosque with the hand (using some tool or other, or using no tool).

405. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet saw some sputum in the direction of the Qiblah (on the wall of the mosque) and he disliked that and the sign of disgust was apparent from his face. So, he got up and scraped it off with his hand and said, “Whenever anyone of you stands for the Salàt (prayer), he is speaking in private to his Lord, or his Lord is between him and his Qiblah. So, none of you should spit in the direction of the Qiblah but one can spit to the left or under his foot.” The Prophet then took the corner of his sheet and spat in it and folded it and said, “Or you can do like this.”

406. Narrated 'Abdullãh bin 'Umar: Allah’s Messenger saw sputum on the wall of the mosque in the direction of the Qiblah and scraped it off. He faced the people and said, “Whenever anyone of you is
offering Salāt (prayers), he should not spit in front of him because in the prayer Allāh is in front of him.”

407. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها, the Mother of faithful believers: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saw some nasal secretions, expectoration or sputum on the wall of the mosque in the direction of the Qiblah and scraped it off.

(34) CHAPTER. To scrape the nasal secretion off the mosque with gravel.

And Ibn ‘Abbās said, “If you tread on (any) wet, filthy thing, wash it away and if it is dry don’t wash it.”

408, 409. Narrated Abū Hurairah and Abū Sa‘īd رضي الله عنهم: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saw some expectoration on the wall of the mosque; he took gravel and scraped it off and said, “If anyone of you wanted to spit he should neither spit in front of him nor on his right but he could spit either on his left or under his left foot.”

(35) CHAPTER. It is forbidden to spit on the right side while in Salāt (prayers).
410, 411. Narrated Abū Hurairah and Abū Sa‘īd: Allāh’s Messenger  saw some expectoration on the wall of the mosque; he took gravel and scraped it off and said, “If anyone of you wanted to spit, he should neither spit in front of him nor on his right but could spit either on his left or under his left foot.”

412. Narrated Anas: The Prophet  said, “None of you should spit in front or on his right but he could spit either on his left or under his foot.”

(36) CHAPTER. One should spit on the left side or under one’s left foot.

413. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet  said, “A faithful believer while in Ḥusn al-Da‘wah (the prayer) is speaking in private to his Lord, so he should neither spit in front of him nor to his right side but he could spit either on his left or under his foot.”

414. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd: The Prophet  saw sputum on (the wall of) the mosque in the direction of the Qiblah and
scraped it off with gravel. Then he forbade spitting in front or on the right, but allowed it on one’s left or under one’s left foot.

(37) CHAPTER. The expiation for spitting in the mosque.

415. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet said, “Spitting in the mosque is a sin and its expiation is to bury it.”

416. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet said, “If anyone of you stands for As-Salât (the prayers), he should not spit in front of him because, in Salât (prayer) he is speaking in private to Allāh and he should not spit on his right as there is an angel, but he can spit either on his left or under his foot and bury it (i.e., the expectoration).”

(38) CHAPTER. The burying of the expectoration in the mosque.

417. Narrated Anas: The Prophet saw expectoration (on the wall...
of the mosque) in the direction of the Qiblah and scraped it off with his hand. It seemed that he disliked it and the sign of disgust was apparent from his face. He said, "If anyone of you stands for offering prayer, he is speaking in private to his Lord, (or) his Lord is between him and his Qiblah, therefore he should not spit towards his Qiblah, but he could spit either on his left or under his foot." Then he took the corner of his sheet and spat in it, folded it and said, "Or do like this."

(40) CHAPTER. Preaching of the Imâm to the people regarding the proper offering of As-SaThi (the prayer) and the mention of the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah).

418. Narrated Abu Hurairah

Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, "Do you consider or see that my face is towards the Qiblah (Ka'bah at Makkah)? By Allah, neither your submissiveness nor your bowing is hidden from me, surely I see you from my back."

419. Narrated Anas bin Malik

The Prophet ﷺ led us in a Salât (prayer) and then got up on the pulpit and said, "In your Salât and Rukû' (bowing), I certainly see you from my back as I see you (while looking at you.)"
420. Narrated 'Abdulläh bin ‘Umar: Allah's Messenger ﷺ ordered for a horse race; the trained horses were to run from a place called Al-Ḥafyā’ to Thaniyat-ul-Wadā’ and the horses which were not trained were to run from Ath-Thaniya to the Masjid (mosque of) Bani Zuraiq. The subnarrator added: Ibn ‘Umar was one of those who took part in the race.

421. Narrated Anas: Some goods (or wealth) was brought to Allah's Messenger ﷺ from Bahrain. The Prophet ﷺ ordered the people to spread them in the mosque — it was the biggest amount of goods (or wealth) Allah's Messenger ﷺ had ever received. He left for As-Salāt (the prayer) and did not even look at it. After finishing As-Salāt, he sat by those goods (or wealth) and gave from those to everybody he saw. Al-‘Abbās came to him and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Give me (something) too, because I gave ransom for myself and ‘Aqil.” Allah's Messenger ﷺ told him to take. So, he stuffed his garment with it and tried to carry it away but he failed to do so. He said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Order someone to help me in lifting it.” The
Prophet ﷺ refused. He then said to the Prophet ﷺ: “Will you please help me to lift it?” Allah’s Messenger ﷺ refused. Then Al’Abbãs threw some of it and tried to lift it (but failed). He again said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Order someone to help me to lift it.” He refused. Al’Abbãs then said to the Prophet ﷺ: “Will you please help me to lift it?” He ﷺ again refused. Then Al-‘Abbãs threw some of it, and lifted it on his shoulders and went away. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ kept on watching him till he disappeared from his sight and was astonished at his greediness. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ did not get up till the last coin was distributed.

(43) CHAPTER. Receiving an invitation to dinner in the mosque and accepting it.

422. Narrated Anas ﷺ: I found the Prophet ﷺ in the mosque along with some people. He said to me, “Did Abu Talba sent you?” I said, “Yes”. He said, “For a meal?” I said, “Yes.” Then he said to his Companions, “Get up.” They set out and I was ahead of them.

(44) CHAPTER. To give the judicial verdicts in the mosque and to perform the Al-Li’an(1)

(1) (Ch.44) An oath which is taken by both the wife and the husband when he accuses his wife of committing illegal sexual intercourse. (The Qur’a’n, Sûrat An-Nûr (24), Verses, 6-9).
between men and women (husbands and wives) there.

423.Narrated Sahil bin Sa'd: A man said, “O Allah’s Messenger! If a man finds another man with his wife (committing adultery), should the husband kill him?” Later on I saw them (the man and his wife) doing *Li’ān* in the mosque.

(45) CHAPTER. If someone enters a house, should he offer prayers where he likes, or as he is told? And he should not look out to seek information about the place or do spying.

424. Narrated ‘Itbān bin Mālik: The Prophet ﷺ came to my house and said, “Where do you like me to offer *Salāt* (prayers)?” I pointed to a place. The Prophet ﷺ then said, *Allāhu-Akbar*, and we aligned behind him and he offered a two Rak‘ā prayer.

(46) CHAPTER. About (taking) the mosques in the houses.

And Al-Barā’ bin ‘Āzib offered *Salāt* (prayers) in the mosque in his house with other people in congregation.
425. Narrated 'Itbân bin Mãlik who was one of the Companions of Allâh's Messenger and one of the Ansâr who took part in the battle of Badr: I came to Allâh's Messenger and said, "O Allâh's Messenger, I have weak eyesight and I lead my people in Salât (prayers). When it rains the water flows in the valley between me and my people so I cannot go to their mosque to lead them in Salât. O Allâh's Messenger! I wish you would come to my house and offer Salât in it so that I could take that place as a Musâllâ (appointed place for Salât)." Allâh's Messenger said, "If Allah will, I will do so." Next day after the sun rose high, Allâh's Messenger and Abû Bakr came and Allâh's Messenger asked for permission to enter. I gave him permission and he did not sit on entering the house but said to me, "Where do you like me to offer Salât?" I pointed to a place in my house. So Allâh's Messenger stood there and said Allâhu Akbar, and we all got up and aligned behind him and offered a two-Rak'a prayer and ended it with Tasâlim. We requested him to stay for a meal called Khażira which we had prepared for him. Many members of our family gathered in the house and one of them said, "Where is Malik bin Ad-Dukhaishin or Ibn Ad-Dukhshun?" One of them replied, "He is a hypocrite and does not love Allâh and His Messenger." Hearing that, Allâh's Messenger said, "Do not say so. Haven't you seen that he said, "La ilâha illallâh" (none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh), for seeking Allah's Countenance (i.e. for Allâh's sake only)?" He said, "Allâh and His Messenger know better. We have seen him helping and advising hypocrites."

Allâh's Messenger said, "Allâh has forbidden the (Hell) fire for those who say "La ilâha illallâh" (none has the right to be
worshipped but Allâh) for seeking Allâh’s Countenance (i.e. for Allâh’s sake only)."

(47) CHAPTER. While entering the mosque etc., one should start with the right foot.

And ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar used to enter the mosque by putting in his right foot first and while leaving he used to put out his left foot first.

426. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet ﷺ used to start every thing from the right (side) whenever it was possible in all his affairs; for example: in washing, combing or wearing shoes.

(48) CHAPTER. Is it permissible to dig the graves of pagans of the Period of Ignorance, and to use that place as a mosque?

And the saying of the Prophet ﷺ “Allâh cursed the Jews because they built the places of worship at the graves of their Prophets.”
And what is said regarding the disapproval of offering Salah (prayers) at graves. And 'Umar saw Anas bin Malik offering Salah at a grave and shouted, “The grave! The grave!! (meaning: Do not offer Salah there).” But he did not order him to repeat his Salah.

427. Narrated 'Aishah: Umm Habiba and Umm Salama mentioned about a church they had seen in Ethiopia in which there were pictures. They told the Prophet about it, on which he said, “If any religious man dies amongst those people they would build a place of worship at his grave and make these pictures in it. They will be the worst creature with Allah on the Day of Resurrection.”

428. Narrated Anas: When the Prophet arrived at Al-Madina, he dismounted at the upper side of Al-Madina amongst the tribe called Banu 'Amr bin 'Auf. He stayed there for fourteen nights. Then he sent for Bani An-Najjar and they came armed with their swords. As if I am looking (just now) as the Prophet was sitting over his Rahila (mount) with Abu Bakr riding behind him, and all Banu An-Najjar around him till he dismounted at the courtyard of Abu Aiyub’s house. The Prophet loved to offer Salah (prayer) wherever the time for Salah was due even at sheep-folds. Later on he ordered that a mosque should be built and sent for some people of Banu An-Najjar and said, “O Banu An-Najjar! Suggest to me the price of this (walled) piece of land of yours.” They replied, “No! By Allah! We do not demand its price except from Allah.”

Anas added: There were graves of pagans
in it and some of it was unlevelled and there were some date-palm trees in it. The Prophet ﷺ ordered that the graves of the pagans be dug out and the unlevelled land be levelled and the date-palm trees be cut down. (So all that was done). They aligned these cut date-palm trees towards the Qiblah of the mosque (as a wall) and they also built two stone side-walls (of the mosque). His Companions brought the stones while reciting some poetic verses. The Prophet ﷺ was with them and he kept on saying, “There is no goodness except that of the Hereafter, O Allah! So please forgive the Ansâr and Al-Muhâjirah (the emigrants).”

(49) CHAPTER. To offer Aṣ-Ṣalât (the prayer) in a sheep-fold.


(50) CHAPTER. To offer Aṣ-Ṣalât (the prayer) in the camel-yards (the places where the camels are stationed).

430. Narrated Nâfi’ : I saw Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما offering Ṣalât (prayer) while taking his camel (as a Sutra) in front of him and he said, “I saw the Prophet ﷺ doing the same.”

(51) CHAPTER. Whoever offered Ṣalât (prayer) with furnace or fire or any other
worshipable thing in front of him but he intended Ṣalāt solely for Allāh.

Az-Zuhri narrated that Anas said that the Prophet ﷺ said: "While I was offering Ṣalāt (prayer), the (Hell) Fire was displayed in front of me."

431. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهما: The sun eclipsed and Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ offered the eclipse prayer and said, “I have been shown the (Hell) Fire (now) and I never saw a worse and horrible sight than the sight I have seen today.”

(52) CHAPTER. The dislikeliness of offering As-Salāt (the prayers) in grave-yards.

432. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Offer some of your Ṣalāt (prayers) (Nawāfil) at home, and do not take your houses as graves.”

(53) CHAPTER. (What is said about) offering Ṣalāt (prayer) at the places where the earth had sunk down and Allāh’s punishment had fallen.

It is said that ‘Alī رضي الله عنه disliked offering As-Salāt (the prayers) in the land of Babylon which had sunk down.

433. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنه: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Do not enter (the places) of those people where Allāh’s punishment had fallen unless you do so weeping. If you do not weep, do not enter
(the places of these people) because Allâh’s Curse and punishment which fell upon them may fall upon you.”

(54) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salât (the prayer) in a church or in a temple etc.

‘Umar 

Abridged Edition of the Holy Qur’an, by Muhammad M. Dababneh

434. Narrated ‘Aishah: Umm Salama told Allâh’s Messenger about a church which she had seen in Ethiopia and which was called Mariya. She told him about the pictures which she had seen in it. Allâh’s Messenger said, “If any righteous pious man dies amongst them, they would build a place of worship at his grave and make these pictures in it; they are the worst creatures with Allâh.”

(55) CHAPTER.

435, 436. Narrated ‘Aishah and ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Abbâs: When the last moment of the life of Allâh’s Messenger came, he started putting his ‘Khamisa’ (a woolen blanket) on his face and when he felt hot and short of breath he took it off his face and said, “May Allâh curse the Jews and Christians, for they built the places of
worship at the graves of their Prophets.”

[The Prophet was warning (Muslims) of what those people had done].

437. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “May Allah’s Curse be on the Jews, for, they built the places of worship at the graves of their Prophets.”

(56) CHAPTER. The saying of the Prophet , “The earth has been made for me a Masjid (place for praying) and a thing to purify (to perform Tayammum).”

438. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: Allah’s Messenger said, “I have been given five (things) which were not given to any amongst the Prophets before me. These are:

1. Allah made me victorious by awe (by His frightening my enemies) for a distance of one month’s journey.
2. The earth has been made for me (and for my followers) a Masjid (place for praying) and a thing to purify (perform Tayammum). Therefore anyone of my followers can offer prayers wherever he is, at the time of a Salāt (prayer).
3. The booty has been made Halāl (lawful) to me (and was not made so to anyone else).
4. Every Prophet used to be sent to his nation only but I have been sent to all mankind.
5. I have been given the right of intercession
(on the Day of Resurrection.)"

(57) CHAPTER. Sleeping of a woman in the
mosque (and residing in it).

439. Narrated 'Aishah: There was a black slave-girl belonging to an Arab tribe and they manumitted her but she remained with them. The slave-girl said, "Once one of their girls (of that tribe) came out wearing a red leather scarf decorated with precious stones. It fell off from her or she placed it somewhere. A kite passed by that place, saw it lying there and mistaking it for a piece of meat, flew away with it. Those people searched for it but they did not find it. So, they accused me of stealing it and started searching me and even searched my private parts." The slave-girl further said, "By Allah! While I was standing (in that state) with those people, the same kite passed by them and dropped the red scarf and it fell amongst them. I told them, 'This is what you accused me of stealing and I was innocent and now here it is.'" 'Aishah added: That slave-girl came to Allah's Messenger and embraced Islām. She had a tent or a small room with a low roof in the mosque. Whenever she called on me, she had a talk with me and whenever she sat with me, she would recite the following: "The day of the scarf (band) was one of the wonders of our Lord, verily, He rescued me from the unbelievers' town." 'Aishah added: "Once I asked her, 'What is the matter with you? Whenever you sit with me, you always recite these poetic verses.' On that she told me the whole story."
(58) CHAPTER. Sleeping of men in the mosque.

And narrated Anas, “Some people of the tribe of ‘Ukl came to the Prophet ﷺ and joined the men of As- Suffa.” ‘Abdul Rahman bin Abi Bakr said, “Ashab-as-Suffa (Suffa companions) were poor people.”

440. Narrated Nafi’: ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar said: I used to sleep in the mosque of the Prophet ﷺ while I was young and unmarried.

441. Narrated Sahl bin Sa’d: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went to Fātimah’s house but did not find ‘Ali there. So he asked, “Where is your cousin?” She replied, “There was something between us and he got angry with me and went out. He did not sleep (midday nap) in the house.” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ asked a person to look for him. That person came and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! He (‘Ali) is sleeping in the mosque.” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went there and ‘Ali was lying. His Rida (a garment covering the upper part of the body) had fallen down to one side of his body and he was covered with dust. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ started cleaning the dust from him saying: “Get up! O ‘Abā Turāb. Get up! O ‘Abā Turāb (literally means: O father of dust).”
442. Narrated Abū Hurairah: I saw seventy of Ḥūṣayn ibn ʿAlī’s men and none of them had a *RIDĀ* (a garment covering the upper part of the body). They had either *IZĀR* (only) or sheets which they tied round their necks. Some of these sheets reached the middle of their legs and some reached their heels and they used to gather them (sheets) with their hands lest their private parts should become bare.

(59) CHAPTER. To offer Ṭṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) when returning from a journey.

Ka‘b bin Mālik said: “Whenever the Prophet  returned from a journey, he entered the mosque and offered prayers in it.”

443. Narrated Jābir ibn ʿAbdullāh: I went to the Prophet  in the mosque (the subnarrator Mis‘ar thought that Jābir said, “In the forenoon.”) He ordered me to offer two Rakʿā prayer. He owed me some money and he repaid it to me and gave more than what was due to me.
(60) CHAPTER. If one entered a mosque, one should offer two Rak‘a (Tahayyat-al-Masjid) before sitting.

444. Narrated Abu Qatada Al-Salami: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If anyone of you enters a mosque, he should offer two Rak‘a (Tahayyat-al-Masjid) prayer before sitting.”

(61) CHAPTER. Al-Hadath (passing wind) in the mosque.

445. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “The angels keep on asking Allah’s forgiveness for anyone of you, as long as he is at his Musalla (praying place) and he does not pass wind (Hadath). They say, ‘O Allah! Forgive him, O Allah! Be Merciful to him.”

(62) CHAPTER. The construction of (the Prophet’s ﷺ) mosque.

Abu Sa‘id said, “The roof of the mosque was made of the leaves of date-palms.” ‘Umar ordered the Prophet’s ﷺ mosque to be expanded (built) and said, “Protect the people from rain. Beware of red and yellow decorations, for they put the people to trial.” Anas reciting a part of a Hadith said, “They will boast of them (mosques) rather than coming frequently to them for offering prayers.” Ibn ‘Abbas said, “You (Muslims) will surely decorate your mosques as the Jews and Christians decorated (their churches and temples).
446. Narrated ‘Abdullãh (bin ‘Umar) R: In the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger the (Prophet’s) mosque was built of adobes, its roof of the leaves of date-palms and its pillars of the trunks of date-palms. Abû Bakr did not alter it. ‘Umar expanded it on the same pattern as it was in the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger by using adobes, leaves of date-palms and changing the pillars into wooden ones. ‘Uthmãn changed it by expanding it to a great extent and built its walls with engraved stones and lime, and made its pillars of engraved stones and its roof of teak wood.

(63) CHAPTER. To co-operate in building a mosque.

“It is not for Mushrikãn (polytheists, idolaters, pagans, disbelievers in the Oneness of Allah) to maintain the Mosques of Allah (i.e., to pray and worship Allah therein, to look after their cleanliness and their building), while they witness against their ownselves of disbelief. The works of such are in vain, and in Fire shall they abide.

The Mosques of Allah shall be maintained only by those who believe in Allah and the Last Day, perform Salât (Iqamat-as-Salât) and give Zakât and fear none but Allah. It is they who are on true guidance.” (V.9:17, 18).

447. Narrated ‘Ikrima: Ibn ‘Abbãs said to me and to his son ‘Ali, “Go to Abû Sa’îd and listen to what he narrates.” So, we went and
found him in a garden looking after it. He picked up his Ridā', wore it and sat down and started narrating till he came to the topic of the construction of the Prophet's mosque. He said, “We were carrying one adobe at a time while ‘Ammār was carrying two. The Prophet saw him and started removing the dust from his body and said, “May Allah be Merciful to ‘Ammār. He will be inviting them (i.e. his murderers, the rebellious group) to Paradise and they will invite him to Hellfire.” ‘Ammār said, “I seek refuge with Allah from Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions)”.

(64) CHAPTER. Employing the carpenter and the technical hand (artisan) in making the wooden pulpit or building the mosque.

448. Narrated Sahl: Allah's Messenger sent someone to a woman telling her to “Order her slave, carpenter, to prepare a wooden pulpit for him to sit on.”

449. Narrated Jābir: A woman said, “O Allah's Messenger! Shall I get something constructed for you to sit on as I have a slave who is a carpenter?” He replied, “Yes, if you will.” So, she got that pulpit constructed.
(65) CHAPTER. (The superiority of) whoever built a mosque.

450. Narrated ʿUbaidullāh Al-Khālānī: I heard ʿUthmān bin ʿAffān saying, when people argued too much about his intention to reconstruct the mosque of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, “You have talked too much. I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying, “Whosoever built a mosque, (Bukair thought that ʿAsim, another sub-narrator, added, “With the intention of seeking Allāh’s Countenance i.e. His Pleasure”), Allāh will build for him a similar place in Paradise.”

(66) CHAPTER. While passing through a mosque, (one should better) hold the arrowheads (with the hand).

451. Narrated Jābir bin ʿAbdullāh: “A man passed through the mosque carrying arrows. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said to him, ‘Hold them (the arrows) by their heads’.”

(67) CHAPTER. Passing through a mosque (is permissible).

452. Narrated Abū Burdā bin ʿAbdullāh on the authority of his father: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever passes through our mosques or markets with arrows, should hold them (the arrows) by their heads lest he should injure a Muslim.”
(68) CHAPTER. (What is said about) reciting poetry in the mosque?

453. Narrated Hassan bin Thabit Al-Ansari: I asked Abu Hurairah, "By Allah! Tell me the truth whether you heard the Prophet saying, 'O Hassan! Reply on behalf of Allah's Messenger! O Allah! Help him with the Ruh-ul-Qudus [Jibril (Gabriel)]'. Abu Hurairah said, "Yes."

(69) CHAPTER. The presence of spearmen (with their spears) in the mosque (is permissible).

454. Narrated 'Aishah: Once I saw Allah's Messenger at the door of my house while some Ethiopians were playing in the mosque (displaying their skill with spears). Allah's Messenger was screening me with his Rida' so as to enable me to see their display.

455. Urwa said that 'Aishah added, "I saw the Prophet while the
Ethiopians were playing with their spears.”

(70) CHAPTER. Mentioning about sales and purchases on the pulpit in the mosque.

456. Narrated ‘Aishah: Barira came to seek my help regarding her manumission. I told her, “If you like I would pay your price to your masters but your Al-Walā’(1) would be for me.” Her masters said, “If you like, you can pay what remains (of the price of her manumission), (Sufyān the subnarrator once said), or if you like you can manumit her, but her Al-Walā would be for us.” When Allāh’s Messenger came, I spoke to him about it. He said, “Buy her and manumit her. No doubt Al-Walā is for the manumitter.” Then Allāh’s Messenger stood on the pulpit (or Allāh’s Messenger ascended the pulpit as Sufyān once said) and said, “What about some people who impose conditions which are not present in Allāh’s Book (Laws)? Whoever imposes conditions which are not in Allāh’s Book (Laws), his conditions will be invalid even if he imposed them a hundred times.”

(1) (H.456) Al-Walā : A kind of relationship (between the master who freed a slave and the freed-slave).
8 – THE BOOK OF AŠ-ŠALĀT (The Prayer)

(71) CHAPTER. Asking a debtor to repay what he owes, and catching the debtor in the mosque.

457. Narrated Ka'b: In the mosque I asked Ibn Abi Ḥadrad to pay the debts which he owed to me and our voices grew louder. Allah’s Messenger heard that while he was in his house. So, he came to us raising the curtain of his room and said, “O Ka'b!” I replied, “Labbaik, 0 Allah’s Messenger!” He said, “O Ka'b! Reduce your debt (to half, gesturing with his hand).” I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! I have done so.” Then Allah’s Messenger said (to Ibn Abi Ḥadrad), “Get up and pay the debt to him.”

(72) CHAPTER. Sweeping (cleaning) of the mosque and removing rags, dirt and sticks from it.

458. Narrated Abū Hurairah: A black man or a black woman used to clean (sweep) the mosque and he or she died. The
Prophet asked about her (or him). He was told that she (or he) had died. He said, “Why did you not inform me? Show me his grave (or her grave).” So he went to her (his) grave and offered her (his) funeral prayer.”

(73) CHAPTER. The order of banning the trade of alcoholic drinks was issued in the mosque.

459. Narrated 'Aishah: When the Verses of Sūrat Al-Baqarah about Ar-Ribā(1) (usury) were revealed, the Prophet went to the mosque and recited them in front of the people and then banned the trade of alcoholic drinks.

(74) CHAPTER. Servants for the mosque.

Ibn 'Abbás referred to the Verse:

“... I have vowed to You what (the child that) is in my womb to be dedicated for Your services (free from all worldly work, to serve Your place of worship)…” (V.3:35)

460. Narrated Abū Rāfi': Abū Hurairah said, “A man or a woman used to clean the mosque.” (A subnarrator said, ‘Most probably a woman.’) Then he narrated the Hadith of the Prophet where it is

---

(1) (H.459) Ar-Ribā — Usury which is of two major kinds: (a) Ribā Nast'a, i.e., interest on lent money; (b) Ribā Fadl, i.e., taking a superior thing of the same kind of goods by giving more of the same kind of goods of inferior quality, e.g., dates of superior quality for dates of inferior quality in greater amount. Islam strictly forbids all kinds of usury.
mentioned that he offered her funeral prayer at her grave.

(75) CHAPTER. To fasten a prisoner or a debtor in the mosque.

461. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Last night a big IJreet (demon) from the jinns came to me and wanted to interrupt my Ḥnas-Salāt (the prayers) (or said something similar) but Allāh enabled me to overpower him. I wanted to fasten him to one of the pillars of the mosque so that all of you could see him in the morning but I remembered the statement of my brother Sulaimān (Solomon) (as stated in the Qur’ān): My Lord! Forgive me and bestow upon me a kingdom such as shall not belong to any other after me... (V.38:35).” The sub-narrator Ṛūḥ said, “He (the demon) was dismissed humiliated.”

(76) CHAPTER. To take a bath on embracing Islam and fasten a prisoner in the mosque.

Shuraḥ used to order the offender or debtor to be fastened to one of the pillars of the mosque.

462. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ sent some horsemen to Najd and they brought a man called Thumāmah bin ʿUtthal from Bani Ḥanifa. They fastened him to one of the pillars of the mosque. The Prophet ﷺ came and ordered them to release him. He (ʿUtthal) went to a (garden of) date-palms near the mosque, took a bath and entered the mosque again and said, “Lā
ilâha illâllah wa anna Muḥammad-ar-Rasūl-ullâh" [none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and Muḥammad is the Messenger of Allâh] (i.e., he embraced Islâm)."

(77) CHAPTER. To pitch a tent in the mosque for patients, etc.

463. Narrated 'Aishah : On the day of Al-Khandaq (battle of the Trench), the medial arm artery or vein of Sa'd (bin Mu'ādh) was injured and the Prophet pitched a tent in the mosque to look after him. There was another tent for Banî Ghifâr in the mosque and the blood started flowing from Sa'd's tent to the tent of Banî Ghifâr. They shouted, "O occupants of the tent! What is coming from you to us?" They found that Sa'd's wound was bleeding profusely and Sa'd died in his tent.

(78) CHAPTER. To take the camel inside the mosque if necessary.

And Ibn 'Abbâs said: The Prophet performed the Tawâf while riding a camel.

464. Narrated Umm Salama: I complained to Allâh's Messenger that I was sick. He told me to perform the Tawâf behind the people while riding. So, I did so and Allâh's Messenger was offering Salât
(prayer) beside the Ka’bah and reciting the Sūrah starting with “Waf-ūr-wa-Kitābim-mastūr...” [Sūrat Al-Tūr, No.52]

(79) CHAPTER.

465.Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Two of the Companions of the Prophet departed from him on a dark night and were led by two lights like lamps (going in front of them from Allāh as a miracle) lighting the way in front of them, and when they parted, each of them was accompanied by one of these lights till they reached their (respective) houses.

(80) CHAPTER. Al-Khaukhah (a small door) and a path in the mosque.

466. Narrated Aḥū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: The Prophet addressed the people and said, “Allāh gave a choice to one of (His) slaves either to choose this world or what is with Him in the Hereafter. He chose the latter.” Abū Bakr wept. I said to myself, “Why is this Sheikh weeping, if Allāh gave choice to one (of His) slaves either to choose this world or what is with Him in the Hereafter and he chose the latter?” And that slave was Allāh’s Messenger himself. Abū Bakr knew more than us. The Prophet said, “O Abū Bakr! Don’t weep.” The Prophet added: “Abū Bakr has favoured
me much with his property and company. If I were to take a Khalil(1) from mankind, I would certainly have taken Abū Bakr, but the Islamic brotherhood and friendship is sufficient. Close all the gates in the mosque except that of Abū Bakr."

467. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas:

"Allah’s Messenger in his fatal illness came out with a piece of cloth tied round his head and sat on the pulpit. After thanking and praising Allah he said, “There is no one who had done more favour to me with his life and his property than Abū Bakr bin Abī Quhāfa. If I were to take a Khalil, I would certainly have taken Abū Bakr but the Islamic brotherhood is better. Close all the Khaukhah (small doors) in this mosque except that of Abū Bakr.”

(81) CHAPTER. The doors and locks of the Ka'bah and the mosques.

Narrated Ibn ‘Juraj: Ibn Abi Mulaika

(1) Khalil: The one whose love is mixed with one’s heart and it is superior to a friend or beloved. The Prophet had only one Khalil, i.e., Allah, but he had many friends.
said to me, “O ‘Abdul Mālik! I wish that you had seen the mosque of Ibn ‘Abbās and its doors.”

468. Narrated Nāfi’: Ibn ‘Umar said, “The Prophet ﷺ arrived at Makkah and sent for ‘Uthmān bin Ẓalḥa. He opened the gate of the Ka’bah and the Prophet ﷺ, Bilāl, Usāma bin Zaid and ‘Uthmān bin Ẓalḥa entered the Ka’bah and then they closed its door (from inside). They stayed there for an hour, and then came out.” Ibn ‘Umar added, “I quickly went to Bilāl and asked him [whether the Prophet ﷺ had offered Salah (prayer)]. Bilāl replied, ‘He offered Salah in it.’ I asked, ‘Where?’ He replied, ‘Between the two pillars.’” Ibn ‘Umar added, “I forgot to ask how many Rak‘ā he (the Prophet ﷺ) had prayed in the Ka’bah.”

(82) CHAPTER. The entering of a pagan in the mosque.

469. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ sent some horsemen to Najd and they brought a man called Thumāma bin Uthāl from Bani Ḥanifa. They fastened him to one of the pillars of the mosque.

(83) CHAPTER. Raising the voice in the mosque.

470. Narrated As-Sā‘ib bin Yazid: I was standing in the mosque and somebody threw
a gravel at me. I looked and found that he was 'Umar bin Al-Khattab. He said to me, “Fetch those two men to me.” When I did, he said to them, “Who are you? (Or) where do you come from?” They replied, “We are from Ta’if.” 'Umar said, “Were you from this city (Al-Madina) I would have punished you for raising your voices in the mosque of Allāh’s Messenger.”

471. Narrated Ka'b bin Malik: During the life-time of Allāh’s Messenger I asked Ibn Abi Ḥadrad in the mosque to pay the debts which he owed to me, and our voices grew so loud that Allāh’s Messenger heard them while he was in his house. So he came to us after raising the curtain of his room. The Prophet said, “O Ka'b bin Malik!” I replied, “Labbaik, O Allāh’s Messenger.” He gestured with his hand to me to reduce the debt to half. I said, “O Allāh’s Messenger, I have done it.” Allāh’s Messenger (s) said (to Ibn Ḥadrad), “Get up and pay it.”

(84) CHAPTER. The religious gatherings in circles and sitting in the mosque.
472. Narrated Nafi': Ibn 'Umar said, "While the Prophet was on the pulpit, a man asked him how to offer the night Salah (prayers). He replied, 'Pray two Rak'as at a time and then two and then two and so on, and if you are afraid of the dawn (the approach of the time of the Fajr prayer) pray one Rak'ah and that will be the Witr for all the Rak'as which you have offered.'" Ibn 'Umar said, "Make an end of your (Tahajjud) night Salah with an odd Rak'ah, for the Prophet ordered it to be so."

473. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: A man came to the Prophet while he was delivering a religious talk and asked him how to offer the night Salah (prayers). The Prophet replied, 'Pray two Rak'as at a time and then two and then two and so on and if you are afraid of dawn (the approach of the time of the Fajr prayer) pray one Rak'ah and that will be the Witr for all the Rak'as which you have prayed.'" Narrated 'Ubaidullah bin 'Abdullah bin 'Umar: A man called the Prophet while he was in the mosque.

474. Narrated Abu Waqid Al-Laithi: While Allah's Messenger was sitting in the mosque (with some people) three men came, two of them came in front of Allah's Messenger and the third one went away. One of them found a place in the circle and sat there while the second man sat behind the gathering, and the third one went away. When Allah's Messenger finished his preaching, he said, 'Shall I tell you about these three persons? One of them betook
himself to Allāh and so Allāh accepted him and accommodated him; the second felt shy before Allāh so Allāh did the same for him and sheltered him in His Mercy (and did not punish him), while the third turned his face from Allāh, and went away, so Allāh turned His Face from him likewise.”

(85) CHAPTER. To lie flat (on the back) in the mosque.

475. Narrated ‘Abbad bin Tamīm that his uncle said, “I saw Allāh’s Messenger  lying flat (on his back) in the mosque putting one of his legs over the other.” Narrated Sa‘īd bin Al-Musaiyab that ‘Umar and ‘Uthmān used to do the same.

(86) CHAPTER. (If) a mosque (is built) on a road, it should not be a cause of harm for the people.

476. Narrated ‘Āishah  the wife of the Prophet : I had seen my parents following Islām since I attained the age of puberty. Not a day passed but the Prophet  visited us, both in the mornings and evenings. My father Abū Bakr thought of building a mosque in the courtyard of his house and he did so. He used to offer prayers and recite the Qur’ān in it. The pagan women and their children used to stand by him and look at him with surprise. Abū Bakr was a soft-hearted person and could not help
weeping while reciting the Qur'an. The chiefs of the Quraish pagans became afraid of that (i.e. that their children and women might be affected by the recitation of the Qur'an).

(87) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salât (the prayers) in a mosque situated in a market.

Ibn ‘Aûn offered prayers in a mosque situated in a house and the gate used to be closed while they were inside.

477. Narrated Abû Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The Salât (prayer) offered in congregation is twenty-five times more superior (in reward) to the Salât offered alone in one’s house or in a business centre, because if one performs ablution and does it perfectly, and then proceeds to the mosque with the sole intention of offering As-Salât, then for each step which he takes towards the mosque, Allâh upgrades him a degree in reward and crosses out (forgives) one sin (at each step) till he enters the mosque. When he enters the mosque he is considered in Salât as long as he is waiting for the Salât and the angels keep on asking for Allâh’s Forgiveness for him and they keep on saying: ‘O Allâh! Be Merciful to him, O Allâh! Forgive him’, as long as he keeps on sitting at his praying place and does not pass wind.” (See Hadîth No.647).
(88) CHAPTER. To clasp one’s hands by interlocking the fingers in the mosque or outside the mosque.

478, 479. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar or Ibn ‘Amr رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ආظرف clasped his hands, by interlacing his fingers.

480. Narrated ‘Abdullāh that Allāh’s Messenger سayed, “O ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr! What will be your condition when you will be left with the sediments of (worst) people?” (They will be in conflict with each other).

481. Narrated Abū Mūsā رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ساء said, “A faithful believer to a faithful believer is like the bricks of a wall, reinforcing each other.” While (saying that) the Prophet ساء clasped his hands by interlocking his fingers.

482. Narrated Ibn Sirīn: Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه said, “Allāh’s Messenger ساء led us in one of the two ‘Iṣba’ prayers (Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه named that prayer but I forgot it).” Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه added, “He offered two Rakʿā and then finished the Salāt (prayer) with Taslim. He stood up near a piece of wood lying across the mosque and leaned on it in such a way as if he was angry.
Then he put his right hand over the left and clasped his hands by interlocking his fingers and then put his right cheek on the back of his left hand. The people who were in haste left the mosque through its gates. They wondered whether As-Salāt (the prayer) was reduced. And amongst them were 'Abū Bakr and 'Umar, but they hesitated to ask the Prophet. A long-handed man called Dhul-Yadain asked the Prophet, ‘O Allāh’s Messenger! Have you forgotten or has As-Salāt been reduced?’ The Prophet replied, ‘I have neither forgotten nor has the Salāt been reduced.’ The Prophet added, ‘Is what Dhul-Yadain has said true?’ They (the people) said, ‘Yes, it is true.’

The Prophet stood up again and led the Salāt, completing the remaining Salāt, forgotten by him, and performed Taslim, and then said Allāhu Akbar. And then he did a prostration as he used to prostrate or longer than that. He then raised his head saying Allāhu Akbar; he then again said Allāhu Akbar, and prostrated (a second time) as he used to prostrate or longer than that. Then he raised his head and said Allāhu Akbar.’

[The subnarrator added, “I think that they asked (Ibn Sirīn) whether the Prophet completed the prayer with Taslim. He replied, “I heard that ‘Imrān bin Ḥusayn had said, ‘Then he (the Prophet) did Taslim.’”]

483. Narrated Fuḍail bin Sulaymān: Mūsā bin ‘Uqba said, “I saw Salīm bin ‘Abdullāh looking for some places on the way and offered Salāt (prayers) there. He narrated that his father used to offer Salāt.
there, and had seen the Prophet offering Salāt at those very places.”

Narrated Nāfi’ on the authority of Ibn ‘Umar, who said, “I used to offer Salāt at those places.” Mūsā the narrator added, “I asked Salīm on which he said, ‘I agree with Nāfi’ concerning those places, except the mosque situated at the place called Sharaf Ar-Rawḥā.’”

484. These Ḥadīth Nos. 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 492 narrated by Abdullah bin ‘Umar is about the various places on the way from Al-Madina to Makkah where the Prophet offered Salāt (prayers) and their locations. It is not possible to translate.
8 - THE BOOK OF AŞ-SALĀT (The Prayer)

485. See Ḥadīth No.484.

486. See Ḥadīth No.484.
487. See Hadith No.484.

- And may the peace of Allah be upon you. That is because a man of the Tabiin set up a row similar to the rows of the right-hand aisle of the Masjid during prayer. He would enter the Masjid at the right-hand aisle, and would not leave until the row was filled. The right-hand aisle was the narrow one, and the row would be broken. This hadith explains that the rows were very narrow.

488. See Hadith No.484.

- And may the peace of Allah be upon you. That is because the Tabiin set up a row similar to the rows of the right-hand aisle of the Masjid during prayer. They would enter the Masjid at the right-hand aisle, and would not leave until the row was filled. The right-hand aisle was the narrow one, and the row would be broken. This hadith explains that the rows were very narrow.

489. See Hadith No.484.

- And may the peace of Allah be upon you. That is because a man of the Tabiin set up a row similar to the rows of the right-hand aisle of the Masjid during prayer. He would enter the Masjid at the right-hand aisle, and would not leave until the row was filled. The right-hand aisle was the narrow one, and the row would be broken. This hadith explains that the rows were very narrow.

490. See Hadith No.484.

- And may the peace of Allah be upon you. That is because a man of the Tabiin set up a row similar to the rows of the right-hand aisle of the Masjid during prayer. He would enter the Masjid at the right-hand aisle, and would not leave until the row was filled. The right-hand aisle was the narrow one, and the row would be broken. This hadith explains that the rows were very narrow.
491. Narrated Abdullah bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهٴ: "The Prophet ﷺ while approaching Makkah used to dismount at Dhi-Tuwa (near Makkah) and stay the night there till the morning and then perform the morning Salât (prayer). The Musalla (praying place) of Allah’s Messenger was over the big hillock and not at the mosque which was built later, but at a place lower than that, over the big hillock.

492. See Hadith No.484.

(90) CHAPTER. The Sutra(1) of the Imâm is also a Sutra for those who are behind him.

(1) (Ch.90) Sutra: An object like a pillar, wall or stick, a spear etc., the height of which should not be less than a foot; and it should be in front of a person offering Salât (prayers) to act as a symbolic barrier between him and the others.
493. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Once I came riding a she-ass when I had just attained the age of puberty. Allāh’s Messenger was offering the prayer at Mina with no wall in front of him and I passed in front of some of the rows. There I dismounted and let my she-ass loose to graze and entered the row and nobody objected to me about it.

494. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Whenever Allāh’s Messenger came out on ‘Eid day he used to order that a Harba (a short spear) to be planted in front of him [as a Sutra for his Šalāt (prayer)] and then he used to offer Šalāt facing it with the people behind him; and he used to do the same while on a journey. After the Prophet, this practice was adopted by the Muslim rulers (who followed his Sunna - legal ways)."

495. Narrated ‘Aûn bin Abi Juḥaifa: I heard my father saying, “The Prophet led us and offered a two-Rak’ā Zuḥr prayer and then a two Rak’ā Šafr prayer at Al-Baṭḥā with an ‘Anaza (planted) in front of him (as a Sutra) while women and donkeys were passing in front of him (beyond that ‘Anaza).”

[See Fath Al-Bārī, Vol.2, page 120.]
(91) CHAPTER. What should be the distance between the person offering Șalát (prayer) and the Sutra?

496. Narrated Sahl (bin Sa'd): The distance between the Musâllâ (praying place) of Allâh's Messenger ﷺ and the wall was just sufficient for a sheep to pass through.

497. Narrated Salama: The distance between the wall of the mosque and the pulpit (by the side of which the Prophet ﷺ used to offer prayers) was hardly enough for a sheep to pass through.

(92) CHAPTER. To offer Șalát (the prayer) using a Harba (a short spear) (as a Sutra).

498. Narrated 'Abdullâh: The Prophet ﷺ used to get a Harba planted in front of him (as a Sutra) and offer Șalát (the prayer) behind it.

(93) CHAPTER. To offer Șalát (the prayer) using an 'Anaza (a spear-headed stick) (as a Sutra).

499. Narrated 'Aûn bin Abi Juhaifa that he had heard his father saying, "Allâh's Messenger ﷺ came to us at mid-day and water was brought for his ablution. He performed ablution and led us in Zuhr and 'Asr prayers with an 'Anaza planted in front of him (as a Sutra), while women and donkeys were passing beyond it."
500. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Whenever the Prophet went for answering the call of nature, I and another boy used to go after him with a staff, a stick or an 'Anaza and a tumbler of water and when he finished from answering the call of nature, we would hand over that tumbler of water to him.

501. Narrated Abū Juhaifa: Allah's Messenger came out at mid-day and offered a two-Rak'ā Zuhr and 'Asr prayers at Al-Batba' and an 'Anaza was planted in front of him (as a Sutra). He performed ablution and the people took the remaining water left after his ablution and rubbed their bodies with it.

502. Narrated Yazid bin Abī 'Ubaid: I used to accompany Salama bin Al-Akwa' and he used to offer the Šalāt (prayer) behind the pillar which was near the place where the Qur'āns were kept. I said, "O Abū Muslim! I see you always seeking to offer Aṣ-Šalāt (the prayers) behind this pillar." He replied, "I saw Allāh's Messenger always
seeking to offer *Aṣ-Ṣalāt* (the prayers) near that pillar.”

503. Narrated Anas: I saw the most famous people amongst the Companions of the Prophet hurrying towards the pillars at the *Maghrib* prayer before the Prophet came for the prayer.

(96) C. I A P T E R. To offer non-congregational *Aṣ-Ṣalāt* (the prayers) between the pillars.

504. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet entered the Ka’bah along with Usâma bin Zaid, ‘Uthmân bin Taḥṭa and Bilāl, and remained there for a long time. When they came out, I was the first man to enter the Ka’bah. I asked Bilāl, “Where did the Prophet offer prayers?” Bilāl replied, “Between the two front pillars.”

505. Narrated Nāfi’: ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar said, “Allâh’s Messenger entered the Ka’bah along with Usâma bin Zaid, Bilāl and ‘Uthmân bin Taḥṭa Al-Ḥajabi (i.e., the one who keeps the key of the gate of the Ka’bah and is considered as a servant of the Ka’bah), and closed the door and stayed there for some time. I asked Bilāl when he came out, ‘What did the Prophet do?’ He replied, ‘He offered *Ṣalāt* (prayer) with one pillar to his left and one to his right and three behind.’ In those days the Ka’bah was supported by six pillars.”

Mâlik said: “There were two pillars on his
(the Prophet’s) right side.”

(97) CHAPTER.

506. Narrated Nāfī’: Whenever ‘Abdullāh entered the Ka’bah, he used to go ahead leaving the door of the Ka’bah behind him. He would proceed on till the remaining distance between him and the opposite wall was about three cubits. Then he would offer prayer there where the Prophet ﷺ had offered Šalāt (prayers), as Bilāl informed me. Ibn ‘Umar said, “It does not matter for any of us to offer prayers at any place inside the Ka’bah.”

(98) CHAPTER. To offer Aš-Šalāt (prayers) facing a Rāhīla (mount) a camel, a tree or a camel-saddle (etc. as a Sutra).

507. Narrated Nāfī’: Ibn ‘Umar said, “The Prophet ﷺ used to make his she-camel sit across and he would offer Šalāt (prayer) facing it (as a Sutra).” I asked, “What would the Prophet ﷺ do if the she-camel was provoked and moved?” He said, “He (ﷺ) would take its camel-saddle and put it in front of him and offer Šalāt facing its back part (as a Sutra).” And Ibn ‘Umar used to do the same. (This indicated that one should not offer Šalāt except behind a Sutra).
508. Narrated 'Aishah: Do you make us (women) equal to dogs and donkeys? While I used to lie in my bed, the Prophet would come and offer Salāt (prayer) facing the middle of the bed. I used to consider it not good to be in front of him in his Ṣalāt. So I used to slip away slowly and quietly from the foot of the bed till I got out of my blanket.

(100) CHAPTER. The person offering Ṣalāt (prayer) should repulse that person who tries to pass in front of him.

While sitting in Tashah-hud [a specific sitting position adopted by a person during the Ṣalāt (prayer)] and while in the Ka’bah Ibn ‘Umar repulsed a man (who tried to pass in front of him). He used to say, “Use force if that person refuses to retreat.”

509. Narrated Abū Sāliḥ Aṣ-Ṣammān: I saw Abū Saʿīd Al-Khudrī offering Ṣalāt (prayer) on a Friday, behind something which acted as a Sutra. A young man from Bani Abī Muʿaṭ wanted to pass in front of him (between him and the Sutra), but Abū Saʿīd repulsed him with a push on his chest. Finding no alternative, he again tried to pass but Abū Saʿīd pushed him with a greater force. The young man abused Abū Saʿīd and went to Marwān and lodged a complaint against Abū Saʿīd. Abū Saʿīd followed the young man to Marwān who asked him, “O Abū Saʿīd! What has happened between you and the son of your brother?” Abū Saʿīd said to him, “I heard the Prophet saying, ‘If anybody amongst you is offering Ṣalāt behind
something as a Sutra and somebody tries to pass in front of him (between him and the Sutra), then he should repulse him and if he refuses, he should use force against him for he is a Satan’.”

(101) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who passes in front of a person offering Salāt (prayer).

510. Narrated Busr bin Sa’id, that Zaid bin Khālid sent him to Abū Juhaim to ask him what he had heard from Allāh’s Messenger (n) about a person passing in front of another person who was offering Salāt (prayer). Abū Juhaim replied, “Allāh’s Messenger (n) said, ‘If the person who passes in front of another person in Salāt knew the magnitude of his sin, he would prefer to wait for 40 (days, months or years) rather than to pass in front of him.’” Abū An-Naḍr said, “I do not remember exactly whether he said 40 days, months or years.”

(102) CHAPTER. A man facing a man while offering Salāt (prayer) —
‘Uthmān disliked to face a praying person if it diverted his attention. Zaid bin Thābit said, “But if it does not have such an effect, a man does not cancel the Salāt (prayers) of another man.”

511. Narrated ʿĀishah رضي الله عنها: The things which annul As-Salāt (the prayers) were mentioned before me. They said, “Prayer is annulled by a dog, a donkey and a woman (if they pass in front of the praying people).” I said, “You have made us (i.e., women) dogs. I saw the Prophet ﷺ offering Salāt (prayers) while I used to lie in my bed between him and the Qiblah. Whenever I was in need of something, I would slip away, for I disliked to face him.”

(103) CHAPTER. To offer As-Salāt (the prayer) behind a sleeping person.

512. Narrated ʿĀishah رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer Salāt (prayer) while I used to sleep across in his bed in front of him, and then, when he wanted to pray Witr, he would wake me up and I would pray Witr.

(104) CHAPTER. To offer Nawāfil (non-obligatory prayers) behind a sleeping woman.
513. Narrated ‘Aishah، زَيْنَبُيَّةُ ﷺ ﷺ، the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: I used to sleep in front of Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ with my legs opposite his Qiblah (facing him); and whenever he prostrated, he pushed my feet and I withdrew them and whenever he stood, I stretched them.” ‘Aishah، زَيْنَبُيَّةُ ﷺ added, “In those days there were no lamps in the houses.”

514. Narrated ‘Aishah، زَيْنَبُيَّةُ ﷺ: The things which annul prayer were mentioned before me (and those were): a dog, a donkey and a woman. I said, “You have compared us (women) to donkeys and dogs. By Allah! I saw the Prophet ﷺ offering prayers while I used to lie in (my) bed between him and the Qiblah. Whenever I was in need of something and, I disliked to sit and trouble the Prophet ﷺ, then, I would slip away by the side of his feet.”

515. Narrated ‘Aishah، زَيْنَبُيَّةُ ﷺ the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to get up at night and offer prayers while I...
used to lie across between him and the Qiblah on his family’s bed.

(106) CHAPTER. If a small girl is carried on one’s neck during As-Salāt (the prayer).

516. Narrated Abū Qatāda Al-Anṣāri: Allah’s Messenger was offering Salāt (prayer) and he was carrying Umama the daughter of Zainab, the daughter of Allah’s Messenger and she was the daughter of ‘Āš bin Rabī’ bin ‘Abd-Shams. When he prostrated, he put her down and when he stood, he carried her (on his neck).

(107) CHAPTER. To offer Salāt (prayer) facing a bed occupied by a menstruating woman.

517. Narrated Maimūna bint Al-Ḥārith: My bed was beside the Musāllā (praying place) of the Prophet and sometimes his garment fell on me while I used to lie in my bed.
518. Narrated Maimūna: The Prophet used to offer prayers while I used to sleep beside him during my periods (menses) and in prostrations his garment used to touch me.

(108) CHAPTER. Is it permissible to touch or push one’s wife in prostration, in order to prostrate properly?

519. Narrated ‘Abīshah: It is not good that you people have made us (women) equal to dogs and donkeys. No doubt I saw Allāh’s Messenger offering prayers while I used to lie between him and the Qiblah and when he wanted to prostrate, he pushed my legs and I withdrew them.

(109) CHAPTER. A woman can remove troublesome or offensive things from a person in Salāt (prayer).

520. Narrated ‘Amr bin Maimūn: ‘Abdullāh (bin Mas‘ūd) said, “While Allāh’s Messenger was offering Salāt (prayer) near the Ka‘bah, there were some Qurāsh people sitting in a gathering. One of them said, ‘Don’t you see this Murā‘ey (the one who does deeds just to show off)? Who amongst you can go and bring the dung, blood and the abdominal contents (intestines, etc.) of the slaughtered camels of the family of so-and-so and then wait till he prostrates and put that in between his
shoulders?' The most wretched amongst them ('Uqba bin Abi Mu'ait) went (and brought them) and when Allah's Messenger ﷺ prostrated, he put them between his shoulders. The Prophet ﷺ remained in prostration and they laughed so much-so that they fell on each other. A passer-by went to Fatima (the daughter of the Prophet ﷺ), who was a young girl in those days. She came running and the Prophet ﷺ was still in prostration. She removed them (the abdominal contents of the camel) and cursed at the Quraysh on their faces. When Allah's Messenger ﷺ completed his prayer, he said, 'O Allah! Destroy the (infidels of) Quraysh.' He said so thrice and added, 'O Allah! Destroy 'Amr bin Hisham, 'Utba bin Rabia, Shaiba bin Rabia, Al-Walid bin 'Utba, Umaiyya bin Khalaf, 'Uqba bin Abi Mu'ait and 'Umara bin Al-Walid'.

‘Abdullãh added, “By Allah! I saw all of them dead in the battlefield on the Day of Badr, and they were dragged and thrown in the Qalib (a well) at Badr. Allah's Messenger ﷺ then said, ‘Allah’s Curse has descended upon the people of the Qalib’.
(1) CHAPTER. The times of As-Salāt (the prayers) and the superiority of offering Salāt (prayers) in time.

And the Statement of Allāh: “... Verily, As-Salāt (the prayer) is enjoined on the believers at fixed hours.” (V.4:103)

521. Narrated Ibn Shihāb: Once ‘Umar bin ‘Abdul ‘Azīz delayed As-Salāt (the prayer) and ‘Urwa bin Az-Zubair went to him and said, “Once in ‘Iraq, Al-Mughīra bin Shu’ba delayed his Salāt (prayers) and Abū Mas’ūd Al-Anṣārī went to him and said, ‘O Mughīra! What is this? Don’t you know that once Jibrīl (Gabriel) came and offered Salāt (Fajr prayer) and Allāh’s Messenger also offered Salāt too, then he offered Salāt again (Zuhr prayer) and so did Allāh’s Messenger and again he offered Salāt (‘Aṣr prayer) and Allāh’s Messenger did the same; again he offered Salāt (Maghrib prayer) and so did Allāh’s Messenger; and again he offered Salāt (Iṣhā prayer) and so did Allāh’s Messenger (Jibrīl (Gabriel) said, ‘I was ordered to do so (to demonstrate Salāt prescribed to you)’?”

‘Umar (bin ‘Abdul ‘Azīz) said to ‘Urwa, “Be sure of what you say. Did Jibrīl lead Allāh’s Messenger at the stated times of Salāt?” ‘Urwa replied, “Bashīr bin Abi Mas’ūd narrated like this on the authority of his father.”
522. Narrated 'Urwa: 'Aishah used to tell me that Allah's Messenger used to offer 'Asr prayer when the sun-shine was still inside her residence (i.e., the early stated prescribed time of 'Asr).

(2) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah

(And remain always) turning in repentance to Him (only), and be afraid and dutiful to Him; and perform As-Salāt (Iqānat, as-Salāt) and be not of Al-Mushrīkūn (the disbelievers in the Oneness of Allāh, polytheists, idolaters).” (V.30:31)

523. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās: Once a delegation of 'Abdul Qais came to Allah's Messenger and said, “We belong to such and such branch of the tribe of Rabi'a and we can only come to you in the sacred months. Order us to do something good (religious deeds) so that we may take it from you (act on them) and also invite to it our people whom we have left behind (at home).

The Prophet said, “I order you to do four things and forbid you from four things. (The first four are as follows):

1. To believe in Allāh. (And then he explained it to them i.e.) to testify that Lā ilāha illāllāh wa anni (Muḥammad) Rasāl Allāh, (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh) and I (Muḥammad) am the Messenger of Allāh.

2. Iqāmat-as-Salāt [To perform As-Salāt (prayers) (at their stated times)].

3. To pay Zakāt

4. To give me Khumūs (i.e., 1/5th of the booty to be given in Allāh's Cause).

(The other four things which are forbidden are as follows):

1. ‘id-Dubbā
2. Al-Hantam
3. Al-Muqaiydar
4. An-Naqir (all these are utensils used for the preparation of alcoholic drinks)

(3) CHAPTER. To give the Bai’ah (pledge) for Iqāmat-as-Salāt [the offering of Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayers)].

524. Narrated Jarīr bin ‘Abdullāh: I gave the Bai’ah (pledge) to Allāh’s Messenger for Iqāmat-as-Salāt(1), to pay Zakāt regularly, and to be sincere and true to every Muslim (i.e., to order them for Al-Ma’nīf, i.e., Islamic Monotheism and all that Islam orders one to do and to forbid them from Al-Munkar i.e., disbelief, polytheism of all kinds and all that Islam has forbidden), to help them, and to be merciful and kind to them. [See Hadith No.57]

(4) CHAPTER. Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) is expiation (of sins).

525. Narrated Shaqīq that he had heard Hudhaifa saying, “Once we were sitting with ‘Umar and he said, ‘Who amongst you remembers the statement of Allah’s Messenger about the Al-Fītnah (trial and affliction)?’ I said, ‘I know it as the Prophet had said it.’ ‘Umar said, ‘No doubt you are bold.’ I said, ‘The Al-Fītnah caused for a man

---

(1) (H.524) Iqāmat-as-Salāt: [the offering of Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayers)]. It means that:

a) Every Muslim, male or female, is obliged to offer his Salāt (prayers) regularly five times a day at the specified times; the male in a mosque in congregation and the female at home. As the Prophet said: “Order your children for Salāt (prayers) at the age of seven and beat them (about it) at the age of ten.” The chief (of a family, town, tribe, etc.) and the Muslim ruler of a country are held responsible before Allāh in case of non-fulfilment of this obligation by the Muslims under his authority.

b) To offer the Salāt (prayers) as the Prophet used to offer them with all their rules and regulations, i.e. standing, bowing, prostrating, sitting as he said: “Offer your Salāt (prayers) the way you see me performing them (See Hadith No.631.) For the characteristics of the prayer of the Prophet see Sahih Al-Bukhārī, Vol.1, Ahadith Nos. 735,736,739,756,823,824 and 825.
by his wife, money, children and neighbour is expiated by his As-Salāt (the prayers), As-Saum (the fasts), charity and by enjoining Al-Ma'rūf (Islamic Monotheism and all that Allah has ordained) and forbidding Al-Munkar (disbelief, polytheism, and all that Allah has forbidden).’ ‘Umar said, ‘I did not mean that but I asked about that Al-Fīnah which will spread like the waves of the sea.’ I (Hudhaifa) said, ‘O leader of the faithful believers! You need not be afraid of it as there is a closed door between you and it.’ ‘Umar asked, ‘Will the door be broken or opened?’ I replied, ‘It will be broken.’ ‘Umar said, ‘Then it will never be closed again.’’ I was asked whether ‘Umar knew that door. I replied that he knew it as one knows that there will be night before the tomorrow morning. I have narrated a Hadith that is free from any mis-statement.” The subnarrator added that they deputed Masrûq to ask Hudhaifa (about the door). Hudhaifa said, “The door was ‘Umar himself.”

526. Narrated Ibn Mas‘ūd (H.526) Iqamat-as-Šalāt: A man kissed a woman (unlawfully) and then went to the Prophet and informed him. So Allah revealed:

“And perform As-Salāt (Iqamat-as-Šalāt(1)), at the two ends of the day and in some hours of the night [i.e., the five compulsory Šalāt (prayers)]. Verily, the good deeds remove the evil deeds (i.e., small sins)...” (V.11:114).

The man asked Allah’s Messenger, “Is this instruction for me only?” He said, “It is for all those of my followers (who encounter a similar situation).”

(1) (H.526) Iqamat-as-Šalāt: See the footnote of Hadith No. 524.
527. Narrated ‘Abdulläh ibn ‘Umayr: I asked the Prophet ﷺ, “Which deed is the dearest to Allâh?” He replied, “To perform the (daily compulsory) ﴿Salât﴾ (prayers) at their (early) stated fixed times.” I asked, “What is the next (in goodness)?” He replied, “To be good and dutiful to your parents.” I again asked, “What is the next (in goodness)?” He replied, “To participate in Jihâd (religious fighting) in Allâh’s Cause.”

‘Abdulläh added, “These were told by the Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ and if I had asked more, the Prophet ﷺ would have told me more.”

[See Hadîth No.7534, Vol.9].

528. Narrated Abû Hurairah Z;: I heard Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “If there was a river at the door of anyone of you and he took a bath in it five times a day, would you notice any dirt on him?” They said, “Not a trace of dirt would be left.” The Prophet ﷺ added, “That is the example of the five (daily compulsory) ﴿Salât﴾ (prayers) with which Allâh blots out (annuls) evil deeds.”
(7) CHAPTER. Not offering As-Salāt (the prayer) at its stated fixed time.

529. Narrated Ghailān: Anas said, "I do not find (now-a-days) things as it were (practised) at the time of the Prophet ﷺ."

Somebody said, "Have you not done in As-Salāt (the prayer) what you have done?"

530. Narrated Az-Zuhri that he visited Anas bin Malik at Damascus and found him weeping and asked him why he was weeping.

He replied, "I do not know anything which I used to know during the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ except As-Salāt (the prayer), and this Salāt too is lost (not offered as it should be)."

(8) CHAPTER. A person in Salāt (prayer) is speaking in private to his Lord (Allah) before and after.
nor on his right but on his left or under his foot.”

532. Narrated Anas رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Do the prostration properly and do not put your forearms flat with elbows touching the ground like a dog. And if you want to spit, do not spit in front, nor on the right, for the person in Salāt (prayer) is speaking in private to his Lord (Allah) ﷻ.

(9) CHAPTER. In severe heat, offer Zuhr prayers when it becomes (a bit) cooler.

533, 534. Narrated Abū Hurairah and ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهم: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If it is very hot, then offer the Zuhr prayer when it becomes (a bit) cooler, as the severity of the heat is from the raging of the Hell-fire.”

535. Narrated Abū Dhar رضي الله عنه: The Mu‘adh-dhīn (call-maker) of the Prophet ﷺ pronounced the Ādhan (call) for the Zuhr prayer but the Prophet ﷺ said, “Let it be cooler, let it be cooler.” Or said, “Wait,
wait, because the severity of heat is from the raging of the Hell-fire. In severe hot weather, offer *As-Salāt* (the prayer) when it becomes (a bit) cooler and the shadows of hillocks appear."

536. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “In very hot weather delay the *Zuhr* prayer till it becomes (a bit) cooler because the severity of heat is from the raging of the Hell-fire.”

537. The fire of Hell complained to its Lord saying: O Lord! My parts are eating (destroying) one another. So Allah allowed it to take two breaths, one in the winter and the other in the summer. The breath in the summer is at the time when you feel the severest heat and the breath in the winter is at the time when you feel the severest cold.”

538. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd that Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Offer *Zuhr* prayer when it becomes (a bit) cooler as the severity of heat is from the raging of the Hell-fire.”

(10) CHAPTER. When going on a journey, pray *Zuhr* prayer when it becomes cooler.

539. Narrated Abū Dhar Al-Ghifārī: We were with the Prophet ﷺ on a
journey and the Mu‘adhdhīn [call-maker for Salah (prayer)] wanted to pronounce the Adhān (call) for the Zuhr prayer. The Prophet ﷺ said, “Let it become cooler.” He again (after a while) wanted to pronounce the Adhān but the Prophet ﷺ said to him, “Let it become cooler till we see the shadows of hillocks.” The Prophet ﷺ added, “The severity of heat is from the raging of the Hell-fire, and in very hot weather, offer Salah (Zuhr) when it becomes cooler.”

(11) CHAPTER. The time of Zuhr prayer is when the sun declines (just after mid-day).

Jābir said: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the Zuhr prayer just after mid-day (as the sun declines at noon).

540. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ came out as the sun declined at mid-day and offered the Zuhr prayer. He then stood on the pulpit and spoke about the Hour (Day of Judgement) and mentioned great events and matters therein. He then said, “Whoever likes to ask me about anything he can do so and I shall reply as long as I am at this place of mine.” Most of the people wept and the Prophet ﷺ said repeatedly, “Ask me.” ‘Abdullāh bin Hudhāfa As-Sahmi stood up and said, “Who is my father?” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Your father is Hudhāfa.” The Prophet ﷺ repeatedly said, “Ask me.” Then ‘Umar knelt before him and said, “We are pleased with Allāh as our Lord, Islām as our
9- THE BOOK OF THE TIMES OF AS-SALĀT

religion, and Muhammad ☪ as our Prophet.” The Prophet ☪ then became quiet and said, “Paradise and Hell-fire were displayed in front of me on this wall just now and I have never seen a better thing (than the Paradise) and a worse thing (than the Hell-Fire.)”

541. Narrated Abu Al-Minhal: Abu Barza ; said, “The Prophet ☪ used to offer the Fajr (early morning prayer) when one could recognize the person sitting by him [after the Salāt (prayer)], and he used to recite between 60 to 100 Ayat (Verses) of the Qur‘an. He used to offer the Zuhr prayer as soon as the sun declined (at noon) and the Asr prayer at a time when a man might go and return from the farthest place in Al-Madina and find the sun still hot. (The subnarrator forgot what was said about the Maghrib). He did not mind delaying the ‘Ishā prayer to one-third of the night or the middle of the night.”

542. Narrated Anas bin Malik ☪: When we offered the Zuhr prayers behind Allah’s Messenger ☪ we used to prostrate on our clothes to protect ourselves from the heat.
(12) CHAPTER. To delay the Zuhr (prayer) up to the ‘Asr (prayer) time.

543. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ prayed eight Rak‘ā for the Zuhr and ‘Asr, and seven for the Maghrib and ‘Ishā prayers in Al-Madīna.” Ayyūb said, “Perhaps those were rainy nights.” Anas said, “May be.” (See Hadith No. 562)

(13) CHAPTER. The time of the ‘Asr prayer.

Narrated Hishām (that ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها said) “Sunshine used to be still inside my chamber (i.e., at the time of ‘Asr prayer).

544. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer the ‘Asr prayer when the sunshine had not disappeared from my chamber.

545. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer the ‘Asr prayer at a time when the sunshine was still inside my chamber and no shadow had yet appeared in it.

546. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the ‘Asr prayer at a time when the sunshine was still inside my
chamber and no shadow had yet appeared in it.

547. Narrated Sayyar bin Salama: I along with my father went to Abū Barza Al-Aslamī and my father asked him, “How Allah’s Messenger used to offer the five compulsory congregational prayers?” Abū Barza said, “The Prophet used to offer the Zuhr prayer which you (people) call the first one, at mid-day when the sun had just declined. The 'Asr prayer at a time when after the prayer, a man could go to the house at the farthest place in Al-Madina (and arrive) while the sun was still hot. I forgot about the Maghrīb prayer. The Prophet loved to delay the 'Ishā which you call 'Al-'Atama and he disliked sleeping before it and speaking after it. After the Fajr prayer he used to depart when a man could recognize the one sitting beside him and he used to recite between 60 to 100 'Ayāt (in the Fajr prayer).

548. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: We used to offer the 'Asr prayer and after that if someone happened to go to the tribe of Bani 'Amr bin 'Auf, he would find them offering the ‘Asr (prayer).
549. Narrated Abu Bakr bin Uthman bin Sahl bin Hunain that he heard Abu Umama saying: We offered the Zuhr prayer with Umar bin Abdul Aziz and then went to Anas bin Malik and found him offering the Asr prayer. I asked him, “O uncle! Which prayer have you offered?” He said, “The Asr and this is (the time of) the prayer of Allah’s Messenger which we used to offer with him.”

550. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Allah’s Messenger used to offer the Asr prayer at a time when the sun was still hot and high, and if a person went to Al-Awali Al-Madina, he would reach there when the sun was still high. Some of Al-Awali of Al-Madina were about four miles or so from the town.

551. Narrated Anas bin Malik: We used to offer the Asr prayer and after that if one of us went to Quba’, he would arrive there while the sun was still high.

(14) CHAPTER. The sin of one who misses the Asr prayer (intentionally).

552. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: "The sin of one who misses the Asr prayer (intentionally)."
Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever misses the ‘Aṣr Salaṭ (prayer) (intentionally) then it is as if he lost his family and property.”

(15) CHAPTER. One who omits (does not offer) the ‘Aṣr prayer (intentionally)  

553. Narrated Abû Al-Malîh: We were with Buraida in a battle on a cloudy day and he said, “Offer the ‘Aṣr Salaṭ (prayer) early as the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Whoever omits the ‘Aṣr Salaṭ all his (good) deeds will be lost.’”

(16) CHAPTER. Superiority of the ‘Aṣr prayer.

554. Narrated Qais: Jarir said, “We were with the Prophet ﷺ and he looked at the moon on a full-moon night and said, ‘Certainly you will see your Lord as you see this moon and you will have no trouble in seeing Him. So if you can avoid missing (through sleep or business, etc.) a Salaṭ (prayer) before the sunrise (Fajr) and a Salaṭ (prayer) before sunset (‘Aṣr), you must do so.’ He then recited Allâh’s Statement:

‘...And glorify the Praises of your Lord before the rising of the sun and before (its) setting’” (Q.50:39) 

Ismâ’il said, “Offer those prayers and do not miss them.”

(1) (Ch.15) The one who does not offer the ‘Aṣr prayer intentionally until its stated time is over and if he offers the prayers after that time, then it is useless.
555. Narrated ʿAbū Hurairah: ʿAllāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Angels come to you in succession by night and day, and all of them get together at the time of the Fajr and ʿAsr prayers. Those who have passed the night with you (or stayed with you) ascend (to the heaven) and Allāh asks them, though He knows everything about you, “In what state did you leave my slaves?” The angels reply: “When we left them, they were offering ʿSalāt (prayer) and when we reached them, they were offering ʿSalāt.”

(17) CHAPTER. Whoever got (or was able to offer) only one Rakʿa of the ʿAsr prayer before sunset.

556. Narrated ʿAbū Hurairah: ʿAllāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If anyone of you got (or was able to offer) one Rakʿa of the ʿAsr prayer before sunset, he should complete his ʿSalāt (prayer). If any of you got (or was able to offer) one Rakʿa of the Fajr prayer before sunrise, he should complete his ʿSalāt.”

557. Narrated Sālim bin ʿAbdullāh: My father said, “I heard ʿAllāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, ‘The period of your stay as compared to the previous nations is like the period equal to the time between the ʿAsr prayer and
sunset. The people of the Taurät (Torah) were given the Taurät and they acted (upon it) till mid-day, then they were exhausted and were given one Qirät\(^1\) each. And then the people of the Injeel (Gospel) were given the Injeel and they acted (upon it) till the 'Asr prayer, then they were exhausted and were given one Qirät each. And then we were given the Qur'än and we acted (upon it) till sunset and we were given two Qirät each. On that the people of both the Scriptures said: ‘O our Lord! You have given them two Qirät and given us one Qirät, though we have worked more than they. Allah said: ‘Have I usurped some of your rights?’ They said: ‘No.’ Allah said: ‘That is my Blessing, I bestow upon whomsoever I wish (or will, or want).’”

---

\(^1\) (H.557) Qirät here symbolizes their reward.
employed another batch. They worked for the rest of the day till sunset, and they received the wages of the two former batches." (1) (See Hadith No. 2271, Vol. 3)

(18) CHAPTER. The time of the Maghrib prayer (evening prayer).

‘Atâ’ said: "A person who is sick can offer Maghrib and ‘Ishâ’ prayers together."

559. Narrated Râfi’ bin Khadij i:

We used to offer the Maghrib prayer with the Prophet and after finishing the Salât (prayer) one of us may go away and could still see as far as the spot where one’s arrow might reach when shot by a bow.

560. Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh i:

The Prophet used to offer the Zuhr prayer at mid-day, and the ‘Asr at a time when the sun was still bright, the Maghrib after sunset (at its stated time) and the ‘Ishâ’ at a variable time. Whenever he saw the people assembled (for ‘Ishâ’ prayer) he would offer Salât (prayer) earlier and if the people delayed, he would delay the Salât. And they or the Prophet used to offer the

(1) (H.558) So, this is the similitude of Muslims who accepted Allâh’s Guidance and the teachings of His Messenger, and the similitude of the Jews and Christians who distorted and corrupted their Book and disbelieved in the Prophet who came after ‘Iesa (Jesus). We notice that the Jews and Christians referred to in this Hadith are different from those referred to in Hadith No.532 for the latter were believers and died before the advent of Muḥammad and this is why they are rewarded, while the rewards of the former were given to the Muslims.
9 - THE BOOK OF THE TIMES OF AS-SALÂT

Far prayer when it was still dark.

561. Narrated Salama: We used to offer the Maghrib prayer with the Prophet when the sun disappeared from the horizon.

562. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Prophet offered seven Rak’a together and eight Rak’a together. (See Hadith No. 543)

19) CHAPTER. Whoever disliked to call the Maghrib prayer as the ‘Ishâ’ prayer.

563. Narrated ‘Abdullâh Al-Muzani: The Prophet said, “Do not be influenced by bedouins regarding the name of your Maghrib prayer which is called ‘Ishâ’ by them.”

20) CHAPTER. The mention of ‘Ishâ’ and ‘Atama and whoever took the two names as one and the same.

Narrated Abû Hurairah: The Prophet said, “The most difficult and the hardest Salât (prayers) for the hypocrites are
the 'Ishā' (prayer) and the Fajr (prayer.)” He added, “Had they known what is (the reward of) the ‘Atama (‘Ishā’) and the Fajr (prayers) they would have come to attend them even if they had to crawl.”

Few discussions about Maghrib, ‘Atama i.e. ‘Ishā’, which are merely repetition of the topic of this chapter, are mentioned here in the Arabic text.

564. Narrated Abdullah رضي الله عنه: One night Allah’s Messenger ﷺ led us in the ‘Ishā’ prayer and that is the one called Al-‘Atama by the people. After the completion of the prayer, he faced us and said, “Do you know the importance of this night? Nobody present on the surface of the earth tonight will be living after one hundred years from this night.” (See Hadith No.601).

(21) CHAPTER. The time of the ‘Ishā’ prayer. If the people get together (pray earlier), and if they come late (delay it).

565. Narrated Muhammad bin ‘Amr: We asked Jabir bin ‘Abdullah رضي الله عنهما about
9 - THE BOOK OF THE TIMES OF AṢ-ṢALĀT

the Ṣalāt (prayers) of the Prophet ﷺ. He said, “He used to offer Zuhr prayer at mid-day, the ‘Aṣr when the sun was still hot, and the Maghrib after sunset (at its stated time). The ‘Ishā’ was offered early if the people gathered, and used to be delayed if their number was less; and the morning prayer (Fajr) was offered when it was still dark.”

(22) CHAPTER. Superiority of the ‘Ishā’ prayer.

566. Narrated ‘Aishah ﷺ: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ once delayed the ‘Ishā’ prayer and that was during the days when Islam still had not spread. The Prophet ﷺ did not come out till ‘Umar informed him that the women and children had slept. Then he came out and said to the people in the mosque: “None amongst the dwellers of the earth has been waiting for it (‘Ishā’ prayer) except you.”

567. Narrated Abū Musa ﷺ: My companions, who came with me in the boat, and I landed at a place called Baqi’ Buṭṭān. The Prophet ﷺ was at Al-Madīna at that time. One of us used to go to the Prophet ﷺ by turns every night at the time of the ‘Ishā’ prayer. Once, I, along with my companions went to the Prophet ﷺ and he was busy in some of his affairs, so the ‘Ishā’ prayer was delayed to the middle of the night. He then came out and led the people [in (Ṣalāt)
After finishing from the Salah, he addressed the people present there saying, "Be patient! Don't go away. Have the glad tidings. It is from the Blessing of Allah upon you that none amongst mankind has offered Salah at this time save you." Or said, "None except you has offered prayer at this time." Abú Músa added, "So we returned happily after what we heard from Allah's Messenger ﷺ."

(23) CHAPTER. What is disliked about sleeping before the 'Ishã' prayer.

568. Narrated Abú Barza: Allah's Messenger ﷺ disliked to sleep before the 'Ishã' prayer and to talk after it.

(24) CHAPTER. Sleeping before the 'Ishã' prayer if (one is) overwhelmed by it (sleep).

569. Narrated Ibn Shihâb from 'Urwa: 'Aishah رضي الله عنها said, "Once Allah's Messenger ﷺ delayed the 'Ishã' prayer till 'Umar reminded him by saying, 'The Salah (prayer)! The women and children have slept.' Then the Prophet ﷺ came out and said, 'None amongst the dwellers of the earth has been waiting for it (the prayer) except you.'" Urwa said, "Nowhere except in Al-
Madina the prayer used to be offered (in those days).” He further said, “The Prophet used to offer the ‘Ishā’ prayer in the period between the disappearance of the twilight and the end of the first third of the night.”

570. Narrated Nafi‘: ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Umar said, “Once Allah’s Messenger was busy (at the time of the ‘Ishā’), so the prayer was delayed so much so that we slept and woke up and slept and woke up again. The Prophet came out and said, ‘None amongst the dwellers of the earth but you have been waiting for As-Salāt (the prayer)’.” Ibn ‘Umar did not find any harm in offering it earlier or in delaying it, unless he was afraid that sleep might overwhelm him and he might miss the prayer, and sometimes he used to sleep before the ‘Ishā’ prayer.

571. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbãs: Once Allah’s Messenger delayed the ‘Ishā’ prayer to such an extent that the people slept and got up and slept again and got up again. Then ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭãb stood up and reminded the Prophet of the prayer. ‘Atã’ said, ‘Ibn ‘Abbãs said: “The Prophet came out as if I am looking at him at this time, and water was trickling from his head and he was putting his hand on his head and then said, ‘Hadn’t I thought it hard for my followers, I would have ordered them to offer Salāt (prayer) (‘Ishā’ prayer) at this time.’ I asked ‘Atã’ for further information, how the Prophet had kept his hand on his...
head as he was told by Ibn ‘Abbās. ‘Aţā’ separated his fingers slightly and put their tips on the side of the head, brought the fingers downwards approximating them till the thumb touched the lobe of the ear at the side of the face at the temple and towards the beard. He neither slowed nor hurried in this action but he acted like that. The Prophet ﷺ said: ‘Hadn’t I thought it hard for my followers I would have ordered them to offer Ṣalāt at this time.’”

(25) CHAPTER. Time of the ‘Işā’ prayer is up to the middle of the night.

And Abū Barza said that the Prophet ﷺ used to prefer to pray ‘Işā’ late.

572. Narrated Anas i.i. The Prophet ﷺ delayed the ‘Işā’ prayer till midnight and then he offered the prayer and said, “The people offered Ṣalāt (prayer) and slept but you have been in prayer as long as you have been waiting for it (the prayer).”

Anas added: As if I am looking now at the glitter of the ring of the Prophet ﷺ on that night.

(26) CHAPTER. Superiority of the Fajr (early morning) prayer.
573. Narrated Jarir bin ‘Abdullah: We were with the Prophet and he looked at the moon on a full-moon night and said, “You will certainly see your Lord as you see this (moon), and there will be no trouble in seeing Him. So, if you can avoid missing (through sleep, business, etc.) a prayer before the rising of the sun (Fajr) and before its setting (‘Asr) you must do so.”

He (the Prophet) then recited the following Verse:

“...And glorify the Praises of your Lord before the rising of the sun and before (its) setting.” (V.20:130)

574. Narrated Abu Musa: Allah’s Messenger said, “Whoever offers the two cool Salah (prayers) (‘Asr and Fajr) will enter Paradise.”

575. Narrated Anas bin Zaid bin Thabit: “We took the Sahur [the meal taken before dawn while Saum (fasting) is observed] with the Prophet and then stood up for the (early morning) Salah (prayer).”
asked him how long the interval between the two (Sahūr and Ṣalāt) was. He replied, “The interval between the two was just sufficient to recite fifty or sixty ‘Ayāt.”

576. Narrated Qatada: Anas bin Malik رضي الله عنه said, “The Prophet ﷺ and Zaid bin Thābit took the Sahūr together and after finishing the meal, the Prophet ﷺ stood up for Ṣalāt (the prayers) (Fajr prayer).” I asked Anas, “How long was the interval between finishing their Sahūr and starting Ṣalāt?” He replied, “The interval between the two was just sufficient to recite fifty ‘Ayāt (Verses of the Qur’an).”

577. Narrated Sahl bin Sa’d رضي الله عنه: I used to take the Sahūr meal with my family and hasten so as to catch the Fajr (early morning prayer) with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ.

578. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: The believing women, covered with their veiling sheets, used to attend the Fajr prayer with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, and after finishing the Ṣalāt (prayer) they would return to their homes and nobody could recognize them because of darkness.
(28) CHAPTER. Whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak‘a of the Fajr prayer (in time). [One Rak‘a means, one standing, one bowing, and two prostrations].

579. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak‘a of the Fajr prayer (in time), he got the morning (Fajr) prayer and whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak‘a of the ‘Asr prayer before sunset, he got the (‘Asr) prayer.”

(29) CHAPTER. Whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak‘a of a prayer (in time).

580. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever got (or was able to offer) one Rak‘a of As-Salāt (the prayer), (in time) he got that Salāt (prayer).”

(30) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the offering of As-Salāt (the prayers) between the Fajr prayer and sunrise.

581. Narrated ‘Umar: The Prophet ﷺ forbade offering As-Salāt (the prayer) after the Fajr prayer till the sun rises and after the ‘Asr prayer till the sun sets.

Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Some people told me the same narration (as above).
582. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: Allah's Messenger said, "Do not offer Salāt (prayer) at the time of sunrise and at the time of sunset."

583. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: Allah's Messenger said, "If the edge of the sun appears (above the horizon) delay As-Salāt (the prayer) till it becomes high, and if the edge of the sun disappears, delay As-Salāt till it sets (disappears completely)."

584. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah's Messenger forbade two kinds of sales, two kinds of dresses, and two Šalāt (prayers). He forbade offering Šalāt after the Fajr prayer till the rising of the sun; and after the 'Asr prayer till the setting of the sun. He also forbade Işhtimal-Asşāmmā and Al-Iştihibā in one garment in such a way that one's private parts are exposed towards the sky. He also forbade the sales called Munābaqā and Mulāmasa. (See Hadīth No.2144 and 2145, Vol.3).
CHAPTER. One should not try to offer As-Salāt (the prayer) just before sunset.

585. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “None of you should try to offer As-Salāt (the prayer) at sunrise or sunset.”

586. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudri: I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “There is no Salāt (prayer) after the morning prayer (Fajr prayer) till the sun rises, and there is no prayer after the ‘Asr prayer till the sun sets.”

587. Narrated Mu‘āwiyah: You offer a Salāt (prayer) which I did not see being offered by Allah’s Messenger ﷺ when we were in his company, and he certainly had forbidden it (i.e., two Rak‘ā after the ‘Asr prayer).

588. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ forbade the offering of
two Salāt (prayers):
1. After the Fajr (early morning) prayer till the sun rises.
2. After the ‘Asr prayer till the sun sets.

(32) CHAPTER. Whoever did not dislike to offer optional prayers except after the compulsory prayers of ‘Asr and Fajr only.

This has been narrated by ‘Umar, Ibn ‘Umar, Abū Sa‘d and Abū Hurairah.

589. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: I offer Salāt as I saw my companions offering them. I do not forbid offering of prayers at any time during the day or night except at sunset and sunrise.

(33) CHAPTER. To offer the missed Salāt (prayers) and the like after the ‘Asr prayer.

And narrated Umm Salama رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ offered two Rak‘a after the ‘Asr prayer and said, “Some people of the tribe of ‘Abdul-Qais made me busy and did not let me offer the two Rak‘a after the Zuhr prayer.”

590. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها: By Allāh Who took away the Prophet, the Prophet ﷺ never missed them (two Rak‘a) after the ‘Asr prayer till he met Allāh; and he did not meet Allāh تعلَّم till it became heavy for him to offer As-Salāt (the prayer) while standing. So, he used to offer most of the Salāt (prayers) while sitting. (She meant the two Rak‘a after ‘Asr). He used to offer them
in the house and never offered them in the mosque, lest it might be hard for his followers and he loved what was easy for them.

591. Narrated Hishãm’s father: ‘Āishã (addressing me) said, “O son of my sister! The Prophet ﷺ never missed two prostrations (i.e. Rak’ã) after the ‘Asr prayer in my house.”

592. Narrated ‘Āishah: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ never missed two Rak’ã before the Fajr prayer and two Rak’ã after the ‘Asr prayer openly and secretly.

593. Narrated ‘Āishah: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ came to me after the ‘Asr prayer, he always offered two Rak’ã.

(34) CHAPTER. To offer (the ‘Asr prayers) earlier on a cloudy day.

594. Narrated Ibn Abú Mâlih: I was with

(1) (H.591) See chapter No.33 after the Hadîth No.589.
(2) (H.593) See chapter No.33 after the Hadîth No.589.
Buraida on a cloudy day and he said, “Offer the ‘Asr prayer earlier as the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Whoever omits (does not offer) the ‘Asr prayer, all his (good) deeds will be lost.’

(See Hadith No.552 and 553).

(35) CHAPTER. The Adhân for the Salât (prayer) after its stated time is over.

595. Narrated Abi Qatada: One night we were travelling with the Prophet ﷺ and some people said, “We wish that Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ would take rest along with us during the last hours of the night.” He said, “I am afraid that you will sleep and miss the (Fajr) prayer.” Bilal said, “I will make you get up.” So, all slept and Bilal rested his back against his Râhila and he too was overwhelmed (by sleep) and slept. The Prophet ﷺ got up when the edge of the sun had risen and said, “O Bilãl! What about your statement?” He replied, “I have never slept such a sleep.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Allâh took your souls when He wished, and returned them to you when He wished. O Bilâl! Get up and pronounce the Adhân for As-Salât (the prayer).” The Prophet ﷺ performed ablution and when the sun came up and became bright, he stood up and offered the Salât (prayer).

(36) CHAPTER. Whoever led the people in Salât (prayer) after its time was over.
596. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: On the Day of Al-Khandaq (the battle of Trench), ‘Umar bin Al-Khattāb came cursing the disbelievers of Quraish after the sun had set and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger, I could not offer the ‘Asr prayer till the sun was about to set.” The Prophet said, “By Allāh! I, too, have not offered the Salāt (prayer).”

So, we turned towards Buθān, and the Prophet performed ablution and we too performed ablution and offered the ‘Asr prayer after the sun had set, and then he offered the Maghrib prayer.

(37) CHAPTER. One who forgets a Salāt (prayer) should offer it when he remembers it, and should not repeat anything except that particular prayer.

Ibrāhīm said: If one missed unintentionally one prayer 20 years ago then he should offer only that Salāt (prayer).

597. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, “If anyone forgets a Salāt (prayer) he should offer that prayer when he remembers it. There is no expiation except to offer the same.” Then he recited “...And perform As-Salāt (Iqāmat-as-Salāt) for My (i.e., Allāh’s) Remembrance.” (V.20:14).
(38) CHAPTER. The Qadā of prayers (Qadā means to perform or offer or do a missed religious obligation after its stated time).

598. Narrated Jābir b. 'Umar came cursing the disbelievers (of Quraish) on the day of Al-Khandaq (the battle of Trench) and said, “I could not offer the 'Asr prayer till the sun had set.” Then we went to Buthān and he offered the ('Asr) prayer after sunset and then he offered the Maghrib prayer.

(39) CHAPTER. What is disliked about talking after the 'Ishā' prayer.

599. Narrated Abūl-Minhāl: My father and I went to Abī Barza Al-Aslami and my father said to him, “Tell us how Allah’s Messenger used to offer the compulsory congregational Salāt (prayers).” He said, “He used to offer the Zuhr prayer, which you call the first prayer, as the sun declined at noon, the 'Asr at a time when one of us could go to his family at the farthest place in Al-Madīna while the sun was still hot. (The narrator forgot what Abī Barza had said about the Maghrib prayer), and the Prophet preferred to offer the 'Ishā' prayer late and disliked to sleep before it or
talk after it. And he used to return after finishing the morning prayer (Fajr prayer) at such a time when it was possible for one to recognize the person sitting by his side and he (the Prophet ﷺ) used to recite 60 to 100 'Ayāt' (Verses) of the Qur'an in it."

(40) CHAPTER. Talking about the Islamic jurisprudence and good things after the 'Ishā' prayer.

600. Narrated Qurra bin Khālid that once he waited for Al-Hasan and he did not show up till it was about the usual time for him to start his speech; then he came and apologized saying, “Our neighbours invited us.” Then he added, “Narrated Anas: Once we waited for the Prophet ﷺ till it was midnight or about midnight. He came and led us in the prayer, and after finishing it, he addressed us and said, ‘All the people have offered their prayers and then slept and you had been in prayer as long as you were waiting for it.’” Al-Hasan said, “The people are regarded as performing good deeds as long as they are waiting for doing good deeds.” Al-Hasan’s statement is a portion of Anās Hadith from the Prophet ﷺ.

601. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ offered one of the 'Ishā' prayer in his last days and after finishing it with Taslim, he stood up and said, “Do you realize (the importance of) this night? Nobody present on the surface of the earth tonight would be living after the completion of one hundred years from this night.”
The people made a mistake in grasping the meaning of this statement of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and they indulged in those things which are said about these narrations (i.e., some said that the Day of Resurrection will be established after 100 years etc.) but the Prophet ﷺ said, “Nobody present on the surface of earth tonight would be living after the completion of 100 years from this night”; he meant “When that century (people of that century) would pass away.”

602. Narrated Abū ’Uthmān: ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin Abī Bakr said, “As-Ṣuffa companions were poor people and the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Whoever has food for two persons should take a third one from them (As-Ṣuffa companions). And whosoever has food for four persons he should take one or two from them’ Abū Bakr took three men and the Prophet ﷺ took ten of them.”

Abdur Raḥmān added: My father my mother and I were there (in the house). (The subnarrator is in doubt whether ‘Abdur Raḥmān also said, ‘My wife and our servant who was common for both my house and Abū Bakr’s house). Abū Bakr took his supper with the Prophet ﷺ and remained there till the ‘Ishā’ prayer was offered. Abū Bakr (after the prayer) went back and stayed with the Prophet ﷺ till the Prophet ﷺ took his meal and then Abū Bakr returned to his house.

1 (H.601) This was a sign of Prophethood, for what Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said was proved, as the last of his companions to die was Abū At-Ṭūfāl ‘Āmir bin Wāḥitha who died 100 years after the prophecy of the Prophet ﷺ and he was 110 years old then.
after a long portion of the night had passed. Abū Bakr’s wife said, “What detained you from your guests (or guest)?” He said, “Have you not served them yet?” She said, “They refused to eat until you come. The food was served for them but they refused.” ‘Abdur Raḥmān added: I went away and hid myself (being afraid of Abū Bakr) and in the meantime he (Abū Bakr) called me, “O Ghunthar (a harsh word)!" and also called me bad names and abused me and then said, “Eat! No welcome for you.” Then (the supper was served). Abū Bakr took an oath that he would not eat that food. The narrator added: By Allāh, whenever any one of us (myself and the guests of Ās-Ṣuﬄa companions) took anything from the food, it increased from underneath. We all ate to our fill and the food was more than it was before its serving.

Abū Bakr looked at it (the food) and found it as it was before serving or even more than that. He addressed his wife (saying) “O the sister of Banī Firaṣ! What is this?” She said, “O the pleasure of my eyes! The food is now three times more than it was before.” Abū Bakr ate from it, and said, “That (oath) was from Satan”, meaning his oath (not to eat). Then he took a morsel (mouthful) from it and then took the rest of it to the Prophet ﷺ. So that meal was with the Prophet ﷺ. There was a treaty between us and some people, and when the period of that treaty had elapsed the Prophet ﷺ divided us into twelve (groups) (the Prophet’s Companions) each being headed by a man. Allāh knows how many men were under the command of each (leader). So all of them (12 groups of men) ate of that meal (or said something like that).
10 - THE BOOK OF ADHAN

(1) CHAPTER. How the Adhan for Salat (prayer) was started.

And the Statement of Allah:

“And when you proclaim the call for As-Salât [call for the prayer (Adhan)], they take it (but) as a mockery and fun; that is because they are a people who understand not.” (V.5:58).

And also the Statement of Allah:

“...When the call (Adhan) is proclaimed for the Salat (prayer) on the day of Friday…” (V.62:9).

603. Narrated Anas: The people mentioned the fire and the bell [they suggested those as signals to indicate the time to offer Salat (prayers)], and by that they mentioned the Jews and the Christians. Then Bilal was ordered to pronounce Adhan for the Salat by saying its wordings twice (in doubles) and for the Iqama (the call for the actual standing for the Salat in rows) by saying its wordings once (in singles) (Iqama is pronounced when the people are ready for the Salat).

604. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: When the Muslims arrived at Al-Madina, they used to assemble for Aṣ-Salât (the prayer), and used to guess the time for it. During those days, the practice of Adhan for Salat (prayers) had not been introduced yet. Once they discussed this problem regarding the call for Salat. Some people suggested the use of a bell like the Christians, others

(1) (Book. 10) Adhan: The call to prayer pronounced loudly to indicate that the time of praying is due. And it is as follows: Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar, Aṣ-ḥadu an la ilaha illallah, Aṣ-ḥadu an la ilaha illallah, Aṣ-ḥadu anna Muḥammadan Rasūl-Ullah, Aṣ-ḥadu anna Muḥammadan Rasūl-Ullah, Haiya ‘alas-Salāḥ, Haiya ‘alas-Salāḥ, Haiya ‘alas-Salāḥ, Haiya ‘alas-Falāḥ, Haiya ‘alas-Falāḥ, Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar, Lā ilaha illallah.

[345]
proposed a trumpet like the horn used by the Jews, but ‘Umar was the first to suggest that a man should call (the people) for As-Salāt; so, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ ordered Bilāl to get up and pronounce the Adhān for As-Salāt.

(2) CHAPTER. Pronouncing the wording of Adhān for Salāt (prayers) twice (in doubles).

605. Narrated Anas: Bilāl was ordered to repeat the wording of the Adhān for Salāt (prayers) twice (in doubles) and to pronounce the wording of the Iqāma once (in singles) except Qad-qāmat-is-Salāt.

606. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: When the number of Muslims increased they discussed the question as to how to know the time for As-Salāt (the prayers) by some familiar means. Some suggested that a fire be lit [at the time of Salāt (prayer)] and others put forward the proposal to ring the bell.

Bilāl was ordered to pronounce the wording of Adhān twice (in doubles) and of the Iqāma once (in singles) only.

(3) CHAPTER. To pronounce the wording of Iqāma once (in singles) except Qad-qāmat-is-Salāt.

607. Narrated Abū Qilāba: Anas ﷺ said, “Bilāl was ordered to pronounce the wording of Adhān twice (in doubles) and of Iqāma once (in singles) only.” The subnarrator Ismā’īl said, “I mentioned that
to Ayyūb and he added (to that), “Except 
Iqāma (i.e., Qad-qāmat-is-Ṣalāt which should be said twice).”

(4) CHAPTER. Superiority of the Adhān.

608.Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “When the Adhān is pronounced Satan takes to his heels and passes wind with noise during his flight in order not to hear the Adhān. When the Adhān is completed he comes back, and again takes to his heels when the Iqāma is pronounced; and after its completion he returns again till he whispers into the heart of the person [to divert his attention from his Saḥāt (prayer)] and makes him remember things which he does not recall to his mind before the Saḥāt and that causes him to forget how much he has prayed.”

(5) CHAPTER. Raising the voice in pronouncing the Adhān.

‘Umar bin ‘Abdul ‘Azīz said (to his Mu‘adh-dhīn i.e., call-maker), “Pronounce the Adhān clearly and in a straightforward manner, otherwise we will dismiss you.”

609. Narrated ʿAbdūr Raḥmān: Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī told my father, “I see you liking sheep and the wilderness. So whenever you are with your sheep or in the wilderness and you want to pronounce Adhān for the Saḥāt (prayer) raise your voice in doing so, for whoever hears the Adhān, whether a human being, a jinn or any other creature, will be a witness for you on the Day
(6) CHAPTER. To suspend fighting on hearing the *Adhán*.

610. Narrated Anas bin Malik: “Whenever the Prophet went out with us to fight (in Allah’s Cause) against any nation, he never allowed us to attack till morning and he would wait and see. If he heard *Adhán* he would postpone the attack, and if he did not hear *Adhán* he would attack them.” Anas added, “We reached Khaibar at night and in the morning when he did not hear the *Adhán* for the prayer, he (the Prophet) rode and I rode behind Abi Talha and my foot was touching that of the Prophet. The inhabitants of Khaibar came out with their baskets and spades and when they saw the Prophet they shouted ‘Muhammad! By Allah, Muhammad and his army.’ When Allah’s Messenger saw them, he said, ‘Allahu Akbar! Allahu Akbar! Khaibar is ruined. Whenever we approach a (hostile) nation (to fight), then evil will be the morning of those who have been warned.”

(7) CHAPTER. What to say on hearing the *Adhán*.

611. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: *بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الَّذِي نَعْلَمُ*
10 - THE BOOK OF ADHAN

10: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whenever you hear the Adhan, say just as the Mu’adhdhin is saying.

612. Narrated ‘Iesā bin Ṭalha that he had heard Mu’āwiyya repeating the words of Adhān up to “Wa aṣḥ-hadu anna Muḥammadan Rasūl-Ullāh (and I testify that Muḥammad is Allah’s Messenger.)”

613. Narrated Yahyā as above (586) and added: “Some of my companions told me that Hishām had said, “When the Mu’adhdhin said, ‘Ḥayya ‘alāṣ-Salāh (come for the prayer).’” Mu’āwiyya said, “Lū ḥawla walā qun-wata illā billāh (there is neither might nor any power except with Allah)” and added, “We heard your Prophet ﷺ saying the same.”

(8) CHAPTER. Invocation at the time of Adhān.

614. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنهم: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever after listening to the Adhān says, ‘Allāhumma Rabba ḥāḍhīhid-da’ wātī-tāmmatī was-ṣalātīl qa’īmati, aṭī Muḥammadanil-wastīlata wał-fadīlata, wab-‘aṭhhu maqāman mahmūdanil-ladḥī wa’-adīhā [O Allah! Lord of this perfect call (of not ascribing partners to You) and of
(9) CHAPTER. To draw lots for pronouncing the Adhán.

And it is said that some people differed regarding the pronunciation of Adhán (i.e., who should pronounce the Adhán). So Sa'd drew lots amongst them.

615. Narrated Abu Hurairah : Allah's Messenger said, "If the people knew (the reward for) pronouncing the Adhán and for standing in the first row [in congregational Salât (prayers)] and found no other way to get that except by drawing lots they would draw lots; and if they knew (the reward of) the Zuhr prayer (in the early moments of its stated time) they would race for it (go early); and if they knew (the reward of) 'Ishâ' and Fajr (early morning) prayers in congregation, they would come to offer them even if they had to crawl."

(10) CHAPTER. Talking during the Adhán.

Sulaimân bin Surad talked while pronouncing Adhán. Al-Hasan said, "There is no harm if the Mu'adhdhin laughs while pronouncing the Adhán or Iqâma."

616. Narrated 'Abdullâh bin Al-Hârîth: Once on a rainy, muddy day, Ibn 'Abbâs delivered a Khutba (religious talk) in our presence and when the Mu'adhdhin pronounced the Adhán and was going to
"Haiyya 'alās-Salāh (come for the prayer)," Ibn 'Abbas ordered him to say, "Offer As-Salāt (the prayers) at your homes." The people began to look at each other (surprisingly). Ibn 'Abbas said, "It was done by one who was much better than I (i.e., the Prophet or his Mu'adh-dhīn), and it is a license."

(11) CHAPTER. The Adhān pronounced by a blind man (is permissible) when there is a person to inform him about the time of the Salāt (prayer).

617. Narrated Sālim bin 'Abdullāh: My father said that Allāh's Messenger said, "Bilāl pronounces Adhān at night, so keep on eating and drinking (Sahūr) till Ibn Umm Maktūm pronounces Adhān." Sālim added, "He was a blind man who would not pronounce the Adhān unless he was told that the day had dawned."

(12) CHAPTER. The Adhān after Al-Fajr (dawn).

618. Narrated Ḥafṣa: When the Mu'adh-dhīn pronounced the Adhān for Fajr prayer and the dawn became evident, the Prophet would offer a two Rak'a light prayer (Sunna) before the Iqāma of the compulsory (congregational) Šalāt (prayer).
619. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer two light Rak‘a between the Adhan and the Iqama of the early morning (Fajr) prayer.

620. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Bilal pronounces the Adhan at night, so keep on eating and drinking (Sahûr) till Ibn Umm Maktûm pronounces the Adhan.”

(13) CHAPTER. The Adhan before Al-Fajr (dawn).

621. Narrated ‘Abdullãh bin Mas‘ûd رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The Adhan pronounced by Bilal should not stop you from taking Sahûr, for he pronounces the Adhan at night, so that the one offering the late night prayer (Tahajjud) from among you might hurry up and the sleeping from among you might wake up. It does not mean that Al-Fajr (dawn) or As-Subh (morning) has started.” Then he (the Prophet ﷺ) pointed with his fingers and raised them up (towards the sky) and then lowered them (towards the earth) like this (Ibn Mas‘ûd imitated the gesture of the Prophet ﷺ). Az-Zaheer ﷺ gestured with his two index fingers which he put on each other and then stretched them to the right and left. These gestures illustrate the way real dawn appears. It spreads left and right horizontally.

Adhān at night, so eat and drink (Sahūr) till Ibn Umm Maktūm pronounces the Adhān.”

(14) CHAPTER. How long should the interval between the Adhān and the Iqāma be? (And something concerning) the person who waits for the Iqāma.

624. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Mughaffal Al-Muzani: ‘Allāh’s Messenger said thrice, “There is a Salāt (prayer) between the two Adhān (Adhān and Iqāma),” and (then while saying it) the third time he added, “for the one who wants to offer it.” (See Hadith No. 627)

625. Narrated Anas bin Mãlik, “When the Mu‘āṣir pronounced the Adhān, some of the Companions of the Prophet would proceed to the pillars of the mosque (for the prayer) till the Prophet arrived and in this way they used to offer two Rak‘ā before the Maghrib prayer. There used to be a little time between the Adhān and the Iqāma.”

Shu‘ba said, “There used to be a very short interval between the two (Adhān and Iqāma).”
(15) CHAPTER. Whoever waits for the Iqāma of the prayer.

626. Narrated 'Aīshah: Allāh's Messenger ﷺ used to offer two light Rak‘ā before the Salāt-il-Fajr (morning compulsory prayer) after the day dawned and the Mu‘adh-dhin had finished his Adhān. He then would lie on his right side till the Mu‘adh-dhin came to pronounce the Iqāma.

627. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin Mughaffal: The Prophet ﷺ said, “There is a Salāt (prayer) between the two Adhān (Adhān and Iqāma), there is a Salāt between the two Adhān.” And then while saying it the third time he added, “For the one who wants to (offer it).”

(16) CHAPTER. Between every two calls (Adhān and Iqāma) there is a Salāt (prayer) (that is optional), for the one who wants to offer it.

628. Narrated Mālik bin Huwairth: I came to the Prophet ﷺ with some men
from my tribe and stayed with him for twenty nights. He was kind and merciful to us. When he realized our longing for our families, he said to us, “Go back and stay with your families and teach them (the religion), and offer As-Salât (the prayer) and one of you should pronounce the Adhân for Salât (prayer) when its time is due and the oldest one amongst you should lead the Salât (prayer).”

(18) CHAPTER. If there are many travellers, Adhân and Iqâma should be pronounced, (the same is to be observed) in ‘Arafât and Al-Muzdalifa too.

On a very cold or a rainy night, the Mu’adh-dhin’s saying: As-Salât fir-Riḥāl [Offer Salât (prayer) at your Ar-Riḥāl (homes or camps)].

629. Narrated Abū Dhar: We were in the company of the Prophet on a journey and the Mu’adh-dhin wanted to pronounce the Adhân for the (Zuhr) prayer. The Prophet said to him, “Let it become cooler.” Then he again wanted to pronounce the Adhân but the Prophet said to him, “Let it become cooler.” The Mu’adh-dhin again wanted to pronounce the Adhân but the Prophet said to him, “Let it become cooler, till the shadows of the hillocks become equal to their sizes.” The Prophet added, “The severity of the heat is from the raging of Hell.”

630. Narrated Mālik bin Huwairith: Two men came to the Prophet with the
intention of a journey. The Prophet said, “When (both of) you set out, pronounce *Adhān* and then *Iqāma*, and the oldest of you should lead the *Ṣalāt* (prayer).”

631. Narrated Mālik: We came to the Prophet and stayed with him for twenty days and nights. We were all young and of about the same age. The Prophet was very kind and merciful. When he realized our longing for our families, he asked about our homes and the people there, and we told him. Then he asked us to go back to our families and stay with them and teach them (the religion) and to order them to do good things. He also mentioned some other things which I have (remembered or) forgotten. The Prophet then added, “Offer *Ṣalāt* (prayer) as you have seen me praying; and when it is the time for *Aṣ–Ṣalāt* (the prayer) one of you should pronounce the *Adhān* and the oldest of you should lead the *Ṣalāt*.

632. Narrated Nāfi’: Once, in a cold night, Ibn ‘Umar pronounced the *Adhān* for the *Ṣalāt* (prayer) at Dajnān (the name of a mountain) and then said, “Offer *Ṣalāt* (prayer) at your homes”, and informed us that Allāh’s Messenger used to tell the *Mu’adh-dhīn* to pronounce *Adhān* and say, “*Ala Sallā fir-Rihāl* [offer *Ṣalāt* (prayer) at your *Ar-Rihāl* (homes or camps)]” at the end of the *Adhān* on a rainy or a very cold night during the journey.
633. Narrated ‘Aun bin Abi Juhaifa: My father said, “I saw Allah’s Messenger at a place called Al-Abtah. Bilal came and informed him about Salat (prayer) and then came out with an ‘Anaza and planted it in front of Allah’s Messenger at Al-Abtah and pronounced the Iqama for As-Salat (the prayer).”

(19) CHAPTER. Should the Mu’adh-dhin turn his mouth (face) and look from side to side during the Adhan?

It is said that (during the Adhan) Bilal used to put his (two) fingers in his (two) ears, whereas Ibn ‘Umar never put the fingers in his ears. Ibrahim said that there was no harm in pronouncing the Adhan for the Salat (prayer) without ablation. ‘Ata’ said, “Ablution is essential and it is Sunna (legal way).” Aishah said, “The Prophet used to remember Allah during all times.”

634. Narrated ‘Aun bin Abi Juhaifa: My father said, “I saw Bilal turning his mouth (face) from side to side while pronouncing the Adhan (for the prayer).”

(20) CHAPTER. The saying of a person: “We have missed As-Salat (the prayer).”

According to Ibn Sirin, it is disliked to say: “We have missed As-Salat (the prayer).”
It is better to say: “We have not been able to offer (get) As-Salāt”, but the Prophet’s statement (i.e., we missed As-Salāt), is more correct.

635. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Abī Qatādā: ‘ איש his father said, “While we were offering As-Salāt (the prayer) with the Prophet, he heard the noise of some people. After Şalāt (prayer) he said, ‘What is the matter?’ They replied, ‘We were hurrying for As-Salāt.’ He said, ‘Do not make haste for As-Salāt, and whenever you come for As-Salāt, you should come with calmness, and offer whatever you get (with the people) and complete the rest which you have missed.”

(21) CHAPTER. One should not run for As-Salāt (the prayer) but present himself with calmness and solemnity.

“Offer prayer (in congregation) whatever you are able to pray and complete what you have missed.” Abū Qatādā narrated this from the Prophet.

636. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “When you hear the Iqāma, proceed to offer As-Salāt (the prayer) with calmness and solemnity and do not make haste. And pray whatever you are able to offer and complete whatever you have missed.”

(22) CHAPTER. When should the people get up for the Şalāt (prayer) if they see the Imām
(the person leading Salah) during the Iqama?\(^{(1)}\)

637. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin Abi Qatada: My father said, “Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, ‘If the Iqama is pronounced then do not stand for As-Salat (the prayer) till you see me (in front of you)’.”

(23) CHAPTER. One should not stand for As-Salat (the prayer) hurriedly but with calmness and solemnity.

638. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin Abi Qatada: My father said, “Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, ‘If the Iqama for As-Salat (the prayer) is pronounced, then do not stand for the prayer till you see me (in front of you) and do it calmly’.”

(24) CHAPTER. Can one go out of the mosque (after the Adhan, or the Iqama) if there is a genuine excuse?

639. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ went out (of the mosque) when the Iqama had been pronounced and the rows straightened. The Prophet ﷺ stood at his Musalla (praying place) and we waited for the Prophet ﷺ to begin (the prayer) with Takbir. He left and

(1) (Ch.22) The wordings of the Adhan is reduced so that the wordings that is said twice in the Adhan is said once in Iqama except the last utterance of Allahu-Akbar, and the Salah is offered immediately after Iqama.
called us to remain in our places. We kept on standing till the Prophet returned and the water was trickling from his head for he had taken a bath (of Janaba).

(25) CHAPTER. If the Imam says, “Remain at your places till I return”, then wait for him.

640. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Once Iqāma was pronounced and the people had straightened the rows, Allah’s Messenger went forward [to lead the Salat (prayer)] but he was Junub, so he said, “Remain in your places.” And he went out, took a bath and returned with water trickling from his head. Then he led the Salāt.

(26) CHAPTER. The saying of a man to the Prophet, “We have not prayed.”

641. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: On the day of Al-Khandaq (the battle of Trench), ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb went to the Prophet and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! By Allah, I could not offer the (‘Asr) prayer till the sun had set.” ‘Umar told this to the Prophet at the time when a fasting person had done Iftār (taken his meals). The Prophet said: “By Allah! I, too, have not offered the Salāt (prayer).” The Prophet then went to Buṭḥān and I was with him. He performed ablution and
offered the ‘Asr prayer after the sun had set and then he offered the Maghrib prayer. (See Hadith No. 596)

(27) CHAPTER. If the Imam is confronted with a problem after the Iqama.

642. Narrated Anas: Once the Iqama was pronounced and the Prophet was talking to a man (in a low voice) in a corner of the mosque and he did not lead As-Salat (the prayer) till (some of) the people had slept (dozed in a sitting posture).

(28) CHAPTER. To talk after the Iqama.

643. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Once, after the Iqama for the Salat (prayer) was pronounced a man came to the Prophet and detained him (from the Salat).

(29) CHAPTER. Congregational Salat (prayer) is obligatory.

Al-Hasan said, “If somebody is forbidden by his mother from going to the congregational ‘Ishā’ prayer because of mercy and pity for him, he should not obey her.”

644. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger said, “By Him, in
Whose Hand my soul is, I intended or planned or was about to order for collecting fire-wood (fuel) and then order someone to pronounce the Adhān for As-Salāt (the prayer) and then order someone to lead the Salāt (prayer), then I would go from behind and burn the houses of men who did not present themselves for the (compulsory congregational) Salāt. By Him, in Whose Hands my soul is, if anyone of them had known that he would get a bone covered with good meat or two (small) pieces of meat present in between two ribs, he would have turned up for the ‘Ishā’ prayer.’

(30) CHAPTER. Superiority of the congregational Salāt (prayer).

Whenever Al-Aswād missed the congregational Salāt (prayer) he used to go to another mosque (to offer the Salāt in congregation). Once, Anas came to a mosque where the Salāt was finished; he pronounced the Adhān and then Iqāma and offered the Salāt in congregation.

645. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “The Salāt (prayer) in congregation is twenty-seven times superior in degrees to the Salāt offered by a person alone.”

646. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudri: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The Salāt (prayer) in congregation is twenty-five times superior in degrees to the Salāt offered by a person alone.”
647. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “The reward of the Žalāt (prayer) offered by a person in congregation is multiplied twenty-five times as much than that of the Žalāt offered in one’s house or in the market (alone). And this is because if he performs ablution and does it perfectly and then proceeds to the mosque with the sole intention of offering Žalāt, then, for every step he takes towards the mosque, he is upgraded one degree in reward and his one sin is taken off (crossed out) from his accounts (of deeds). When he offers his Žalāt, the angels keep on asking Allāh’s Blessings and Allāh’s Forgiveness for him as long as he is (staying) at his Musalla. They say, ‘O Allāh! Bestow Your Blessings upon him, be Merciful and kind to him.’ And one is regarded in Žalāt as long as one is waiting for the Žalāt.”

648. Narrated Abū Salama bin ‘Abdur Rahman: Abū Hurairah said, “I heard Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, ‘The reward of a Žalāt (prayer) in congregation is twenty-five times superior in degrees than that of a Žalāt offered by a person alone. The angels of the night and the angels of the day gather at the time of Žajr prayer.’”

Abū Hurairah then added, “Recite (the Qur’ān) if you wish, ‘Verily, the recitation of the Qur’ān in the early dawn (i.e. the morning — Žajr prayer) is ever witnessed
(attended by the angels in charge of mankind of the day and the night).” (V.17:78).

649. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: The reward of the congregational Salāt is twenty-seven times more (than that of the Salāt offered by a person alone).

650. Narrated Sālim: I heard Umm Ad-Darda’ saying, “Abū Ad-Dardā’ entered the house in an angry mood. I said to him, ‘What makes you angry?’ He replied, ‘By Allah! I do not find the followers of Muhammad doing those good things (which they used to do before) except the offering of congregational Salāt (prayer).’” (This happened in the last days of Abū Ad-Dardā’ during the rule of ‘Uthmān).

651. Narrated Abū Mūsa: The Prophet  said, “The people who get tremendous reward for As-Salāt (the prayer) are those who are farthest away (from the mosque) and then those who are next farthest and so on. Similarly one who waits to offer As-Salāt with the Imam has greater reward than one who offers it (alone) and goes to bed.”

(32) CHAPTER. The superiority of offering the Zuhr prayer early.

652. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger  said, “While a man was going on a way, he saw a thorny branch and removed it from the way and Allāh became pleased by his action and forgave him for that.”
653. Then (the Prophet said), “Five are martyrs: One who dies of plague, one who dies of an abdominal disease, one who dies of drowning, one who is buried alive (and) dies and one who is killed in Allah's Cause.”

The Prophet further said, “If the people knew (the reward for) pronouncing the Adhān and for standing in the first row (in the congregational Salāt) and found no other way to get it except by drawing lots they would do so.

654. [The Prophet added:] “And if they knew (the reward of) offering the Zuhr prayer early (in its stated time), they would race for it and if they knew (the reward for) ‘Ishā’ and Fajr prayers in congregation, they would attend them even if they were to crawl.”

(33) CHAPTER. Every step towards good deeds is rewarded.

655. (V.36:12) Narrated Ḩumayd: Anas said, “The Prophet said, ‘O Bānī Salīmā! Don’t you think that for every step of yours (that you take towards the mosque) there is a reward [while coming for the five compulsory Salāt (prayers)]?’” Mujāhid said: Regarding Allah’s Statement: “...We record that which they send before (them), and their traces...” (V.36:12)

656. (V.36:12) ‘Their traces’ means ‘their steps’.” And Anas said that the people of Bānī Salīmā wanted to shift to a place near the Prophet but Allāh’s Messenger disliked that Al-Madīna (city) should become
naked [i.e., with empty outskirts – without inhabitants. i.e., the leaving of their houses (empty)] and said, “(O Bani Salima) Don’t you think that you will get the reward for your traces (every step) of yours (that you take towards the Prophet’s mosque) there is a reward while coming for the five compulsory Salat.” Mujahid said, “Their traces mean their foot-steps and their going on foot.”

(34) CHAPTER. The superiority of the ‘Ishā’ prayer in congregation.

657. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet said, “No Salat (prayer) is more heavy (harder) for the hypocrites than the Fajr and the ‘Ishā’ prayers and if they knew the reward for these Salat, at their respective times, they would certainly present themselves (in the mosques) even if they had to crawl.” The Prophet added, “Certainly I intended or planned or was about to order the Mu’adh-dhin (call-maker) to pronounce Iqama and order a man to lead the Salat and then take a fire flame (burning torch) to burn all those men (along with their houses) who had not yet left their houses for the Salat (in the mosques).”

(35) CHAPTER. Two or more than two persons are considered as a group (for the congregational prayers).

658. Narrated Malik bin Huwairith: The Prophet said (to two persons), “Whenever As-Salat (the prayer) time becomes due, you should pronounce Adhān and then Iqama and the older of you should lead the prayer.”
(36) CHAPTER. (The reward of a person) who waits for As-Salāt (the prayer) in the mosque and the superiority of mosques.

659. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “The angels keep on asking for Allah’s Blessing and Forgiveness for anyone of you as long as he is at his Musallā (praying place) and does not do Hadāth (passes wind). The angels say, ‘O Allah! Forgive him and be Merciful to him.’ Each one of you is in Salāt as long as he is waiting for the Salāt and nothing but Salāt detains him from going to his family.”

660. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Allah will give shade to seven, on the Day when there will be no shade but His. (These seven persons are:) (1) a just ruler, (2) a youth who has been brought up in the worship of Allah (i.e. worships Allah Alone sincerely from his childhood), (3) a man whose heart is attached to the mosques [i.e., who offers the five compulsory congregational Salāt (prayers) in the mosques], (4) two persons who love each other only for Allah’s sake and they meet and part in Allah’s Cause only, (5) a man who refuses the call of a charming woman of noble birth for illegal sexual intercourse with her and says: I am afraid of Allah, (6) a man who gives charitable gifts so secretly that his left hand does not know what his right hand has given (i.e. nobody knows how much he has given in charity), and (7) a person who remembers Allah in seclusion and his eyes become flooded with tears.”

661. Narrated Humaid: Anas ﷺ was asked, “Did Allah’s Messenger ﷺ wear a
ring?” He said, “Yes. Once he delayed the ‘Ishā’ prayer till mid-night and after the prayer, he faced us and said, ‘The people have offered Salāt and have slept and you remained in Salāt as long as you waited for it.’” Anas added, “As if I were just now observing the glitter of his ring.”

(37) CHAPTER. The superiority of going to the mosque (every) morning and in the afternoon and evening [for the congregational Salāt (prayers)].

662. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Allāh will prepare for him who goes to the mosque (every) morning and in the afternoon [for the congregational Salāt (prayer)] an honourable place in Paradise with good hospitality for (what he has done) every morning and afternoon goings.

(38) CHAPTER. No Salāt (prayer) (is to be offered) except the compulsory Salāt after the Iqāma has been pronounced for that compulsory Salāt.

663. Narrated Mālik bin Buḥaina: Allāh’s Messenger passed by or saw a man offering two Rak’ā after the Iqāma (had been pronounced). When Allāh’s Messenger completed the Salāt (prayer), the people gathered around him (the Prophet) or that man and Allāh’s Messenger said to him (protestingly), “Are there four Rak’ā in Fajr prayer? Are there four Rak’ā in Fajr prayer?”
664. Narrated Al-Aswad, “We were with ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها discussing the regularity of offering As-Salāt (the prayer) and dignifying it. She said, ‘When Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ fell sick with his fatal illness and when the time of As-Salāt became due and Ḥaḍīth was pronounced, he said, ‘Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in Salāt (prayer).’ He was told that Abū Bakr was a soft-hearted man and would not be able to lead the Salāt in his place. The Prophet ﷺ gave the same order again but, he was given the same reply. He gave the order for the third time and said, ‘You (women) are the companions of Yūsuf (Joseph). Tell Abū Bakr to lead the Salāt.’ So, Abū Bakr came out to lead the Salāt. In the meantime the condition of the Prophet ﷺ improved a bit and he came out with the help of two men, one on each side. As if I was observing his legs dragging on the ground owing to the
discomfort. Abū Bakr wanted to retreat but the Prophet beckoned him to remain at his place and the Prophet was brought till he sat beside Abū Bakr.” Al-A‘mash was asked, “Was the Prophet offering prayers and Abū Bakr was following him, and were the people following Abū Bakr in that Salāt,” A‘mash replied in the affirmative with a nod of his head.

Abū Mu‘awiyya said, “The Prophet was sitting on the left side of Abū Bakr who was offering prayers while standing.”

665. Narrated ‘Aishah: When the Prophet became seriously ill and his disease aggravated, he asked for permission from his wives to be nursed in my house and he was allowed. He came out with the help of two men while his legs were dragging on the ground. He was between Al-‘Abbãs and another man.”

‘Ubad-ULLâh said, “I told Ibn ‘Abbãs what ‘Aishah had narrated and he said, ‘Do you know who was the (second) man whose name ‘Aishah did not mention?’ I said, ‘No.’ Ibn ‘Abbãs said, ‘He was ‘Ali bin Abt Òalib.’”
666. Narrated Nāfi': Once, on a very cold and stormy night, Ibn 'Umar pronounced the Adhān for the Salāt (prayer) and then said, “Offer prayers in your homes.” He (Ibn 'Umar) added, “On very cold and rainy nights Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ used to order the Mu’adh-dhin to say, ‘Offer prayers in your homes’.”

667. Narrated Maḥmūd bin Rabī’ Al-Anṣārī: ‘Ibān bin Malik used to lead his people (tribe) in prayer and he was a blind man, he said to Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, “O Allāh’s Messenger! At times it is dark and flood water is flowing (in the valley) and I am blind man, so please offer prayers at a place in my house so that I can take it as a Muṣallā (praying place).” So, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went to his house and said, “Where do you like me to pray?” ‘Ibān pointed to a place in his house and Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ offered the prayer there.

(40) CHAPTER. It is permissible to pray at one’s dwelling during rain or if there is a genuine excuse.

668. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Al-Ḥārith: ‘Ibān ‘Abbās addressed us on a (rainy and) muddy day and when the
Mu‘adh-dhîn said, “Haiya ‘ala–ṣalât [Come for As–ṣalât (the prayer)].” Ibn ‘Abbâs ordered him to say, “Offer prayers in your Ar–Rahâl (homes).” The people began to look at one another with surprise as if they did not like it. Ibn ‘Abbâs said, “It seems that you thought ill of it but no doubt it was done by one who was better than I (i.e., the Prophet ﷺ). It (As–ṣalât) is a strict order and I disliked to bring you out.”

In another narration Ibn ‘Abbâs narrated the same as above but he said, “I did not like to make you sinful (in refraining from coming to the mosque) and to come (to the mosque) covered with mud up to the knees.”

669. Narrated Abû Sa‘îd Al–Khuḍrî: A cloud came and it rained till the roof (of the mosque) started leaking, and in those days the roof used to be of the branches of date–palms. Iqâma was pronounced and I saw Allah's Messenger ﷺ prostrating in water and mud and even I saw the mark of mud on his forehead.

670. Narrated Anas bin Sirîn: I heard Anas saying, “A man from Anṣâr said to the Prophet ﷺ, ‘I cannot offer As–ṣalât (the prayer) with you (in congregation).’ He was a very fat man and
he prepared a meal for the Prophet ﷺ and invited him to his house. He spread out a mat for the Prophet ﷺ, and washed one of its sides with water, and the Prophet ﷺ offered two Rak'ā prayers on it.” A man from the family of Al-Jarild asked, “Did the Prophet ﷺ used to offer the Duha (forenoon) prayer?” Anas said, “I did not see him offering the Duha prayer except on that day.”

(42) CHAPTER. (What should one do) if the meal has been served and Iqâma has been pronounced for As-Ṣalât (the prayer).

And Ibn ‘Umar used to start with the supper first. Abu Ad-Dardâ’ said, “It is a sign of comprehension (of a person) to fulfil or turn to his needs first so as to offer prayer attentively with a clear mind.”

671. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ said, “If supper is served, and Iqâma is pronounced one should start with the supper.”

672. Narrated Anas bin Mâlik رضي الله عنه: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If the supper is served, start having it before offering the Maghrib prayer and do not be hasty in finishing your supper.”

is served for anyone of you and the Iqâma is pronounced, start with the supper and don’t be in haste (and carry on eating) till you finish it.” If food (supper) was served for Ibn ‘Umar and Iqâma was pronounced, he never came to the prayer till he finished it (i.e., the food) in spite of the fact that he heard the recitation (of the Qur’an) by the Imâm (in the prayer).

674. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar:

The Ḥadîth said, “If anyone of you is having his meals, he should not hurry up till he is satisfied even if the Salât (prayer) has been started.”

(43) CHAPTER. When the Imâm is called for As-Salât (the prayer) while he has in his hands something to eat.

675. Narrated Ja’far bin ‘Amr bin Umaiyya: My father said, “I saw Allah’s Messenger eating a piece of meat from the shoulder of a sheep and he was called for As-Salât (the prayer). He stood up, put down the knife and offered Salât (prayers) but did not perform ablution.”

(44) CHAPTER. If somebody was busy with his domestic work and Iqâma was pronounced and then he came out [for offering the Salât (prayer)].
676. Narrated Al-Aswad that he asked 'Aishah, "What did the Prophet use to do in his house?" She replied, "He used to keep himself busy serving his family and when it was the time for As-Salāt (the prayer), he would go for it."

(45) CHAPTER. Offering Salāt (prayer) in front of the people with the sole intention of teaching them the Salāt of the Prophet and his Sunna.

677. Narrated Ayyūb: Abū Qilāba said, "Mālik bin Ḥuwairith came to this mosque of ours and said, 'I offer As-Salāt (the prayers) in front of you and my aim is not (to lead) the Salāt (prayer) but to show you the way in which the Prophet used to offer Salāt.' I asked Abū Qilāba, "How did he use to offer Salāt?" He replied, "(The Prophet used to pray) like this Sheikh of ours, and the Sheikh used to sit for a while after the prostration before getting up after the first Rakʿat.

(46) CHAPTER. The religious learned men are entitled to precedence in leading the Salāt (prayers).

678. Narrated Abū Mūsa, "The Prophet became sick and when his disease aggravated, he said, 'Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the Salāt (prayer)." 'Aishah said, "He is a soft-hearted man and would not be able to lead the Salāt in
your place.” The Prophet ﷺ said again, “Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in ِṣαλαt. You are the companions of Yūsuf (Joseph).” So a messenger went to Abū Bakr (with that order) and he led the people in ِṣαλαt in the lifetime of the Prophet ﷺ.

679. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها, the Mother of the believers: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ in his illness said, “Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in ِṣαλαt (prayer).” I said to him, “If Abū Bakr stands in your place, the people would not hear him owing to his (excessive) weeping. So please order ‘Umar to lead the ِṣαλαt.” ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها added, I said to Ḥafṣa, “Say to him: If Abū Bakr should lead the people in the ِṣαλαt in your place, the people would not be able to hear him owing to his weeping; so please order ‘Umar to lead the ِṣαλαt.” Ḥafṣa did so but Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Keep quiet! Indeed you (women) are the companions of Yūsuf (Joseph). Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the ِṣαλαt.”

Ḥafṣa said to ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها, “I never got anything good from you.”

680. Narrated Az-Zuhri: Anas bin Mālik Al-‘Aṣirī رضي الله عنه told me, “Abū Bakr used to lead the people in ِṣαλαt (prayer) during the
fatal illness of the Prophet till it was Monday. When the people aligned (in rows) for \(\text{Al-\textit{Salat}}\) (the prayer), the Prophet lifted the curtain of his house and started looking at us and he was standing at that time. His face was (glittering) like a page of the Qur'an and he smiled cheerfully. We were about to be put to trial for the pleasure of seeing the Prophet. Abu Bakr retreated to join the row as he thought that the Prophet would lead \(\text{Al-\textit{Salat}}\). The Prophet beckoned us to complete the \(\text{Salat}\) and he let the curtain fall. On the same day he died."

681. Narrated Anas: The Prophet did not come out for three days. The people stood for \(\text{Al-\textit{Salat}}\) (the prayer) and Abu Bakr went ahead to lead \(\text{Al-\textit{Salat}}\). (In the meantime) the Prophet caught hold of the curtain and lifted it. When the face of the Prophet appeared, we had never seen a scene more pleasing than the face of the Prophet as it appeared then. The Prophet beckoned to Abu Bakr to lead the people in \(\text{Al-\textit{Salat}}\) and then let the curtain fall. We did not see him (again) till he died.
682. Narrated Ḥamzah bin ‘Abdullāh : My father said, “When Allāh’s Messenger became seriously ill, he was told about ʿAs-Salāt (the prayer). He said, ‘Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in ʿAs-Salāt.’ ‘Āishah said, ‘Abū Bakr is a soft-hearted man and he would be over-powered by his weeping if he recited the Qur’ān.’ He said to them, ‘Tell him (Abū Bakr) to lead ʿAs-Salāt. The same reply was given to him. He said again, ‘Tell him to lead the prayer. You (women) are the companions of Yūsuf (Joseph).’”

(47) CHAPTER. Whoever stood by the side of the Imam because of a genuine cause [in Salāt (prayer)].

683. Narrated ‘Urwa’s father: ‘Āishah said, “Allāh’s Messenger ordered Abū Bakr to lead the people in ʿAs-Salāt (the prayer) during his illness and so he led them in prayer.”

‘Urwa, a subnarrator, added, “Allāh’s Messenger felt a bit relieved and came out and Abū Bakr was leading the people (in ʿSalāt). When Abū Bakr saw the Prophet, he retreated but the Prophet beckoned him to remain there. Allāh’s Messenger sat beside Abū Bakr. Abū Bakr was following the ʿSalāt of Allāh’s Messenger and the people were following the ʿSalāt (prayer) of Abū Bakr.”
(48) CHAPTER. If somebody is leading the Salât (prayer) and (in the meanwhile) the first (usual) îmâm comes, the Salât is valid whether the former retreats or does not retreat.

This was narrated by ‘Aishah who heard this from the Prophet .

684. Narrated Sahl bin Sa‘d As-Sa‘îdî: Allah’s Messenger went to establish peace among Banî ‘Amr bin ‘Auîf. In the meantime the time of Ås-Salât (the prayer) was due and the Mu‘adhdîn went to Abû Bakr and said, “Will you lead the Salât (prayer), so that I may pronounce the Iqâma?” Abû Bakr replied in the affirmative and led the Salât. Allah’s Messenger came while the people were still offering Salât and he entered the rows of the praying people till he stood in the (first row). The people clapped their hands. Abû Bakr never glanced sideways in his Salât but when the people continued clapping, Abû Bakr looked and saw Allah’s Messenger beckoned him to stay at his place. Abû Bakr raised his hands and thanked Allah for that order of Allah’s Messenger and then he retreated till he reached the first row. Allah’s Messenger went forward and led the Salât. When Allah’s Messenger finished the Salât, he said, “O Abû Bakr! What prevented you from staying when I ordered you to do so?” Abû Bakr replied, “How can Ibn Abî Quhafa (Abû Bakr) dare to lead the Salât in the presence of Allah’s Messenger?” Then Allah’s Messenger said, “Why did you clap so much? If something happens
to anyone during his Șalât he should say Subhân Allah(1). If he says so he will be attended to, and clapping is for women.”

(49) CHAPTER. If some people are equally proficient in the recitation of the Qur‘ān (and religious knowledge), the oldest of them should lead ʿAs-Salât (the prayer).

685. Narrated Mālik bin Ḥuwairīth Z: We went to the Prophet ﷺ and we were all young men and stayed with him for about twenty nights. The Prophet ﷺ was very merciful. He said, “When you return home, impart religious teachings to your families and tell them to offer perfectly such and such a Șalât (prayer) at such and such time and such and such a Șalât at such and such a time. And at the time of ʿAs-Salât (the prayer) one of you should pronounce the ʿAdhān and the oldest of you should lead the Șalât.”

(50) CHAPTER. If the ʿImām visited some people and led them in Șalât (prayer).

686. Narrated Itbān bin Mālik Al-Anṣārī

(1) (H.684) To honour Allāh and make Him free from all that (unsuitable evil things) that are ascribed to Him (or glorified be Allāh).
The Prophet (saww) (came to my house and) asked permission for entering and I allowed him. He asked, “Where do you like me to offer Salāt (prayer) in your house?” I pointed to a place which I liked. He stood up for Salāt and we aligned behind him and he finished the Salāt with Taslim and we did the same.

(51) CHAPTER. The Imam is appointed to be followed.

The Prophet (saww) in his fatal illness led the people in Salāt (prayer) while he was sitting (and the people were standing). Ibn Mas'ūd said, “If anyone raises his head (while in prostration) before the Imam, he must prostrate again and must remain in prostration for a period equal to that he has lost by lifting his head before the Imam, and then he should follow the Imam.” And Al-Hasan said, “A person who is offering two Rakā Salāt with the Imam but (because of the rush of people) is unable to prostrate, then he should prostrate twice for the last Rakā and make up for his Rakā with its prostrations. And if somebody forgets to prostrate and stands up then he should prostrate.”

687. Narrated 'Ubad-ullāh bin 'Abdullāh bin 'Utba: I went to 'Āishah (ra) and asked her to describe to me the illness of Allāh’s Messenger (saww). 'Āishah (ra) said, “Yes (I will tell you). The Prophet (saww) became seriously ill and asked whether the people had offered the Salāt (prayer). We replied, ‘No, O Allāh’s Messenger! They are...”
waiting for you.' He added, 'Put water for me in a trough.' 'Aishah added: 'We did so. He took a bath and tried to get up, but fainted. When he recovered, he again asked whether the people had offered the Salāt. We said, 'No, they are waiting for you. O Allah's Messenger.' He again said, 'Put water for me in a trough.' He sat down and took a bath and tried to get up, but fainted again. Then he recovered and said, 'Have the people offered the Salāt?' We replied, 'No, they are waiting for you, O Allah's Messenger.' He said, 'Put water for me in the trough.' Then he sat down and washed himself and tried to get up but he fainted. When he recovered, he asked, 'Have the people offered the Salāt?' We said, 'No, they are waiting for you, O Allah's Messenger!' The people were in the mosque waiting for the Prophet for the 'Ishā prayer. The Prophet sent for Abū Bakr to lead the people in the Salāt. The messenger went to Abū Bakr and said, 'Allah's Messenger orders you to lead the people in the Salāt.' Abū Bakr was a soft-hearted man, so he asked 'Umar to lead the Salāt but 'Umar replied, 'You are more rightful.' So Abū Bakr led the Salāt in those days. When the Prophet felt a bit better, he came out for the Zuhr prayer with the help of two persons one of whom was Al-'Abbas, while Abū Bakr was leading the people in the Salāt. When Abū Bakr saw him (the Prophet), he wanted to retreat but the Prophet beckoned him not to do so and asked them to make him sit beside Abū Bakr and they did so. Abū Bakr was following the Prophet (in the Salāt) and the people were following Abū Bakr. The Prophet (offered Salāt) sitting."

'Ubaid-ullāh added, "I went to 'Abdullāh bin 'Abbās and asked him, 'Shall I tell you
what ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها has told me about the fatal illness of the Prophet?’ Ibn ‘Abbas said, ‘Go ahead.’ I told him her narration and he did not deny anything of it but asked whether ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها told me the name of the second person (who helped the Prophet ﷺ) along with Al-‘Abbas. I said, ‘No.’ He said, ‘He was ‘Ali (Ibn Abī Ṭālib).’

688. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها, the Mother of the believers: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, during his illness, offered ʿSalāt (prayer) at his house while sitting; whereas some people offered ʿSalāt behind him standing. The Prophet ﷺ beckoned them to sit down. On completion of the ʿSalāt, he said, “The Imām is to be followed: bow when he bows, raise up your heads (stand erect) when he raises up his head and when he says, ‘Samiʿ Allāhu ʿAlayhi wa sallāhu ‘Alayhī wa sallam’ (O our Lord! All the praises are for You), and if he (Imām) is (leading) the ʿSalāt in sitting position, you should also offer ʿSalāt like that.”(1)

(1) (H.688) The provision of this Ḥadīth has been abrogated by the last action of the Prophet ﷺ [See Ḥadīth No.689 and Ḥadīth No.5658 - Vol.7 for taking the verdict].
689. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Once Allah’s Messenger rode a horse and fell down and the right side (of his body) was injured. He offered one of the Salāt (prayers) while sitting and we also offered Salāt behind him sitting. When he completed the Salāt, he said, “The Imām is to be followed. Offer Salāt standing if he is offering the Salāt standing and bow when he bows; raise up when he raises up and if he says, ‘Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamidah,’ then offer it sitting (all of you) if he is offering the Salāt sitting.”

Humaidi said: The statement of the Prophet “Offer Salāt sitting, if he (Imām) is offering the Salāt sitting” was said in his former illness (during his early life) but later on the Prophet offered Salāt sitting (in the last illness) and the people offered Salāt standing behind him and the Prophet did not order them to sit. So one has to follow the last action of the Prophet. [Please see Hadith No.5658].

(52) CHAPTER. When should those who are behind the Imām prostrate?

Anas said, “Prostrate when the Imām prostrates.”

690. Narrated Al-Barā’ (and he was not a liar): When Allah’s Messenger said, “Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamidah” none of us
bent his back (for prostrations) till the Prophet ﷺ prostrated and then we would prostrate after him.

(53) CHAPTER. The sin of the one who raises his head before the Imam (raises his head).

691. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Isn’t he who raises his head before the Imam afraid that Allah may transform his head into that of a donkey? Or his figure (face) into that of a donkey?” [See Hadith No.717 and its footnote].

(54) CHAPTER. A slave or a manumitted slave can lead the Salāt (prayer).

(‘Aishah was led in the Salāt (prayer) by her slave Dḥakwān who used to recite from the Mushaf [the written Qur’ān (not from memory)]. Can an illegitimate boy, a bedouin or a boy who has not reached the age of puberty lead the Salāt? (It is permissible according to) the statement of the Prophet ﷺ that the Imam should be a person who knows the Qur’ān more than the others.

692. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: When the earliest emigrants came to Al-
‘Uṣba, a place in Qubţ, before the arrival of the Prophet, Sālih, the slave of Abu Ḥudhaifa, who knew the Qur’an more than the others, used to lead them in Salât (prayer).

693. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, “Listen and obey (your chief) even if an Ethiopian whose head is like a raisin were made your chief.”

(55) CHAPTER. If the Imam does not offer the Salât (prayer) perfectly and the followers offer it perfectly.

694. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “If they (Imām) lead the Salât (prayer) correctly then they and you will receive the rewards, but if they make a mistake (in the Salât), then you will receive the reward for the Salât and the sin will be theirs.”

(56) CHAPTER. Offering prayers behind a man who is a victim of Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions) or a heretic.

Al-Ḥasan said, “You can offer prayers behind that Imām and the sin of heresy will be against him.”

695. Narrated ‘Ubaid-Ullāh bin Adi bin Khiyār: I went to ‘Uthmān bin ‘Affān:
while he was besieged, and said to him, “You are the chief of all Muslims in general and you see what has befallen you. We are led in the صلاة (prayer) by a leader of الـفتان (trials and afflictions etc.) and we are afraid of being sinful in following him.” ‘Uthmān said, “As-صلاة (the prayers) is the best of all deeds so when the people do good deeds do the same with them and when they do bad deeds, avoid those bad deeds.” Az-Zuhri said, “In our opinion one should not offer صلاة behind an effeminate person unless there is no alternative.”

696. Narrated Anas bin ّMalîk The Prophet  풑 said to Abū-Dhār, “Listen and obey (your chief) even if he is an Ethiopian with a head like a raisin.”

(57) CHAPTER. To stand on the right side of the الإمام on the same line if only two persons (counting the الإمام) are offering صلاة (prayer) in congregation.

697. Narrated Ibn ّAbbās رضي الله عنهما Once I passed the night in the house of my aunt Maimūna. Allāh’s Messenger  تاد السلمان offered the ‘إِسْحَاح prayer and then came to the house and offered four ركآن prayers and slept. Later on, he woke up and stood for the صلاة (prayer) and I stood on his left side. He drew me to his right and offered five ركآن and then two ركآن. He then slept till I heard him
snoring (or heard his breath sounds). Afterwards he went out for the (morning) \textit{Salāt} (prayer).

\textbf{(58) CHAPTER.} If a man stood on the left side of the \textit{Imām} and the \textit{Imām} drew him to his right side, then the \textit{Salāt} of none of them would be invalid.

698. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: One night I slept at the house of (my aunt) Maimūna and the Prophet was there on that night. He performed ablution and stood up for the \textit{Salāt} (prayer). I joined him and stood on his left side but he drew me to his right and offered thirteen \textit{Rak'ā} and then slept till I heard his breath sounds. And whenever he slept, he used to breathe with audible sounds. The \textit{Mu'adh-dhin} came to the Prophet and he went out and offered \textit{Salāt} (the morning prayer) without repeating the ablution.

\textbf{(59) CHAPTER.} If the \textit{Imām} has not had the intention of leading the prayer and then some persons join him and he leads them.

699. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Once I passed the night in the house of my aunt Maimūna. The Prophet stood for the night prayer and I joined him and stood on his left side but he drew me to his right by holding me by the head.
(60) CHAPTER. If the Imam prolongs the Salat (prayer) and somebody has an urgent work or need and so he leaves the congregation and offers Salat alone.

700. Narrated Mu'adh bin Jabal رضي الله عنه: I used to offer the 'Isha prayer with the Prophet ﷺ and then go to lead my people in the prayer.

701. Narrated 'Amr: Jâbir bin 'Abdullâh رضي الله عنه said, “Mu'adh bin Jabal رضي الله عنه used to offer Salat (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and then go to lead his people in Salat. Once he led the 'Isha' prayer and recited Sûrat Al-Baqarah. Somebody left the Salat and Mu‘adh criticized him. The news reached the Prophet ﷺ and he said to Mu‘adh, ‘You are putting the people to trial,’ and repeated it thrice (or said something similar) and ordered him to recite two medium Sûrah of Al-Mufassal.”(1) ('Amr said that he had forgotten the names of those Sûrah).

(61) CHAPTER. The shortening of the Qiyam (standing) by the Imam [in Salat (prayer)] but performing the bowings and the prostrations perfectly.

(1) (H.701) Al-Mufassal or Al-Mufassalât are the Sûrah starting from Sûrah No. 50 till the end of the Qur'ân, i.e. Sûrah No. 114.
702. Narrated Abū Mas'ūd: A man came and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! I keep away from the (early) morning prayer (Fajr prayer) only because so-and-so prolongs the Salāt (prayer) when he leads us in it.” The narrator said, “I never saw Allāh’s Messenger more furious in giving advice than he was at that time. He then said, “Some of you make people dislike good deeds (the Salāt). So, whoever among you leads the people in Salāt should shorten it because among them are the weak, the old and the one who is in a state that requires urgent relief.”

(62) CHAPTER. When offering Salāt (prayer) alone, one can prolong the Salāt as much as one wishes.

703. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger said, “If anyone of you leads the people in the Salāt (prayer), he should shorten it, for amongst them are the weak, the sick and the old; and if anyone among you offer prayers alone then he may prolong (the prayer) as much as he wishes.”

(63) CHAPTER. Complaining against one’s Imam if he prolongs the prayer.

Abū Usaid said, “O my son! You have prolonged the prayer.”

704. Narrated Abū Mas'ūd: A man came and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! I keep away from the early morning prayer (Fajr prayer) because so-and-so (Imām) prolongs it too much.” Allāh’s Messenger became furious and I had never seen him more furious than he was on that day. The Prophet said, “O people! Some of you
make others hate or dislike the good deeds [e.g., the Salāt (prayers etc.)] so whoever becomes an ʿImām he should shorten (the prayer), as behind him are the weak, the old and the one who is in a state that requires urgent relief.

705.Narrated Jābir bin ʿAbdullāh Al-Anṣārī: Once a man was driving two Nādiḥa (camels used for agricultural purposes) and night had fallen. He found Muʿādh offering Salāt (prayers) so he made his camel kneel and joined Muʿādh in Salāt. The latter recited Sūrat Al-Baqarah or Sūrat An-Nisā , (so) the man left the Salāt and went away. When he came to know that Muʿādh had criticised him, he went to the Prophet ﷺ and complained against Muʿādh. The Prophet ﷺ said thrice, “O Muʿādh! Are you putting the people to trial? It would have been better if you had recited Sabbiḥ Isma Rabbikal-aʾlā (Sūrah 87), Wash-Shamsi wadu-hāhā (Sūrah 91), or Wal-laili Idhā yaghsha (Sūrah 92)”, for the old, the weak and the one who is in a state that requires urgent relief offers Salāt behind you.”

Jābir said that Muʿādh recited Sūrat Al-Baqarah in the ‘Īṣāḥā prayer.
(64) CHAPTER. The shortening and perfection of the prayer (by the Imām).

706. Narrated Anas: The Prophet used to offer a short Salāt (prayer) in congregation but used to offer it in a perfect manner.

707. Narrated Ṭabarqān ibn Ṭalhah: The Prophet used to offer a short Salāt (prayer) in congregation but used to offer it in a perfect manner.

(65) CHAPTER. Whoever cuts short As-Salāt (the prayer) on hearing the cries of a child.

708. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: I never offered prayers behind any Imām a Salāt (prayer) lighter and more perfect than that behind the Prophet; and he used to cut it short whenever he heard the cries of a child lest he should put the child’s mother to trial.

709. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet said, “When I start As-Salāt (the prayer) I intend to prolong it, but on
hearing the cries of a child, I cut short the *Salāt* (prayer) because I know that the cries of the child will incite its mother’s passions.”

710. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whenever I start *ṣalāt* (the prayer) I intend to prolong it, but on hearing the cries of a child, I cut it short because I know that the cries of the child will incite its mother’s passions.”

(66) CHAPTER. If one offers *ṣalāt* (prayer) and then leads the people in *ṣalāt*.

711. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: Mu‘ādh used to offer *ṣalāt* (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and then go and lead his people (tribe) in the *ṣalāt*.

(67) CHAPTER. One who repeats the *Takbīr* (*Allāhu Akbar*) of the *Imām* so that the people may hear it.

712. Narrated ‘Aishah: When the Prophet ﷺ became ill in his fatal illness,
someone came to inform him about Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer), and the Prophet ﷺ told him to tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the Ṣalāt (prayer). I said, “Abū Bakr is a soft-hearted man and if he stands for the Ṣalāt in your place, he would weep and would not be able to recite (the Qurʾān).” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Tell Abū Bakr to lead the Ṣalāt.” I said the same as before. He ﷺ (repeated the same order and) on the third or the fourth time he said, “You (women) are the companions of Yusūf (Joseph). Tell Abū Bakr to lead the Ṣalāt.” So Abū Bakr led the Ṣalāt and meanwhile the Prophet ﷺ felt better and came out with the help of two men; as if I see him just now dragging his feet on the ground. When Abū Bakr saw him, he tried to retreat but the Prophet ﷺ beckoned him to carry on. Abū Bakr retreated a bit and the Prophet ﷺ sat on his (left) side. Abū Bakr was repeating the Tākbūr (Allāhu Akbar) of Allāh’s Messenger for the people to hear.

(68) CHAPTER. If a person follows the Imām and the others follow that person (then it is all right).

The Prophet ﷺ said, “You should follow me and the people behind you should follow you (in the prayers).”

713. Narrated ‘Aishah: When Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ became seriously ill, Bilāl came to inform him about Ṣalāt (prayer). He ﷺ said, “Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the Ṣalāt.” I said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Abū Bakr is a soft-hearted man and if he stands in your place, he would not be able to make the people hear
him. Will you order `Umar (to lead the  \textit{Salāt})"? The Prophet said, "Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the \textit{Salāt}." Then I said to Hafṣa, "Tell him, Abū Bakr is a soft-hearted man and if he stands in his place, he would not be able to make the people hear him. Would you order `Umar to lead the \textit{Salāt} (prayer)?" Hafṣa did so. The Prophet said, "Indeed you (women) are the companions of ūṣuf (Joseph). Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the \textit{Salāt} (prayer)." So Abū Bakr stood for the \textit{Salāt} (prayer). In the meantime Allāh's Messenger felt better and came out with the help of two persons; and both of his legs were dragging on the ground till he entered the mosque. When Abū Bakr heard him coming, he tried to retreat but Allāh's Messenger beckoned him (to carry on). So, the Prophet came and sat by the left side of Abū Bakr. Abū Bakr was offering \textit{Salāt} (prayer) while standing and Allāh's Messenger was leading the \textit{Salāt} (prayer) while sitting. Abū Bakr was following the Prophet and the people were following Abū Bakr [in the \textit{Salāt} (prayer)].

(69) \textbf{CHAPTER}. Can the \textit{Imām} depend on the people's saying if he is in doubt (about a certain matter)?

714. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Once Allāh's Messenger offered two \textit{Rakah} (instead of four) and finished his prayer. \textit{Dhul-Yadain} asked him whether the (number of \textit{Rakah} in the) \textit{Salāt} has been reduced or he had forgotten? Allāh's Messenger asked
the people whether Dhul-Yadain was telling the truth. The people replied in the affirmative. Then Allah's Messenger ﷺ stood up, offered the remaining two Rak'ā and then finished his Ṣalāt with Taslim and then said 'Allāhu Akbar' and performed two prostrations (of Sahw) like ordinary prostrations or a bit longer.

715. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ offered two Rak'ā of Zuhr prayer (instead of four) and he was told that he had offered two Rak'ā only. Then he offered two more Rak'ā and finished them with the Taslim followed by two prostrations (of Sahw).

(70) CHAPTER. If the Imam weeps in Ṣalāt (the prayers) (will his Ṣalāt be valid)?

'Abdullāh bin Shaddād said, "I heard 'Umar weeping while I was in the last row and 'Umar was reciting: ‘...I only complain of my grief and sorrow to Allah...’" (V.12:86)

716. Narrated 'Aishah, the Mother of the faithful believers: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ in his last illness said, “Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the Salāt (prayer).” I said, “If Abū Bakr stood in your place, he would not be able to make the people hear him because of (his) weeping. So please order 'Umar to lead the people in the Salāt.” He said, “Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in As-Ṣalāt (the prayer).” I said to Hafṣa, “Say to him, 'Abū Bakr is a soft-
hearted man and if he stood in your place he would not be able to make the people hear him because of (his) weeping. So, order ‘Umar to lead the people in the Salāt.’” Ḥafṣa did so but Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Māh (stop or keep quiet). Indeed you (women) are the companions of (Prophet) Yūsūf (Joseph). Tell Abū Bakr to lead the people in the prayer.” Ḥafṣa said to me, “I never got any good from you.”

(71) CHAPTER. Straightening the rows at the time of Iqāma and after it (immediately).

717. Narrated An-Nu‘mān bin ‘Bashīr: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Straighten your rows or Allāh will alter your faces.” (See Hadith No. 691)

718. Narrated Anas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Straighten your rows, for I see you from behind my back.”

(72) CHAPTER. Facing of the Imam towards

(1) (H.717) This is a severe warning, that if you do not straighten your rows [in Salāt (prayers)], Allāh may change your faces to that of an animal, e.g., donkey etc., or make them like the backs of necks etc. [See Fath Al-Bārī, Vol.2, P.349].
his followers while straightening the rows.

719. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Once the Ḥqāma was pronounced and Allāh’s Messenger faced us and said, “Straighten your rows and stand closer together, for I see you from behind my back.”

(73) CHAPTER. The first row.

720. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Martyrs are those who die because of drowning, plague, an abdominal disease, or of being buried alive by a falling building.”

721. And then he added, “If the people knew (the reward for) the Zuhūr prayer in its early time, they would race for it. If they knew (the reward for) the ‘Īshā and the Fajr prayers in congregation, they would join them even if they had to crawl. If they knew (the reward for) the first row, they would draw lots for it.”

(74) CHAPTER. The straightening of the rows is amongst those obligatory and good things which make your Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) a correct and perfect one.

722. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “The Imam is appointed to be followed. So do not differ from him, bow when he bows, and say ‘Rabbānā lakal hamd’ if he says ‘Sami’
Allahu liman hamida'; and if he prostrates, prostrate (after him), and if he offers Salât (prayer) sitting, offer Salât sitting all together, and straighten the rows for Salât, as the straightening of the rows is amongst those things which make your Salât a correct and perfect one.” (See Hadīth No.717).

723. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Straighten your rows as the straightening of rows is essential for Iqāmat-as-Salāt (a perfect and correct prayer).”

(75) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who does not complete the rows (who is out of alignment) for the prayer.

724. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: I arrived at Al-Madīna and was asked whether I found any change since the days of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ. I said, “I have not found any change except that you do not straighten the rows for the Salāt (prayer) (i.e., you do not stand in alignment in your Salāt).”

(76) CHAPTER. To stand shoulder to shoulder and foot to foot in the row.

And An-Nu‘mān bin Bašīr said, “I saw that every one of us used to put his heel with the heel of his companion.”
725.Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Straighten your rows for I see you from behind my back.” Anas added, “Everyone of us used to put his shoulder with the shoulder of his companion and his foot with the foot of his companion.”

(77) CHAPTER. If a person stands by the left side of the Imam, and the Imam draws him to the right from behind, his Salât (prayer) is correct.

726.Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: I offered Salât (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ one night and stood on his left side. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ caught hold of my head from behind and drew me to his right and then offered the Salât and slept. Later the Mu’adh-dhin came and the Prophet ﷺ stood up for Salât without performing ablution.

(78) CHAPTER. One woman can form a row.

727.Narrated Anas bin Malik: One night an orphan and I offered the prayers behind the Prophet ﷺ in my house and my mother (Umm Sulaim) was standing behind us (by herself forming a row).

(79) CHAPTER. The right side of the mosque and the place to the right of the Imam.

728.Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: One night I stood to the left of the Prophet ﷺ
in the \textit{Salāt} (prayer) but he caught hold of me by the hand or by the shoulder (arm) till he made me stand on his right and beckoned with his hand (for me) to go from behind (him). (\textit{Al-Kaşmāhīnī-Fāth Al-Bārī}).

(80) \textbf{CHAPTER.} If there is a wall or a \textit{Sutra} between the \textit{Imām} and followers.

\textit{Al-Hasan} said, “There is no harm in offering \textit{Salāt} (prayer) if there is a river between you and the \textit{Imām}.” \textit{Abū Mijlaz} said, “One can follow the \textit{Imām} even if there is a road or a wall between the \textit{Imām} and followers provided the \textit{Takbīr} (\textit{Allāhu Akbar}) is audible.”

729. Narrated \textit{‘Aishah}: \textit{Allāh’s Messenger} used to offer \textit{Salāt} (prayer) in his room at night. As the wall of the room was short (low), the people saw him and some of them stood up to follow him in the \textit{Salāt} (prayer). In the morning they spread the news. The following night the Prophet stood for the \textit{Salāt} (prayer) and the people followed him. This went on for two or three nights. Thereupon \textit{Allāh’s Messenger} did not stand for the \textit{Salāt} (prayer) the following night, and did not come out. In the morning, the people asked him about it. He replied, that he was afraid that the night prayer might become compulsory.
CHAPTER 730. The night prayer.

730. Narrated 'Aishah: The Prophet had a mat which he used to spread during the day and use as a curtain at night. So a number of people gathered at night facing it and offered Salat (prayer) behind him.

731. Narrated Zaid bin Thãbit: Allah's Messenger made a small room in the month of Ramadân (Sa'id said, "I think that Zaid bin Thãbit said that it was made of a mat.") and he offered Salât (prayer) there for a few nights, and so some of his Companions offered prayers behind him. When he came to know about it, he kept on sitting. In the morning, he went out to them and said, "I have seen and understood what you did. O people, you should offer Salât (prayer) in your houses, for the best Salât (prayer) of a person is that which he offers in his house except the compulsory congregational Salât (prayer)."

[Chapters about the characteristics of the Salat (prayer)].
(82) CHAPTER. The necessity of saying the Takbir, i.e., Allahū Akbar (Allah is the Most Great) and the commencement of As-Šalat (the prayer).

732. Narrated Anas bin Mālik Al-Anṣārī: Allāh’s Messenger rode a horse and fell down and the right side of his body was injured. On that day he offered one of the Salāt (prayers) sitting and we also offered Salāt behind him sitting. When the Prophet finished the Salāt with Taslim, he said, “The Imām is to be followed and if he offers Salāt standing then pray standing, and bow when he bows, and raise your heads when he raises his head; prostrate when he prostrates; and if he says ‘Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamida’, you should say ‘Rabbanā wa lakal ḥamda’.”

733. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Allāh’s Messenger fell from a horse and got injured, so he led the Salāt (prayer) sitting and we also offered Salāt sitting. When he completed the Salāt he said, “The Imām is to be followed; if he says Takbir then say Takbir, bow if he bows; raise your heads when he raises his head, when he says, ‘Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamida’, say ‘Rabbanā wa lakal ḥamda’, and prostrate when he prostrates.”

---

(1) (H.732) See Ahādīth Nos.689 and 5658 for taking the verdict as being the last action of the Prophet. (The Prophet led the Salāt (prayer) while sitting and the Muslims followed him while they were standing.

(2) (H.733) See the F.N. No.1.
734. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “The Imam is to be followed. Say the Takbīr when he says it; bow if he bows; if he says ‘Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamīda’, say ‘Rabbanā wa lākūl-hamīda’, prostrate if he prostrates and pray sitting altogether if he offers the Salāt sitting.” (See the footnote of Hadith No. 732)

(83) CHAPTER. To raise both hands on saying the first Takbīr simultaneously with opening the Salāt (prayer).

735. Narrated Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh: My father said, “Allāh’s Messenger used to raise both his hands up to the level of his shoulders when opening As-Salāt (the prayer); and on saying the Takbīr for bowing. And on raising up his head from bowing he used to do the same and then say ‘Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamīda, Rabbanā wa lākūl-hamīda.’ And he did not do that (i.e., raising his hands) in prostrations.”

(84) CHAPTER. To raise both hands while saying Takbīr [on opening As-Salāt (the prayer)], and while bowing and on raising up the head (after bowing).

736. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: I saw that whenever Allāh’s
Messenger stood for the Salât (prayer), he used to raise both his hands up to the shoulders, and used to do the same on saying the Takbîr for bowing and on raising up his head from it and used to say ‘Sami’ Allahu liman hamîda.’ But he did not do that (i.e., raising his hands) in prostrations.

737. Narrated Abû Qilâba: I saw Malik bin Huwairith saying Takbîr and raising both his hands [on starting As-Salât (the prayer)] and raising his hands on bowing and also on raising up his head after bowing. Malik bin Huwairith said, ‘Allah’s Messenger did the same.’

738. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar: I saw Allah’s Messenger opening As-Salât (the prayer) with the Takbîr and raising his hands to the level of his shoulders at the time of saying the Takbîr, and on saying the Takbîr for bowing he did the same; and when he said ‘Sami’ Allahu liman hamîda’, he did the same and then said, Rabbanâ wa lakal-Âmîd. But he did not do...
10 – THE BOOK OF ADHĀN

the same on prostrating and on raising up the head from it.

(86) CHAPTER. To raise one’s hands after finishing the second Rak‘ā (on standing for the third Rak‘ā).

739. Narrated Nāfi’: Whenever Ibn ‘Uma started As-Salāt (the prayer) with Takbīr, he used to raise his hands, whenever he bowed, he used to raise his hands (before bowing) and also used to raise his hands on saying ‘Sami‘Allahu liman hamīda’, and he used to do the same on rising from the second Rak‘ā (for the third Rak‘ā).

Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Prophet used to do the same.”

(87) CHAPTER. To place the right hand on the left [in As-Salāt (the prayers)].

740. Narrated Sahl bin Sa‘d: The people were ordered to place the right hand on the left forearm in As-Salāt (the prayer). Abū Hāzim said, “I knew that the order was from the Prophet.”
(88) CHAPTER. Submissiveness in As-Šalát (the prayer).

741. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “You see me facing the Qiblah; but, by Allah, nothing is hidden from me regarding your bowings and submissiveness; and I see you from behind my back”. 

742. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet said, “Perform the bowing and the prostrations properly in a correct and perfect way. By Allah, I see you from behind me (or from behind my back) when you bow or prostrate.”

(89) CHAPTER. What to say after the Takbir.

743. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet, Abū Bakr and ‘Umar used to start As-Šalát (the prayer) with “Al-ḥamdu lillāhī Rabbi ‘alāmīn (All praises and thanks be to Allah the Lord of the ‘Alāmin (mankind, jinn and all that exists)).”

744. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger used to keep silent
between the Takbîr and the recitation of the Qur’ân (Surat Al-Fatiha) and that interval of silence used to be a short one. I said to the Prophet ﷺ, “May my parents be sacrificed for you! What do you say in the pause between Takbîr and recitation?” The Prophet ﷺ said, “I say, ‘Allâhumma, bâ‘id baini wa baina khatâ‘yâya kamâ bâ‘adta bainal-ma‘shriqi wal-maghrib. Allâhumma, naqqînî min khatâ‘yâya kamâ yunaqqa-athtâwbul-abyadu min ad-danas. Allâhumma, aghsil khatâ‘yâya bil ma‘i wa tå‘tijalji wa barad [O Allâh! Set me apart from my sins (faults) as the east and west are set apart from each other and clean me from sins as a white garment is cleaned of dirt (after thorough washing). O Allâh! Wash off my sins with water, snow and hail.]’

(90) CHAPTER.

745. Narrated Asmâ’ bint Abî Bakr ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ once offered the eclipse Salât (prayer). He stood for a long time and then did a prolonged bowing. He stood up straight again and kept on standing for a long time, then bowed a long bowing and then stood up straight, and then prostrated a prolonged prostration and then lifted his head and prostrated a prolonged prostration. And then he stood up for a long time, and then did a prolonged bowing and then stood up straight again, and kept on standing for a long time. Then he bowed a long bowing and then stood up straight and then prostrated a prolonged prostration and then lifted his head and went for a prolonged prostration. On completion of the Salât, he said, “Paradise became so near to me that if I had dared, I would have plucked one of its bunches for you, and Hell became so near to
me that I said, ‘O my Lord, will I be among those people?’ Then suddenly I saw a woman; and a cat was lacerating her with its claws. On enquiring, it was said that the woman had imprisoned the cat till it died of starvation, and she neither fed it nor freed it so that it could feed itself from the insects, vermin and creatures of earth.” [See Hadith No.3318, Vol.4]

(91) CHAPTER. To cast a look at the Imam during As-Salāt (the prayer).

‘Āishah  Ṭābi‘ah said: The Prophet ﷺ was narrating about the Salāt (prayer) of eclipse and said, “I saw Hell, and one of its sides was destroying the other. (And that was) when you saw me retreating (during the Salāt).”

746. Narrated Abū Ma‘mar: We asked Khabbāb Ṭābi‘ah whether Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to recite (the Qur’ān) in the Zuhr and the ‘Asr prayers. He replied in the affirmative. We said, “How did you come to know about it?” He said, “By the movement of his beard.”

747. Narated Al-Barā’ (And Al-Barā’i  Ṭābi‘ah was not a liar): Whenever we offered Salāt (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and he
raised up his head from the bowing, we used
to remain standing till we saw him prostrating.

748. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Abbās: Once solar eclipse occurred during the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ. He offered the eclipse Salāt (prayer). His Companions asked, “O Allāh’s Messenger! We saw you trying to take something while standing at your place and then we saw you retreating.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “I was shown Paradise and wanted to have a bunch of fruit from it. Had I taken it, you would have eaten from it as long as the world remains.”

749. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet ﷺ led us and offered Salāt (prayer). Then he went up the pulpit and beckoned with both hands towards the Qiblah of the mosque and said, “When I started leading you in Salāt, I saw Paradise and Hell displayed on the wall of the mosque (facing the Qiblah.) I never saw such a good and bad thing as I saw today.” He repeated the last statement thrice.

(92) CHAPTER. Looking towards the sky during As-Salāt (the prayer).

750. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet ﷺ said, “What is wrong with those people who look towards the sky during
His tone grew stern while delivering this speech and he said, “They should stop (looking towards the sky during the Salāt); otherwise their eyes (or eyesight) would be snatched away.”

(93) CHAPTER. To look hither and thither in As-Salāt (the prayer).

751. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: I asked Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ about looking hither and thither in As-Salāt (the prayer). He replied, “It is a way of stealing by which Satan takes away (a portion) from the Salāt (prayer) of a person.”

752. Narrated ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: Once the Prophet ﷺ offered Salāt (prayer) while wearing a Khamīṣa (a woollen square blanket) with marks on it. Then he ﷺ said, “The marks on this (Khamīṣa) have diverted my attention, take it to Abū Jahm and bring an Inbijāniya (a plain sheet) (from him.)”

(See Hadith No.5817. Vol.7).

(94) CHAPTER. Is it permissible for one to look around in Salāt (prayer) if something happens to one? Or can one look at something like expectoration in the direction of the Qiblah?

Sahī said: “Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه turned and saw the Prophet ﷺ [during the Salāt (prayer)].”

753. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ saw expectoration in the
direction of the Qiblah of the mosque while he was leading As-Salât (the prayer), and scratched it off. After finishing the Salât (prayer), he said, “Whenever any of you is in Salât (prayer) he should know that Allâh is in front of him. So none should spit in front of him during the Salât (prayer).”

754. Narrated Anas: While the Muslims were offering the Fajr prayer, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ suddenly appeared before them by lifting the curtain of the dwelling place of ‘Aishah, and looked towards the Muslims who were standing in rows. He smiled with pleasure. Abû Bakr started retreating to join the row on the assumption that the Prophet ﷺ wanted to come out for As-Salat (the prayer). The Muslims intended to leave As-Salat (and were on the verge of being put to trial), but the Prophet ﷺ beckoned them to complete their Salât (prayers) and then he let the curtain fall. He died in the last hours of that day.

(95) CHAPTER. Recitation of the Qur’ân (Sûrat Al-Fatiha) is compulsory for the Imam and the followers, at home and on journey, in all As-Salât (the prayers) whether the recitation is done silently or aloud.

755. Narrated Jâbir bin Samura: The people of Kûfa complained against Sa’d to
‘Umar dismissed ‘Ammār as their chief. They lodged many complaints against Sa’d and even they alleged that he did not offer ʿSalāt (prayer) properly. ‘Umar sent for him and said, “O Abū Ishāq! These people claim that you do not offer ʿSalāt properly.” Abū Ishāq said, “By Allāh, I used to offer with them a ʿSalāt similar to that of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and I never reduced anything of it. I used to prolong the first two Rakʿa of ʿIṣna prayer and shorten the last two Rakʿa.” ‘Umar said, “O Abū Ishāq, this was what I thought about you.” And then he sent one or more persons with him to Kūfa so as to ask the people about him. So, they went there and did not leave any mosque without asking about him. All the people praised him till they came to the mosque of the tribe of Bani ʿAbs; one of the men called Usāma bin Qatāda with surname of Abā Saʿda stood up and said, “As you have put us under an oath; I am bound to tell you that Sa’d never went himself with the army and never distributed (the war booty) equally and never did justice in legal verdicts.” (On hearing it) Sa’d said, “I invoke Allāh for three things: O Allāh! If this slave of Yours is a liar and got up for showing off, give him a long life, increase his poverty and put him to trials.” (And so it happened). Later on when that person was asked how he was, he used to reply that he was an old man in trial as the result of Sa’d’s curse.

‘Abdul Mālik, the subnarrator, said that he had seen him afterwards and his eyebrows were overhanging his eyes owing to old age and he used to tease and assault the small girls on the roads.
756. Narrated 'Ubâda bin Aş-Sâmit: Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever does not recite Sūrat Al-Fātiha (the first Surah of the Qur'an) in his Salāt (prayer), his Salāt is invalid.”

757. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah's Messenger ﷺ entered the mosque and a person followed him. The man offered Salāt (prayer) and went to the Prophet ﷺ and greeted him. The Prophet ﷺ returned the greeting and said to him, “Go back and offer the Salāt (prayer), for you have not offered Salāt (prayer).” The man went back, offered Salāt (prayer) in the same way as before, returned and greeted the Prophet ﷺ who said, “Go back and offer Salāt (prayer), for you have not offered Salāt (prayer).” This happened thrice. The man said, “By Him, Who sent you with the Truth, I cannot offer Salāt (prayer) in a better way than this. Please teach me how to offer Salāt (prayer).” The Prophet ﷺ said, “When you stand for Salāt (prayer) say Takbir and then recite from the Qur'an (of what you know by heart) and then bow till you feel at ease. Then raise your head and stand up straight, then prostrate till you feel at ease during your prostration, then sit with calmness till you feel at ease (do not hurry) and do the same in all your Salāt (prayer).”
(96) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'ān in the Zuhr prayer.

758. Narrated Jābir bin Samura: Sa'dibsatu said, “I used to offer Salat (prayer) with them one similar to that of Allāh's Messenger (the prayer of Zuhr and 'Asr) reducing nothing from them. I used to prolong the first two Rak'ā and shorten the last two Rak'ā.”

‘Umar said to Sa'd “This was what I thought about you.”

759. Narrated Abī Qatāda: The Prophet s.a.w. in Zuhr prayers used to recite Sūrat Al-Fātiha along with two other Sūrah in the first two Rak'ā: a long one in the first Rak'ā and a shorter (Sūrah) in the second, and at times the Verses were audible. In the 'Asr prayer the Prophet s.a.w. used to recite Sūrat Al-Fātiha and two more Sūrah in the first two Rak'ā and used to prolong the first Rak'ā. And he used to prolong the first Rak'ā of the Fajr (early morning) prayer and shorten the second.

760. Narrated Abū Ma'mar: I asked Khabbāb whether the Prophet s.a.w. used to recite the Qur'ān in the Zuhr and the 'Asr prayers. He replied in the affirmative. We said, “How did you come to know that?” He said, “From the movement of his beard.”
(97) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'an in the 'Asr prayer.

761. Narrated Abū Ma'mar: I asked Khabbāb bin Al-Aratt whether the Prophet used to recite the Qur'an in the Zuhr and the 'Asr prayers. He replied in the affirmative. I asked, "How did you come to know that?" He replied, "From the movement of his beard."

762. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Abī Qatāda: My father said, "The Prophet used to recite Sūrat Al-Fātiha along with another Sūrah in the first two Rakʿā of the Zuhr and the 'Asr prayers and at times a Verse or so was audible to us."

(98) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur'an in the Maghrib prayer.

763. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās: (My mother) Umma Al-Faḍl heard me reciting Wal Mursalāt ʿUrфан (Sūrah No. 77) and said, "O my son! By Allah, your recitation made me remember, that, it was the last Sūrah I heard from Allāh's Messenger. He recited it in the Maghrib prayer."
764. Narrated Marwan bin Al-Hakam:
Zaid bin Thabit said to me, “Why do you recite very short Sūrah in the Maghrib prayer while I heard the Prophet reciting the longer of the two long Sūrah?” [Al-A'raf and Al-Mā'ādah (No.7 & No.5) or Al-A'raf and Al-An'am (No.7 & No.6)]. (See Fath Al-Bāt, Vol.2, pages 389, 390 for details)

(99) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the Maghrib prayer.

765. Narrated Jubair bin Mu't'im: I heard Allah's Messenger reciting At-Tar (Sūrah No. 52) in the Maghrib prayer.

(100) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the 'Ishā' prayer.

766. Narrated Abu Rafi': I offered the 'Ishā' prayer behind Abu Hurairah and he recited Ithās-Samā'un-Shaqqaq (Sūrah No. 84) and prostrated. On my enquiring, he said, “I prostrated behind Abul-Qāsim (the Prophet when he recited that Sūrah) and I will keep on with this prostration while reciting it till I meet him.”

767. Narrated Al-Barā': The Prophet was on a journey and recited in
one of the first two Rakā of the ‘Ishā’ prayer Wat-tini waz-zaitūnī. (Sūrah No. 95)

(101) CHAPTER. To recite in the ‘Ishā’ prayer, with As-Sajda (prostration).

768. Narrated Abū Rāfi’: Once I offered the ‘Ishā’ prayer with Abū Hurairah  and he recited Idhas-Sama’ un-Shaqqat (Sūrah No. 84) and prostrated. I said, “What is that?” He said, “I prostrated behind Abū-Qsim, (the Prophet  when he recited that Sūrah) and I will keep on with this prostration while reciting it till I meet him.”

(102) CHAPTER. Recitation in the ‘Ishā’ prayer.

769. Narrated Al-Barā’ I: I heard the Prophet  reciting Wat-tini waz-zaitūnī (Sūrah No. 95) in the ‘Ishā’ prayer, and I never heard a sweeter voice or a better way of recitation than that of the Prophet  .

(103) CHAPTER. Prolonging the first two Rakā and shortening the last two.

770. Narrated Jābir bin Samura: ‘Umar  said to Sa’d, “The people complained against you in everything, even in Salāt (prayer).” Sa’d replied, “Really, I used to prolong the first two Rakā and
shorten the last two and I will never shorten the Salah in which I follow Allah’s Messenger ﷺ.” ‘Umar said, “You are telling the truth and that is what I think about you.”

(104) CHAPTER. The recitation of the Qur’an in the Fajr prayer.

And Umm Salama said: “The Prophet ﷺ recited Sūrat At-Tūr. (Surah No. 52)

771. Narrated Saiyār bin Salama: My father and I went to Abu Barza Al-Aslami رضي الله عنه to ask him about the stated times for the Salah (prayers). He replied, “The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the Zuhr prayer when the sun just declined from its highest position at noon; the ‘Asr prayer at a time when if a man went to the farthest place in Al-Madina (after offering Salāt) he would find the sun still hot (bright). (The subnarrator said: I have forgotten what Abu Barza said about the Maghrib prayer). The Prophet ﷺ never found any harm in delaying the ‘Ishā’ prayer to the first third of the night and he never liked to sleep before it and to talk after it. He used to offer the Fajr (early morning) prayer at a time when after finishing it one could recognize the person sitting beside him and used to recite between 60 to 100 Verses in one or both the Rak‘ā.”

772. Narrated Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه: The Qur’an is recited in every Salah (prayer) and in those Salah in which Allah’s Messenger ﷺ recited aloud for us, we recite aloud in the same Salah for you; and the Salah in which the
Prophet recited quietly, we recite quietly. If you recite Surat Al-Fatiha only, it is sufficient, but if you recite something else in addition, that would be better.

(105) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the Fajr (early morning) prayer.

And Umm Salama said, "I was performing Tawaf behind the people while the Prophet was offering Salat (praying) and reciting Sūrat At-Tūr. (Sūrah No. 52)

773. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet set out with the intention of going to Sāq ‘Ukāz (market of ‘Ukāz) along with some of his Companions. At that time, a barrier was put between the devils and the news of heaven. Burning fires were shot at them. The devils went to their people, who asked them, “What is wrong with you?” They said, “A barrier has been put between us and the news of heaven. Burning fires are shot at us.” They said, “The thing which has put a barrier between you and the news of heaven must be something which has happened recently. Go eastward and westward and see what has put a barrier between you and the news of heaven.” Those who went towards Tihāma came across the Prophet at a place called Nakhla and it was on the way to Sāq ‘Ukāz and the Prophet was offering the Fajr (early morning) prayer with his Companions. When they heard the Qur‘ān they listened to it and said, “By Allah, this is the thing which has put a barrier between us and the news of heaven.” They went to their people and said, “O our people! verily we have heard a wonderful recital (the Qur‘ān). It guides to the Right Way and we have
believed therein and we shall never join (in worship) anything with our Lord (Allah).”
Allāh revealed the following verses to his Prophet ﷺ (Sūrat Al-Jinn) (No. 72): “Say (O Muhammad ﷺ): It has been revealed to me... (V.72:1)” And what was revealed to him was the conversation of the jinn.

774 (A). Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ recited aloud in the Ṣalāt (prayers) in which he was ordered to do so and quietly in the Ṣalāt in which he was ordered to do so. “...And your Lord is never forgetful.” (V.19:64). “Indeed in the Messenger of Allāh (Muḥammad ﷺ) you have a good example to follow...” (V.33:21).

(106) CHAPTER. To recite two Sūrah in one Rakʿa and to recite the last Verses of some Sūrah, or to recite the Sūrah in their reverse order, or to recite the beginning of a Sūrah.

Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin As-Sā‘īb: The Prophet ﷺ recited Sūrat Al-Muḥsinūn (No. 23) in the Ḥajj prayer and when he reached the story of Mūsā (Moses) and Hārūn (Aaron) or ‘Iṣa (Jesus) he got cough and bowed. ‘Umar recited 120 Verses from Sūrat Al-Baqarah (No. 2) in the first Rakʿa and in the second Rakʿa he recited a Sūrah from the Mathānī (Sūrah of less than 100 Verses). Ahnaf recited in the first Rakʿa Sūrat Al-Kahf (No. 18) and in the second Rakʿa Sūrat Yūsuf (Joseph) (No.12) or Sūrat Yūnus (Jonah)
(No.10) and said that he had offered the Fajr prayer with ‘Umar reciting the same Sūrah. Ibn Mas‘ūd recited 40 Verses from Sūrat Al-Anfāl (No.8) (in the first Rak‘a) and in the second Rak‘a, a Sūrah from the Mufassal Sūrah [the Sūrah starting from Qāf (No.50) to the end of the Qur‘ān]. Qatāda said about a person who recited one Sūrah divided between two Rak‘a or repeated the same Sūrah in both Rak‘a that he can do so as all those Verses are from Allāh’s Book.

774 (B). Anas Ṣaid: One of the Ansār used to lead the Ansār in Salāt (prayer) in the Qubā’ mosque and it was his habit to recite Qul Huwal-lahu Ahad (Say: He is Allah the One) (No.112) (after Sūrat Al-Fatiha) (No.1) whenever he wanted to recite something in Salāt. When he finished that Sūrah, he would recite another one with it. He followed the same procedure in each Rak‘a. His companions discussed this with him and said, “You recite this Sūrah and do not consider it sufficient and then you recite another. So would you recite it alone or leave it and recite some other.” He said, “I will never leave it and if you want me to be your Imām on this condition then it is all right; otherwise I will leave you.” They knew that he was the best amongst them and they did not like someone else to lead them in Salāt. When the Prophet went to them as usual, they informed him about it. The Prophet addressed him and said, “O so-and-so, what forbids you from doing what your companions ask you to do? Why do you read this Sūrah particularly in every Rak‘a?” He replied, “I love this Sūrah.” The Prophet said, “Your love for this Sūrah will make you enter Paradise.”
775. Narrated Abû Wâ’il: A man came to Ibn Mas’ûd and said, “I recited the Mufâjual (Sureh) at night in one Rak’a.” Ibn Mas’ûd said, “This recitation is (too quick) like the recitation of poetry. I know the identical Sureh which the Prophet used to recite in pairs.” Ibn Mas’ûd then mentioned 20 Mufâjual Sureh including two Sureh from the family of (i.e., those Sureh which begin with) Ha-Mim (خم) (which the Prophet used to recite) in each Rak’a.

(107) CHAPTER. To recite only Sûrat Al-Fâtiha in the last two Rak’a during a four Rak’a Salât (prayer).

776. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Abi Qatada: My father said, “The Prophet used to recite Sûrat Al-Fâtiha followed by another Sureh in the first two Rak’a of the Salât (prayer) and used to recite only Sûrat Al-Fâtiha in the last two Rak’a of the Zuhr prayer. Sometimes a Verse or so was audible and he used to prolong the first Rak’a more than the second and used to do the same in the ‘Asr and Fajr prayers.”

(108) CHAPTER. To recite (the Qur’an) quietly in the Zuhr and ‘Asr prayers.

777. Narrated Abû Ma’âmar: We said to Khabbâb, “Did Allâh’s Messenger
used to recite (the Qur'an) in Zuhr and 'Asr prayers?” He replied in the affirmative. We said, “How did you come to know about it?” He said, “By the movement of his beard.”

(109) CHAPTER. (In a quiet prayer) if the Imám recites a Verse or so audibly.

778. Narrated ‘Abdullãh bin AN Qatada: My father said, “The Prophet used to recite Surat Al-Fatiha along with another Sürah in the first two Rak’a of the Zuhr and ‘Asr prayers. A Verse or so was audible at times and he used to prolong the first Rak’a.”

(110) CHAPTER. To prolong the first Rak’a.

779. Narrated ‘Abdullãh bin AN Qatada: My father said, “The Prophet used to prolong the first Rak’a of the Zuhr Salat (prayer) and shorten the second one and used to do the same in the morning (Fajr) Salat.”

(111) CHAPTER. Saying of Āmin aloud by the Imám.

‘Aţâ’ said: Āmin is an invocation. Ibn Az-
Zubair and the persons behind him said *Amin* loudly till the mosque echoed. Abü Hurairah used to say to the *Imām* “Do not say *Amin* before me (i.e. before I join the row for the prayer).” Nāfi’ said: “Ibn ‘Umar never missed *Amin*, and urged the people to say it. I heard something good about it from him.”

780. Narrated Abü Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Say *Amin* when the *Imām* says it and if the *Amin* of any one of you coincides with that of the angels then all his past sins will be forgiven.”

Ibn Shihāb said, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ used to say *Amin*."

(112) CHAPTER. Superiority of saying *Amin*.

781. Narrated Abü Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If any one of you says *Amin* and the angels in the heavens say *Amin* and the former coincides with the latter, all his past sins will be forgiven.”

(113) CHAPTER. Saying of ‘*Amin*’ aloud by the followers.

walad-dāl-lin [not the path of those who earn Your Anger (such as Jews) nor of those who
go astray (such as Christians)], all the past
sins of the person whose saying (of Āmin)
coincides with that of the angels, will be
forgiven.

(114) CHAPTER. If someone bowed behind
the rows, [on entering the mosque and
before joining the rows of Ṣalāt (prayer)].

783. Narrated Abū Bakrah: I reached the Prophet ﷺ in the mosque while
he was bowing in Ṣalāt (prayer) and I too
bowed before joining the row. I mentioned it
to the Prophet ﷺ and he said to me, “May Allāh increase your love for the good. But do
not repeat it again (bowing in that way).”

(115) CHAPTER. Itmām At-Takbir (i.e., to
end the number of Takbir or to say the Takbir
perfectly) on bowing. [See Fath Al-Bārî ].

Ibn `Abbās narrated it from the Prophet ﷺ. One of the narrators of the Ḥadīth is
Mālik bin Ḥuwairīth  رضي الله عنه.  

784. Narrated `Imrān bin Ḥuṣain  رضي الله عنه: I offered the Ṣalāt (prayer) with `Alī
رضي الله عنه in Basra and he made us remember the
Ṣalāt which we used to offer with Allah’s Messenger ﷺ. `Alī said Takbir on each
raising and bowing (and prostrating etc.)
[See Fath Al-Bārî, for details].
785. Narrated Abū Salama: When Abū Hurairah led us in Salāt (prayer) he used to say Takbīr on each bowing and raising. On the completion of the Salāt he used to say, "My Salāt is more similar to the Salāt of Allāh’s Messenger than that of anyone of you."

(116) CHAPTER. Itmām At-Takbīr (i.e., to end the number of Takbīr, or to say the Takbīr perfectly) on prostrating. [See Fath Al-Bāri]

786. Narrated Muṭarrif bin ‘Abdullāh: ‘Imrān bin Ḥuṣain and I offered the Salāt (prayer) behind ‘Ali bin Abī Ṭalib: When ‘Ali prostrated, he said the Takbīr, when he raised his head, he said the Takbīr and when he got up for the third Rakʿa he said the Takbīr. On completion of the Salāt ‘Imrān took my hand and said, “This (i.e., ‘Ali) made me remember the Salāt of Muḥammad.” Or he said, “He led us in a Salāt like that of Muḥammad.”

787. Narrated ‘Ikrima: I saw a person offering Salāt (prayer) at Maqām Ibrāhīm [the place of Ibrāhīm (Abraham)] by the Kaʿbah and he was saying Takbīr on every bowing, rising, standing and sitting. I
asked Ibn ‘Abbās (about this Salāt). He admonished me saying: ‘Isn’t that the Salāt of the Prophet?’ [Indicating that, that was the way, the Prophet used to offer his Salāt (prayer)].

(117) CHAPTER. Saying the Takbīr on raising from the prostration.

788. Narrated ‘Ikrima: I offered prayers behind a Sheikh at Makkah and he said twenty-two Takbīr (during the prayer). I told Ibn ‘Abbās that he (i.e., that Sheikh) was foolish. Ibn ‘Abbās admonished me and said, “This is the As-Sunna (legal way) of Abul-Qāsim.”

789. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Whenever Allah’s Messenger stood for As-Salāt (the prayer), he said Takbīr on starting the Salāt (prayer) and then on bowing. (On rising from bowing he said) Samī’ Allāhu liman hamida, and then while standing straight he used to say Rabbanā lakal-ḥam. Al-Laith said, “(The Prophet said) ‘Wa lakal-ḥam’d.” He used to say Takbīr on prostrating and on raising his head from prostration; again he would say Takbīr on prostrating and raising his head. He would then do the same in the whole of the Salāt till it was completed. And on rising from the second Rak’a after sitting (for At-Tahiyyāt), he used to say Takbīr.
(118) CHAPTER. To put the hands (palms) on both knees while bowing.

While in the company of his companions, Abū Ḥumaid said, “The Prophet (ﷺ) used to put both his hands on his knees.”

790. Narrated Muṣʿab Saʿd: I offered ʿṣalāt (prayer) beside my father (Sa'd bin Abī Waqqās) and approximated both my hands and placed them in between the knees. My father told me not to do so and said, “We used to do the same but we were forbidden (by the Prophet ﷺ) to do so and were ordered to place the hands on the knees.”

(119) CHAPTER. Not performing bowing perfectly.

791. Narrated Zaid bin Wahb: ʿUdāhāfā saw a person who was not performing the bowings and prostrations perfectly. He said to him, “You have not offered ʿṣalāt and if you should die, you would die on a religion other than that of Muḥammad ﷺ.”

(120) CHAPTER. To keep the back straight in bowing.

In the presence of his companions, Abū Ḥumaid said, “The Prophet (ﷺ) bowed and kept his back straight.”
(121) CHAPTER. And what is said regarding the limit of the completion of bowing and of keeping the back straight and the calmness with which it is performed.

792. Narrated Al-Barâ’ رضي الله عنه: The bowing, the prostration, the sitting in between the two prostrations and the standing after the bowing of the Prophet ﷺ but not Qiyām [standing in the Ṣalāt (prayer)] and Qu’ud (sitting in the Ṣalāt) used to be approximately equal (in duration).

(122) CHAPTER. The order of the Prophet ﷺ to a person who did not perform his bowing perfectly that he should repeat his Ṣalāt (prayer).

793. Narrated Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه: Once the Prophet ﷺ entered the mosque, a man came in, offered the Ṣalāt (prayer) and greeted the Prophet ﷺ. The Prophet ﷺ returned his greeting and said to him, “Go back and offer Ṣalāt again for you have not offered Ṣalāt.” The man offered the Ṣalāt again, came back and greeted the Prophet ﷺ. He said to him thrice, “Go back and offer Ṣalāt again for you have not offered Ṣalāt.” The man said, “By Him, Who has sent you with the truth! I do not know a better way of offering Ṣalāt. Kindly teach me how to offer Ṣalāt.” He ﷺ said, “When you stand for the Ṣalāt, say Takbir and then recite from the Qur’ān what you know and then bow with calmness till you feel at ease, then rise from bowing till you stand straight. Afterwards prostrate calmly till you feel at ease and then raise (your head) and sit with calmness till you feel at ease, and then prostrate with...
calmness till you feel at ease in prostration and do the same in the whole of your Salat."

(123) CHAPTER. Invocation in bowing.

794. Narrated 'Aishah: The Prophet used to say in his bowings and prostrations, "Subhānaka-Allāhumma Rabbāna wa-bihamdika Allāhumma-agh firli [I honour Allah from all that (unsuitable things) which are ascribed to You, O Allah Our Lord! And all the praises and thanks are for You. O Allah! Forgive me]."

(124) CHAPTER. What the Imām and the followers say on raising their heads from bowing.

795. Narrated Abū Hurairah: When the Prophet said “Sami' Allāhu liman hamida (Allāh heard those who sent praises and thanks to Him),” he would say, “Allāhumma Rabbanā walakal hamd (O Allah! Our Lord! All the praises and thanks are for You).” On bowing and raising his head from it [Salāt (prayers)] the Prophet used to say Takbir. He also used to say Takbir on rising after the two prostrations.

(125) CHAPTER. The superiority of saying Allāhumma Rabbanā lakal hamd (O Allah, Our Lord! All the praises and thanks are for You).

796. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “When the Imām
says, *Sami’ Allâhu liman hamida* (Allâh heard those who sent praises and thanks to Him), you should say, *Allâhumma Rabbanâ lakal-hamd* (O Allâh! Our Lord! All the praises and thanks are for You). And if the saying of any one of you coincides with that of the angels, all his past sins will be forgiven.”

(126) CHAPTER.

797. Narrated Abû Salama: Abû Hurairah said, “No doubt, my *Salât* (prayer) is similar to that of the Prophet [SAW.” Abû Hurairah used to recite *Qunût* (invocation) after saying *Sami’ Allâhu liman hamida* in the last *Rak’a* of the Zuhr, ‘Ishâ’ and Fajr prayers. He would ask Allâh’s Forgiveness for the true believers and curse the disbelievers.

798. Narrated Anas: The *Qunût* used to be recited in the *Maghrib* and the *Fajr* prayers.

799. Narrated Râfî’ a bin Râfî’ Az-Zuraqi: One day we were offering *Salât* (prayer) behind the Prophet [SAW. When he raised his head from bowing, he said, “*Sami’ Allâhu liman hamida.*” A man behind him said, “*Rabbanânâ wâlakal hamd, hamdan*
(127) CHAPTER. To stand straight with calmness on raising the head from bowing.

And Abū Ḥumaid said: The Prophet ﷺ rose (from bowing) and stood straight till all the vertebra of his spinal column came to a natural position.

800. Narrated Thābit: Anas used to demonstrate to us the Salāt (prayer) of the Prophet ﷺ and while demonstrating, he used to raise his head from bowing and stand so long that we would say that he had forgotten (the prostration).

801. Narrated Al-Barā’ī: The bowings, the prostrations, the period of standing after bowing and the interval between the two prostrations of the Prophet ﷺ used to be equal in duration.

802. Narrated Ayyūb: Abū Qilāba said, “Mālik bin Ḥuwairīth used to demonstrate to us the Salāt (prayer) of the Prophet ﷺ at times other than that of the compulsory prayers. So, (once) he stood up
for Ṣalāt and performed a perfect Qiyām (standing and reciting from the Qur’ān) and then bowed and performed bowing perfectly; then he raised his head and stood straight for a while.” Ābu Qilāba added, “Mālik bin Ḥuwairīth in that demonstration, offered Ṣalāt like this Sheikh of ours, Ābu Yazīd.” Ābu Yazīd used to sit (for a while) on raising his head from the second prostration before getting up.

(128) CHAPTER. One should say Takbir while going in prostration.

Nāfī’ said: “Ībīn ‘Umar used to place both his hands (on the ground) before his knees.”

803. Narrated Ābu Bakr bin ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin Ḥārīth bin Ḥīshām and Ābu Salama bin ‘Abdur Raḥmān: Ābu Hurairah said: “Ibn ‘Umar used to say Takbir in all As-Salāt (the prayers), compulsory and optional — in the month of Ramadān or other months. He used to say Takbir on standing for Ṣalāt (prayer) and on bowing; then he would say Samī’ Allāhu liman ḥamīda, and before prostrating he would say Rabbānā walakallāhū hamadā. Then he would say Takbir on prostrating and on raising his head from the prostration, then another Takbir on prostrating (for the second time), and on raising up his head from the prostration. He also would say the Takbir on standing from the second Rakʻa. He used to do the same in every Rakʻa till he completed As-Salāt. On completion of the Ṣalāt, he would say, “By Him in Whose Hands my soul is! No doubt my Ṣalāt closely resembles to that of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ than yours, and this was his Ṣalāt till he left this world.”
10— THE BOOK OF A ḤĀN

804. Narrated Abū Hurairah: When Allah’s Messenger raised his head from (bowing) he used to say *Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamīda, Rabbanā walakal-ḥamād.* He would invoke Allah for some people by naming them: “O Allah! Save Al-Walid bin Al-Walid and Salama bin Hishām and ‘Ayyāsh bin Abi Rabi’a and the weak ones among the faithful believers. O Allah! Be hard on the tribe of Mu‘ār and let them suffer from drought (famine) years like that of the time of Yūsuf (Joseph).” In those days the eastern section of the tribe of Mudar was against the Prophet.

805. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Allah’s Messenger fell from a horse and the right side of his body was injured. We went to enquire about his health, meanwhile it was time for As-Ṣalāt (the prayer) and he led the Ṣalāt (prayer) sitting and we also offered Ṣalāt while sitting. On completion of the Ṣalāt he said, “The Imām is to be followed; say Takbīr when he says it; bow when he bows; raise up when he raises up his head and when he says *Sami’ Allāhu liman ḥamīda,* say Rabbanā walakal-ḥamād, and prostrate if he prostrates.”

(1) (H.805) See Hadith No.689 and 5658 (for taking the verdict).
Sufyân narrated the same from Ma'mar. Ibn Juraij said that his (the Prophet's) right leg had been injured.

(129) CHAPTER. Superiority of prostrating.

806.Narrated Abü Hurairah: The people said, “O Allah's Messenger! Shall we see our Lord on the Day of Resurrection?” He replied, “Do you have any doubt in seeing the moon on a full-moon night when there are no clouds?” They replied, “No, O Allah’s Messenger!” He said, “Do you have any doubt in seeing the sun when there are no clouds?” They replied, “No, O Allah’s Messenger!” He said, “You will see Allah (your Lord) in the same way. On the Day of Resurrection, people will be gathered and He will order the people to follow what they used to worship. So, some of them will follow the sun, some will follow the moon, and some will follow other (false) deities; and only this nation (Muslims) will be left with its hypocrites. Allah will come to them and say, ‘I am your Lord.’ They will say, ‘We shall stay in this place till our Lord comes to us and when our Lord will come, we will recognize Him.’ Then Allah will come to them again and say, ‘I am
your Lord.' They will say, 'You are our Lord.' Allah will call them, and  As-Sirāt [a slippery bridge on which there will be clamps and hooks like the thorn of Sa’dān - see Hadith No.6573, Vol.8 and Hadith No.7439, Vol.9] will be laid across Hell and I (Muhammad ) shall be the first amongst the Messengers to cross it with my followers. Nobody, except the Messengers, will then be able to speak and they will be saying, 'O Allah! Save us, O Allah! Save us.' "There will be hooks like the thorns of Sa’dān in Hell. Have you seen the thorns of Sa’dān?" The people said, "Yes." He said, "These hooks will be like the thorns of Sa’dān; but nobody except Allah knows their greatness in size and these will entangle the people according to their deeds; some of them will fall and stay in Hell forever; others will receive punishment (torn into small pieces) and will get out of Hell till when Allah intends mercy on whomever He likes amongst the people of Hell, He will order the angels to take out of Hell those who worshipped none but Him Alone. The angels will take them out by recognizing them from the traces of prostrations, for Allah has forbidden the (Hell) Fire to eat away those traces. So they will come out of the Fire, it will eat away from the whole of the human body except the marks of the prostrations. At that time they will come out of the Fire as mere skeletons. The Water of Life will be poured on them, and as a result, they will grow like the seeds growing on the bank of a flowing flood-water stream. Then when Allah had finished from the Judgement amongst His creations, one man will be left between Hell and Paradise and he will be the last man from the people of Hell to enter Paradise. He will be facing Hell, and will say, 'O Allah! Turn my face from the Fire as its wind has dried me and its steam has...
burnt me.' Allah will ask him, ‘Will you ask for anything more in case this favour is granted to you?’ He will say, ‘No by Your (Honour) Power!’ And he will give to his Lord (Allah) what he will of the pledges and the covenants. Allah will then turn his face from the Fire. When he will face Paradise and will see its charm, he will remain quiet as long as Allah will. He then will say, ‘O my Lord! Let me go to the gate of Paradise.’ Allah will ask him, ‘Didn’t you give pledges and make covenants (to the effect) that you would not ask for anything more than what you requested at first?’ He will say, ‘O my Lord! Do not make me the most wretched amongst Your creatures.’ Allah will say, ‘If this request is granted, will you then ask for anything else?’ He will say, ‘No! By Your (Honour) Power! I shall not ask for anything else.’ Then he will give to his Lord what He will of the pledges and the covenants. Allah will then let him go to the gate of Paradise. On reaching there and seeing its life, charm, and pleasures he will remain quiet as long as Allah will and then will say, ‘O my Lord! Let me enter Paradise.’ Allah will say, ‘May Allah be Merciful unto you, O son of Adam! How treacherous you are! Haven’t you made covenants and given pledges that you will not ask for anything more that what you have been given?’ He will say, ‘O my Lord! Do not make me the most wretched amongst Your creatures.’ So Allah will laugh and allow him to enter Paradise and will ask him to request as much as he likes. He will do so till all his desires have been fulfilled. Then Allah will say, ‘Request more of such and such things.’ Allah will remind him and when all his desires and wishes have been fulfilled, Allah will say, ‘All this is granted to you and a similar amount besides’.”

Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī said to
Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه said, “Allâh ﷺ said, ‘That is for you and ten times more like it’. ’ Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه said, “I do not remember from Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ except (his saying), ‘All this is granted to you and a similar amount besides.’ ’ Abū Sa‘îd said, “I heard him saying, ‘That is for you and ten times more the like of it’.”

130 (130) CHAPTER. During the prostrations one should keep one’s arms away from one’s sides and the abdomen should be kept away from the thighs.

807. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin Mâlik bin Buḥaina رضي الله عنه: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ offered Salât (prayers) (in prostration) he used to keep away his arms widely separated (from his body) so that the whiteness of his armpits was visible.

131 (131) CHAPTER. One should keep the toes in the direction of the Qiblah.

Abû Ḥumairâd Aṣ-Ṣâ‘îdî narrated this from the Prophet ﷺ.
(132) CHAPTER. If one does not perform the prostrations perfectly.

808. Narrated Abū Wā’il: Ḥudhaifa said, “I saw a person not performing his bowings and prostrations perfectly. When he completed Ḡasilāt (the prayer), I told him that he had not offered Ḡasilāt (prayer).” I think that Ḥudhaifa added (i.e., said to the man), “Had you died, you would have died on a Sunna (legal way, act of worship) other than that of Prophet Muḥammad ﷺ.”

(133) CHAPTER. To prostrate on seven bones.

809. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ was ordered (by Allāh) to prostrate on seven body-parts and not to tuck up the clothes or hair [while offering Ḡasilāt (prayers)](1). Those parts are: the forehead (along with the tip of nose), both hands, both knees, and (toes of) both feet.

810. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ said, “We have been ordered to prostrate on seven bones and not to tuck up the clothes and the hair.”

811. Narrated Al-Barā’ bin ‘Āzib: If one does not perform the prostrations perfectly.
and he was not a liar. We used to offer Salāt (prayer) behind the Prophet ﷺ and when he said, “Sami‘Allāhu liman hamīda”, none of us would bend his back (to go for prostration) till the Prophet ﷺ had placed his forehead on the ground.

(134) CHAPTER. To prostrate on the nose.

812. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “I have been ordered to prostrate on seven bones, i.e., on the forehead along with the tip of the nose and the Prophet ﷺ pointed towards his nose, both hands, both knees and the toes of both feet and not to gather the clothes or the hair.”

(135) CHAPTER. To prostrate on the nose and in the mud.

813. Narrated Abū Salāma: Once I went to Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī رضي الله عنه and asked him, “Won’t you come with us to the date-palm trees to have a talk?” So Abū Sa‘īd went out and I asked him, “Tell me what you heard from the Prophet ﷺ about the Night of Qadr.” Abū Sa‘īd replied, “Once Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ performed I’tikāf(1) (seclusion) on the first ten days of the month of

(1) (H.813) Seclusion in a mosque for the purpose of worshipping Allāh only. The one in such a state should not have sexual relations with his wife, and one is not allowed to leave the mosque except for a very short period, and that is only for very urgent necessity e.g., answering the call of nature or joining a funeral procession etc.
Ramaḍan and we did the same with him. Jibrīl (Gabriel) came to him and said, 'The night you are looking for is ahead of you.' So, the Prophet ﷺ performed the I’tikāf in the middle (second) ten days of the month of Ramaḍan and we too performed I’tikāf with him. Jibrīl came to him and said, 'The night which you are looking for is ahead of you.' In the morning of the 20th of Ramaḍan the Prophet ﷺ delivered a Khutba (religious talk) saying, 'Whoever has performed I’tikāf with me should continue it. I have been shown the Night of Qadr, but have forgotten its date, but it is in the odd nights of the last ten nights. I saw in my dream that I was prostrating in mud and water.' In those days the roof of the mosque was made of branches of date-palm trees. At that time the sky was clear and no cloud was visible, but suddenly a cloud came and it rained. The Prophet led us in the Salāt (prayer) and I saw the traces of mud on the forehead and on the nose of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ. So it was the confirmation of that dream.”

(136) CHAPTER. To tie the clothes and wrap them properly [in Salāt (prayer)]; and whoever gathered his clothes for fear that his private parts may become exposed.

814. Narrated Sahl bin Sa'd: The people used to offer prayers with the Prophet ﷺ tying their Iṣār around their necks because of their small sizes; and the women were directed that they should not raise their heads from the prostrations till the men had sat straight.
(137) CHAPTER. One should not tuck up the hair [during Salât (prayers)].

815.Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: The Prophet was ordered to prostrate on seven bony parts and not to tuck up his clothes and hair [during Salât (prayers)].” [See Hadith No. 809]

(138) CHAPTER. One should not tuck up his garment in As-Salat (the prayer).

816.Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: The Prophet said, “I have been ordered to prostrate on seven (bones) and not to tuck up the hair and garment (during prayers).”

(139) CHAPTER. To invoke and glorify Allah in prostration:

817.Narrated 'Aishah: The Prophet used to say frequently in his bowings and prostrations, Subhânaka Allâhumma Rabbanâ Wabihamdika, Allâhumma Ighîrîlī [I honour Allah from all that (unsuitable things) that are ascribed to Him, O Allah! Our Lord! All praises and thanks are for You. O Allah! Forgive me]. In this way he was acting according to the Qur'ân.

(140) CHAPTER. To sit for a while between the two prostrations.

818.Narrated Abû Qilâba: Once Malik
bin Ḥuwairith said to his friends, “Shall I show you how Allah’s Messenger used to offer his Ṣalāt (prayers)?” And it was not the time for any of the compulsory congregational prayers. So he stood up (for the Ṣalāt) bowed and said the Takbīr, then he raised up his head and remained standing for a while and then prostrated and raised up his head for a while (sat up for a while). He offered Ṣalāt like our Sheikh ‘Amr bin Salama. Ayūb said, “The latter used to do a thing which I did not see the people doing, i.e., he used to sit between the third and the fourth Rak’a.

819. Malik bin Ḥuwairith said, “We came to the Prophet (after embracing Islam) and stayed with him. He said to us, ‘When you go back to your families, offer such and such a Ṣalāt (prayer) at such and such a time. offer such a Salāt (prayer) at such and such time, and when there comes the time for the Salāt (prayer) then one of you should pronounce the Adhān for the Salāt (prayer) and the oldest of you should lead the Salāt (prayer).’ “ [See Fath Al-Bāri Vol. 2. p.444 as regards sitting for rest between the first and the second Rak’a and then between the third and the fourth Rak’a.]

820. Narrated Al-Barā’i: The time taken by the Prophet in prostrations, bowings, and the sitting interval between the two prostrations was about the same.
821. Narrated Thabit: Anas said, “I will leave no stone unturned in making you offer the Salāt (prayer) as I have seen the Prophet making us offer it.” Anas used to do a thing which I have not seen you doing. He used to stand after the bowing for such a long time that one would think that he had forgotten (the prostrations) and he used to sit in-between the prostrations so long that one would think that he had forgotten the second prostration.

(141) CHAPTER. One should not put the forearms on the ground during prostrations.

Abū Ḥumaid said: The Prophet prostrated and put his hands (on the ground) with the forearms away from the ground and away from the body.

822. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet said, “Be straight in the prostrations and none of you should put his forearms on the ground (during prostration) like a dog.”

(142) CHAPTER. Sitting straight in a Witr prayer (i.e., an odd Rak'ah) and then getting up.

823. Narrated Mālik bin Ḥuwairith Al-Laithi: I saw the Prophet offering Salāt (prayer) and in the odd Rak'a, he used to sit for a moment (جلسة الاستراحة) before getting up.
CHAPTER. How to support oneself on the ground while standing after finishing the Rak’a (after the two prostrations)...

824.Narrated Ayûb: Abû Qilâba said, “Mâlik bin Huwairith came to us and led us in As-Salât (the prayer) in this mosque of ours and said, ‘I lead you in Salât but I do not want to offer the Salât but just to show you how Allah’s Messenger performed his Salât (prayer).’” I asked Abû Qilâba, “How was the Salât (prayer) of Mâlik bin Huwairith?” He replied, “Like the Salât (prayer) of this Sheikh of ours — i.e., ‘Amr bin Salama.” That Sheikh used to pronounce the Takbir perfectly and when he raised his head from the second prostration he would sit for a while and then support himself on the ground and get up.

CHAPTER. Saying Takbir on rising from the two prostrations.

Ibn Az-Zubair used to say the Takbir on rising.

825. Narrated Sa’îd bin Al-Harith: Abû Sa’îd (Al-Khudri) led us in the Salât (prayer) and said the Takbir aloud on arising from the prostration, and on prostrating, on rising again, and on getting up from the second Rak’a. Abû Sa’îd said, “I saw the Prophet doing the same.”
826. Narrated Muṭṭirif: ‘Imrān and I offered Ṣalāt (prayers) behind ‘Alī bin Abī Ṭālib  and he said Taḵbīr on prostrating, on rising and on getting up after the two Rak‘a (i.e., after the second Rak‘a). When the Ṣalāt was finished, ‘Imrān took me by the hand and said, “He (‘Alī) has offered Ṣalāt (like the) Ṣalāt of Muhammad  ,” (or said, “He made us remember the Ṣalāt of Muhammad  ”).

(145) CHAPTER. The Prophet’s Sunna (legal way) for the sitting in the Tašah-hud [in the Ṣalāt (prayer)].

Umm Ad-Dardā’ used to sit in the Ṣalāt (prayer) like men and she was a woman well-versed (in religious knowledge).

827. Narrated ‘Abdullāh (bin ‘Abdullah): I saw ‘Abdullāh bin Umar crossing his legs while sitting in As-Sālāt (prayer) and I, a mere youngster in those days, did the same. Ibn Umar forbade me to do so, and said, “The proper way is to keep the right foot propped up and bend the left in As-Sālāt.” I said questioningly, “But you are doing so (crossing the legs).” He said, “My feet cannot bear my weight.”

828. Narrated Muḥammad bin ‘Amr bin ‘Aṭā’: I was sitting with some of the Companions of Allāh’s Messenger  and we were discussing about the way of Ṣalāt (prayer) of the Prophet  . Abū Ḥumaid Aṣ-
Sādi said, “I remember the Salāt of Allāh’s Messenger better than anyone of you. I saw him raising both his hands up to the level of the shoulders on saying the Takbir; and on bowing, he placed his hands on both knees and bent his back straight, then he stood up straight from bowing till all the vertebrae took their normal positions. In prostrations, he placed both his hands on the ground with the forearms away from the ground and away from his body, and his toes were facing the Qiblah. On sitting in the second Rak’a, he sat on his left foot and propped up the right one; and in the last Rak’a he pushed his left foot forward and kept the other foot propped up and sat over his buttocks.”
(146) CHAPTER. Whoever considered that the first Tashah-hud is not compulsory.

As the Prophet stood up after the second Rak’a (without sitting for Tashah-hud) and did not perform it.

829. Narrated ‘Abdulläh bin Buḥaina (he was from the tribe of Azd Shanū’a and was one of the Companions of the Prophet): Once the Prophet led us in the Zuhr prayer and stood up after the second Rak’a and did not sit down. The people stood up with him. When As-Salāt (the prayer) was about to end and the people were waiting for him to say the Taslim, he said Takbīr while sitting and prostrated twice (of Sahw-forgetfulness) before saying the Taslim and then he (finished the Salāt saying the) Taslim.”

(147) CHAPTER. (Saying of the) TaIiāh-hud in the first sitting.

830. Narrated ‘Abdulläh bin Mālik bin Buḥaina: Once Alläh’s Messenger led us in the Zuhr prayer and got up (after the prostrations of the second Rak’a) although he should have sat (for the Tashah-hud). So, at the end of the Salāt (prayer), he prostrated twice while sitting (prostrations of Sahw).
831. Narrated Shaqiq bin Salama: ‘Abdullah (bin Mas‘ud) said, “Whenever we offered Salah (prayer) behind the Prophet س، we used to recite (in sitting) As-Salām (peace) be on Jibril (Gabriel), Mikāil (Michael), peace be on so-and-so. Once Allah’s Messenger س after finishing the Salah (prayer]) looked back at us and said, “Allahū-Himself is As-Salām (Peace), and if anyone of you prays then he should say: At-tahyātu lillahi waalawatu wa;-taiyibatu. As-Salamu ‘alaika aiyuhan-Nabīyyu wa raizmatul-lāhi wa barakdtuhu. As-Salāmu ‘alaikum wa ‘ala ibādil-lāhi is-sālihīn. (All the compliments, prayers and good things are due to Allah Himself, peace be on you, O Prophet and Allah’s Mercy and Blessings be on you. Peace be on us and on the true pious slaves of Allah). If you say that, it will be for all the slaves in the heaven and the earth. Ash-hadu an lã-ilãha illallãhu wa ash-hadu anna Muhammadan ‘abduhü wa Rasuluhu. (I testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and I also testify that Muhammad is His slave and His Messenger).”

832. Narrated ‘Aishah, the wife of the Prophet س: Allah’s Messenger س used to invoke Allah in As-Salāt (the prayer) saying, “Allahumma inni a‘üdhu bika min ‘adhābil-qabri, wa a‘üdhu bika min fitnatil-mas’hīd-dajjal, wa a‘üdhu bika min fitnatil-mahyā wa fitnatil-mamātī. Allahūmma inni a‘üdhu bika minal-mahāmi wal-maghāmi. [O Allah, I seek refuge with You from the punishment of the grave and from the Fitnah (trial and affliction etc.) of Mash‘ Ad-Dajjāl and from...
the *Fitnah* of life and from the *Fitnah* of death. O Allah, I seek refuge with You from the sins and from being in debt].” Somebody said to him, “Why do you so frequently seek refuge with Allah from being in debt?” The Prophet ﷺ replied, “A person in debt tells lies whenever he speaks, and breaks promises whenever he makes (them).”

833. ‘Aishah also narrated: I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ in his Salāt seeking refuge with Allah from the *Fitnah* of Ad-Dajjāl.

834. Narrated Abū Bakr Aṣ-Ṣiddiq ﷺ: I asked Allah’s Messenger ﷺ to teach me an invocation so that I may invoke Allah with it in my Salāt (prayer). He ﷺ told me to say, “Allāhumma inni zalumtu nafsi zulman kathāran, wa li yaghfīrudh-dhnaba innākā antal-Ghafurur-Rahim [O Allah! I have done great *Zulm* (wrong) to myself and none except You forgives sins, so please forgive me and be Merciful to me as You are the Oft-Forgiver, the Most Merciful].”

(150) CHAPTER. What optional invocation may be selected after the *Tashāh-hud*, and it is not obligatory.

835. Narrated ‘Abdullāh (bin Mas‘ūd): Whenever we offered Salāt (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ we used to say, *As-Salām* (peace).
be on Allāh from His slaves and peace be on so-and-so.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Don’t say As-Salām be on Allāh, for He Himself is As-Salām, but say, ‘At-tahiyāt lillāhi was-salawātu wa-taiyibātāt. As-Salāmu ‘alaika aiyuhan-Nabiyyu warahmatul-lāhi wa barakāthu. As-Salāmu ‘alainā wa ‘alā ‘ibādillāh iṣṣāliḥin. If you say this then it will be for all the slaves in heaven or between heaven and earth. Ash-hadu an lá-ilāha ill-Allāhu wa asḥ-hadu anna Muḥammadan ‘abdul-hu wa Rasūluhu.’

Then select the invocation you like best and recite it.” (See Hadith No.831, 832, 833 & 834).

(151) CHAPTER. No cleaning (rubbing) one’s forehead and nose till one has completed As-Salāt (the prayer).

And Abū ‘Abdullāh said: I saw Al-Humaidi quoting this Hadith (No.798) to support his argument that the forehead should not be cleaned (rubbed) in As-Salāt (prayer).

836. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: I saw Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ prostrating in mud and water and saw the mark of mud on his forehead.

(152) CHAPTER. Taslim [turning the face to the right and then to the left and saying “As-
Salāmu ‘alaikum wa raḥmat-ullāh” at the end of the Salāt (prayers)].

837. Narrated Umm Salama: Whenever Allah’s Messenger ﷺ finished his Salāt (prayers) with Taslīm, the women would get up and he would stay on for a while in his place before getting up.

Ibn Shihāb said, “I think (and Allah knows better), that the purpose of his stay was that the women might leave before the men who had finished their Salāt (prayers).”

(153) CHAPTER. To finish the Salāt (prayer) with Taslīm along with the İmām.

Ibn ‘Umar liked for those offering Salāt (prayers) behind the İmām to say Taslīm (immediately) after the İmām had said it.

838. Narrated ‘İtbān (bin Mālik): We offered Salāt (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and used to finish our Salāt with the Taslīm along with him.

(154) CHAPTER. Whoever did not say (a Taslīm) in addition to the Taslīm of the İmām but thought that Taslīm of the Salāt (prayer) was sufficient.

839. Narrated Maḥmūd bin Ar-Rabī’: I remember Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and also the mouthful of water which he took...
from a bucket in our house and ejected (on me).

840. I heard from ‘Itbân bin Mâlik Al-Anşârî, who was one from Banî Sâlim, saying, "I used to lead my tribe of Banî Sâlim in Salât (prayer). Once I went to the Prophet ﷺ and said to him, 'I have weak eyesight and at times the rain-water floods intervenes between me and the mosque of my tribe and I wish that you would come to my house and offer Salât at some place so that I could take that place as a Musalla (appointed place for Salât).' He said, 'If Allâh will, I will do so.' Next day Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ along with Abû Bakr came to my house after the sun had risen high and he asked permission to enter. I gave him permission, but he didn’t sit till he said to me, ‘Where do you want me to offer Salât in your house?’ I pointed to a place in the house where I wanted him to offer Salât. So he stood up for the Salât and we aligned behind him. He completed the Salât with Taslim and we did the same simultaneously."

(155) CHAPTER. The Dhîkr (remembering Allâh by Glorifying, Praising and Magnifying Him) after As-Salât (the prayer).

841. Narrated Abû ‘Abdullâh, the freed slave of Ibn ‘Abbâs: Ibn Abbâs told me, "In the lifetime of the Prophet ﷺ it was the custom to remember Allâh (Dhîkr) by glorifying, praising and magnifying Allâh aloud after the compulsory congregational Salât (prayers)." Ibn ‘Abbâs further said, "When I heard the Dhîkr, I would learn that..."
the compulsory congregational Salāt had ended.”

842. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās (r): I used to recognise the completion of As-Salāt (the prayer) of the Prophet ﷺ by hearing Takbīr.

843. Narrated Abū Hurairah (r): Some poor people came to the Prophet ﷺ and said, “The wealthy people will get higher grades and will have permanent enjoyment, and they offer Salāt (prayer) like us and observe Saum (fast) as we do. They have more money by which they perform the Ḥajj, and ‘Umra; fight and struggle in Allah’s Cause and give in charity.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Shall I not tell you a thing upon which if you acted you would catch up with those who have surpassed you? Nobody would overtake you and you would be better than the people amongst whom you live except those who would do the same. Say Subhān Allāh, Alhamdu-lillāh and Allahu Akbar thirty-three times each after every (compulsory) Salāt (prayer).” We differed and some of us said that we should say Subhān Allāh thirty three times and Alhamdu lillāh thirty-three times and Allahu Akbar
thirty-four times. I went to the Prophet who said, “Say, Subhân Allâh and Al-Hamdu lilâh and Allâhu Akbar all of them for thirty-three times.”

844. Narrated Warrâd, the clerk of Al-Mughîrah bin Shu‘bâ: Once, Al-Mughîrah dictated to me in a letter addressed to Mu‘âwiyya that the Prophet used to say after every compulsory Salât (prayer), “Lâ ilâha illallahu wahdaha la sharîka lahu, lahuul-mulku wa-lahuul-hamdu, wa huwa ala kulli shâ’în Qadîr. Allâhumma lâ mani‘a lima a‘taita, wa lâ mu‘tiya lima mana‘ta, wa lâ yanfa’i dhal-jaddi minkal-jadd. (None has the right to be worshipped but Allah and He has no partner in Lordship or in worship or in the Names and the Qualities) and for Him is the kingdom and all the praises and thanks are for Him and He is Omnipotent. O Allah! Nobody can hold back what You give and nobody can give what You hold back. Hard efforts by anyone (or good luck or riches) for anything cannot benefit one against Your Will.” And Al-Hasan said, “Al-Jadd means riches (prosperity).”

The Prophet used to face us on completion of the Salāt (prayer).

846. Narrated Zaid bin Khālid Al-Juhani: The Prophet led us in the Fajr prayer at Hudaibiya after a rainy night. On completion of the Salāt (prayer), he faced the people and said, "Do you know what your Lord has said (revealed)?" The people replied, "Allah and His Messenger know better." He said, "Allah has said, 'In this morning some of Ibādi (My slaves) remained as true believers and some became disbelievers; whoever said that the rain was due to the Blessings and the Mercy of Allah, is the one (Ibādi) who believes in Me and he disbelieves in the star, and whoever said that it rained because of a particular star is a disbeliever in Me and a believer in the star'."

847. Narrated Anas (bin Malik): Once the Prophet delayed the 'Ishā' prayer until midnight and then came to us. Having offered Salāt (prayers) he faced us and said, "The people had offered and slept but you were in the Salāt as long as you were waiting for it."
(157) CHAPTER. The staying of the Imam at his Musalla (praying place) after (finishing the prayer with) Taslim.

848. Narrated Nāfi': Ibn 'Umar رضي الله عنهما used to offer prayers (Nawāfil) at the place where he had offered the compulsory prayer. Al-Qāsim (bin Muhammad bin Abi Bakr) did the same.

The narration coming from Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه (from the Prophet ﷺ) forbidding the Imam from offering prayers (optional prayer) at the same place where he has offered the compulsory prayer (is incorrect).

849. Narrated Umm Salama, ﷺ, "The Prophet ﷺ after finishing the prayer with Taslim used to stay at his place for a while."

Ibn Shihãb said, "I think (and Allah knows better), that he used to wait for the departure of the women who had offered prayers."

850. Ibn Shihãb wrote that he had heard it from Hind bin Al-Hãrith Al-Firasiyya who heard it from Umm Salama, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ (Hind was from the companions of Umm Salama) who said, "When the Prophet ﷺ finished the prayer with Taslim, the women would depart and enter their houses before Allah's Messenger ﷺ departed."
(158) CHAPTER. Whoever led the people in Salāt (prayer) and remembered an urgent matter or necessity and had to pass over the people (to carry out that).

851. Narrated ’Uqba b. ‘Amir: I offered the ’Asr prayer behind the Prophet at Al-Madina. When he had finished the Salāt (prayer) with Taslim, he got up hurriedly and went out by crossing the rows of the people to one of the dwellings of his wives. The people got scared at his speed.

The Prophet came back and found the people surprised at his haste and said to them, “I remembered a piece of gold lying in my house and I did not like it to divert my attention from Allāh’s worship, so I have ordered it to be distributed (in charity).”
(159) CHAPTER. To leave or depart from the right and from the left after finishing from the Salah (prayers).

Anas bin Malik used to leave off from his right and from his left, and he used to criticize all those who always aimed to leave from their right side only.

852. Narrated Abdullâh (bin Mas'ûd):
You should not give away a part of your Salah (prayer) to Satan by thinking that it is necessary to depart (after finishing the Salah) from one's right side only; I have seen the Prophet ☪️ often departing from the left side.

(160) CHAPTER. What has been said about uncooked garlic, onion and leek.

And the statement of the Prophet ☪️ “Whoever has eaten garlic or onion because of hunger or otherwise should not come near our mosque.”

853. Narrated Ibn `Umar:
During the holy battle of Khaibar the Prophet ☪️ said, “Whoever ate from this plant (i.e., garlic) should not enter our mosque.”
854. Narrated ‘Atā‘: I heard Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh saying, “The Prophet said, ‘Whoever eats (from) this plant (he meant garlic) should keep away from our mosque.’” I said, “What does he mean by that?” He replied, “I think he means only raw garlic.”

855. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh, in another narration said, “Once a big pot containing (cooked) vegetables was brought. On finding unpleasant smell coming from it, the Prophet asked, ‘What is in it?’ He was told all the names of the vegetables that were in it. The Prophet ordered that it should be brought near to some of his Companions who were with him. When the Prophet saw it he disliked to eat it and said, ‘Eat. (I don’t eat) for I converse with those whom you don’t converse with (i.e., the angels).’”
856. Narrated 'Abdul 'Azîz: A man asked Anas, “What did you hear from the Prophet about garlic?” He said, “The Prophet said, ‘Whoever has eaten this plant should not come near us or he should not offer Salât (prayer) with us’.”

(161) CHAPTER. The ablution for boys (youngsters). When they should perform Ghusl (take a bath) and Tuhûr (purification). Their attendance at congregational prayers, ‘Eid prayers and funeral prayers and their rows in the prayers.

857. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet passed by a grave that was separated from the other graves and led the people in the (funeral) prayer and the people aligned behind him. I said, “O Ab ‘Amr! Who told you about it?” He said, “Ibn ‘Abbâs.”

858. Narrated Abû Sa‘îd Al-Khudri: The Prophet said, “Ghusl (taking a bath) on Friday is compulsory for every Muslim reaching the age of puberty.”
859. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: One night I slept at the house of my aunt Maimūna and the Prophet slept (too). He got up [for Salāt (prayer)] in the last hours of the night and performed a light ablution from a hanging leather water-skin. (‘Amr, the subnarrator described that the ablution was very light). Then he stood up for Salāt and I got up too and performed the ablution in the same way and joined him on his left side. He pulled me to the right and offered prayers as much as Allāh will. Then he lay down and slept and I heard his breath sounds till the Mu’ādh-dhin came to him to inform him about the (Fajr) prayer. He left with him for Salāt and offered Salāt without repeating the ablution. (Sufyān the subnarrator said: We said to ‘Amr, “Some people say, ‘The eyes of the Prophet sleep but his heart never sleeps’.” ‘Amr said, “‘Ubaid bin ‘Umar said, ‘The dreams of the Prophets are Divine Revelations. Then he recited, ‘...O my son, I have seen in a dream that I am slaughtering you (offering you in sacrifice to Allāh...)” (V.37:102).

860. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: My grandmother Mulaika invited Allāh’s Messenger for a meal which she had prepared specially for him. He ate some of it and said, “Get up. I shall lead you in the prayer.” I brought a mat that had become black owing to excessive use and I sprinkled water on it. Allāh’s Messenger stood on it and offered two Rak’a; and the orphan was with me (in the first row), and the old lady stood behind us.
861. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās: Once I came riding a she-ass and then, had just attained the age of puberty. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ was leading the people in Salāt (prayer) at Minā facing no wall. I passed in front of the row and let loose the she-ass for grazing and joined the row and no one objected to my deed.

862. Narrated 'Aishah: Once Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ delayed the 'Ishā' prayer till 'Umar informed him that the women and children had slept. Then Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ came out and said: “None from amongst the dwellers of earth have offered this Salāt (prayer) except you. In those days none but the people of Al-Madīna used to offer Salāt (prayer).

863. Narrated 'Abdur Rahmān bin 'Abīs: A person asked Ibn 'Abbās:
“Have you ever presented yourself at the (‘Eid) prayer with Allah’s Messenger?” He replied, “Yes. And had it not been for my kinship (position) with the Prophet, it would not have been possible for me to do so (for he was too young). The Prophet went to the mark near the house of Kathir bin As-Salt and delivered a Khutba (religious talk). He then went towards the women. He advised and reminded them and asked them to give in charity. So the woman would bring her hand near her neck and take off her necklace and put it in the garment of Bilal. Then the Prophet and Bilal came to the house.”

(162) CHAPTER. Going of women to the mosques at night and in darkness.

864. Narrated 'Aishah: Once Allah’s Messenger delayed the 'Isha’ prayer till 'Umar informed him that the women and children had slept. The Prophet came out and said, “None except you from amongst the dwellers of earth were waiting for this Salat (prayer).” In those days, none offered Salat except the people of Al-Madina and they used to offer the ‘Isha’ prayer between the disappearance of the twilight and the first third of the night.

865. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: The Prophet said, “If your women ask permission to go to the mosque at night, allow them.”
(163) CHAPTER. The waiting of the people for the religious learned Imam to get up (after the prayer to depart).

866. Narrated Umm Salama, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: In the lifetime of Allah's Messenger ﷺ the women used to get up when they finished their compulsory Salat (prayers) with Taslim. The Prophet ﷺ and the men would stay on at their places as long as Allah will. When the Prophet ﷺ got up, the men would then get up.

867. Narrated 'Aishah ﷺ: Whenever Allah's Messenger ﷺ finished the Fajr prayer, the women would leave covered in their sheets and were not recognized owing to the darkness.

868. Narrated 'Abdullãh bin AN Qatada Al-Anari: My father said, "Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, "Whenever I stand for
Salāt (prayer), I want to prolong it but on hearing the cries of a child, I would shorten it as I dislike to put its mother in trouble."

869. Narrated `Aishah: Had Allāh’s Messenger known what the women were doing, he would have forbidden them from going to the mosque as the women of Bani Isrā’īl were forbidden.

Yahyā bin Sa‘īd (a subnarrator) asked ‘Amra (another subnarrator), “Were the women of Bani Isrā’īl forbidden?” She replied, “Yes.”

(164) CHAPTER. The Salāt (prayer) of women behind men.

870. Narrated Umm Salama: Whenever Allāh’s Messenger completed the Salāt (prayer) with Taslīm, the women used to get up immediately and Allāh’s Messenger would remain at his place for sometime before getting up. [The subnarrator (Az-Zuhri) said, “We think, and Allāh knows better, that he did so, so that the women might leave before the men could catch up with them.”]

871. Narrated Anas: The Prophet offered Salāt (prayers) in the
house of Umm Sulaim; and I, along with an orphan stood behind him while Umm Sulaim (stood) behind us.

(165) CHAPTER. Returning of the women immediately after the Fajr prayer and their staying in the mosque for a short period only.

872. Narrated ‘Aishah: Allāh’s Messenger used to offer the Fajr prayer when it was still dark and the believing women used to return (after finishing their prayer) and nobody could recognize them owing to darkness, or they could not recognize one another.

(166) CHAPTER. A woman shall ask her husband’s permission (on wishing) to go to the mosque.

873. Narrated Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh: My father said, “The Prophet said, ‘If the wife of any one of you asks permission (to go to the mosque), do not forbid her.’”

874. Narrated Anas: The Prophet offered Salāt (prayers) in the house of Umm Sulaim; and I, along with an orphan stood behind him while Umm Sulaim (stood) behind us.
875. Narrated Umm Salama: Whenever Allâh's Messenger ﷺ completed the Salât (prayer) with Taslîm, the women used to get up immediately and Allâh's Messenger ﷺ would remain at his place for sometime before getting up. [The subnarrator (Az-Zuhri) said, “We think, and Allâh knows better, that he did so, so that the women might leave before the men could catch up with them.”]